






As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol **NOTICE**. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols    on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

  is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

 **Safety Labels** P. 91

## A Few Words About Safety


---


Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.


To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.



Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER** You **WILL** be **KILLED** or **SERIOUSLY HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING** You **CAN** be **KILLED** or **SERIOUSLY HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

  **WARNING** You **CAN** be **KILLED** or **SERIOUSLY HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION** You **CAN** be **HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

## **Event Data Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

## **Service Diagnostic Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the left-hand drive models.

## ➤ Safe Driving P. 35

For Safe Driving P. 36      Seat Belts P. 40      Airbags P. 51  
Safety Labels P. 91

## ➤ Instrument Panel P. 93

Indicators P. 94      Gauges and Driver Information Interface P. 136

## ➤ Controls P. 155

Clock P. 156      Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 158  
Sunroof\* P. 181  
Adjusting the Seats P. 209      Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 218

## ➤ Features P. 249

Audio System\* P. 250      Audio System Basic Operation P. 256, 281  
Customized Features P. 354

## ➤ Driving P. 443

Before Driving P. 444      Towing a Trailer P. 448  
Multi-View Rear Camera\* P. 563      Refueling P. 565

## ➤ Maintenance P. 569

Before Performing Maintenance P. 570      Service Reminder System\* P. 573  
Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) Regeneration P. 594  
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 613      Battery P. 619  
Cleaning P. 629      Accessories and Modifications P. 634

## ➤ Handling the Unexpected P. 637

Tools P. 638      If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 640  
Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 671      Fuses P. 680  
When You Cannot Open the Hatch P. 691      Refueling P. 692

## ➤ Information P. 693

Specifications P. 694      Identification Numbers P. 698

# Contents

Pop-up Hood System P. 64      Child Safety P. 67      Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 90

Opening and Closing the Hatch P. 170      Security System P. 173      Opening and Closing the Windows P. 177  
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 183      Adjusting the Mirrors P. 206  
Heating System\* P. 235      Climate Control System\* P. 240

Audio Error Messages P. 347      General Information on the Audio System P. 349  
Hands-Free Telephone System P. 391, 412

When Driving P. 453      Braking P. 535      Parking Your Vehicle P. 553  
Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions P. 568

Maintenance Schedule\* P. 578      Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 583  
Replacing Light Bulbs P. 596      Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 608  
Remote Transmitter Care P. 624      Heating System\*/Climate Control System\* Maintenance P. 626

Engine Does Not Start P. 661      Jump Starting P. 665      Overheating P. 668  
Emergency Towing P. 688      When You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door P. 690

Devices that Emit Radio Waves P. 699      EC Declaration of Conformity Content Outline\* P. 702

**Quick Reference Guide** P. 4

**Safe Driving** P. 35

**Instrument Panel** P. 93

**Controls** P. 155

**Features** P. 249

**Driving** P. 443

**Maintenance** P. 569

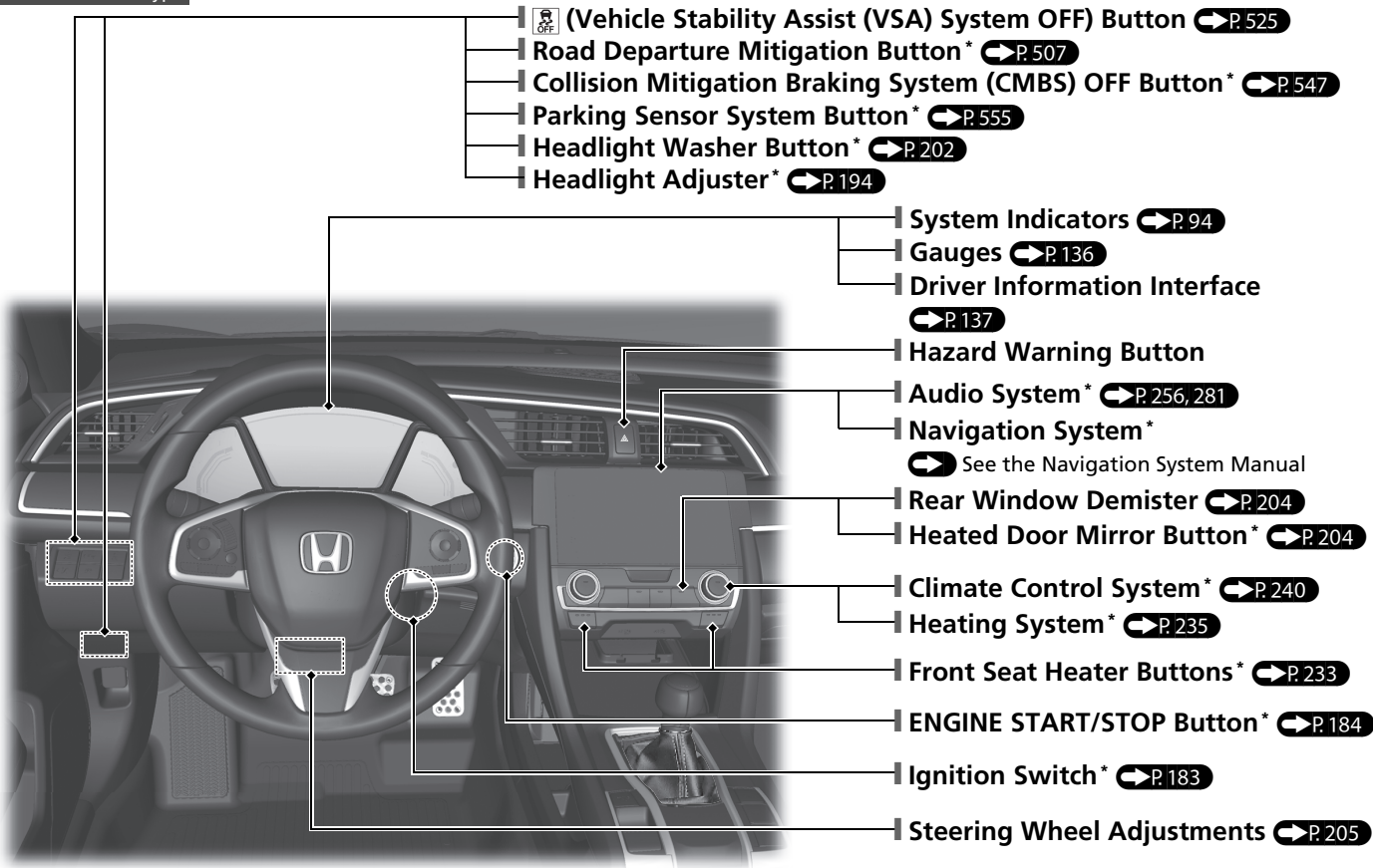
**Handling the Unexpected** P. 637

**Information** P. 693

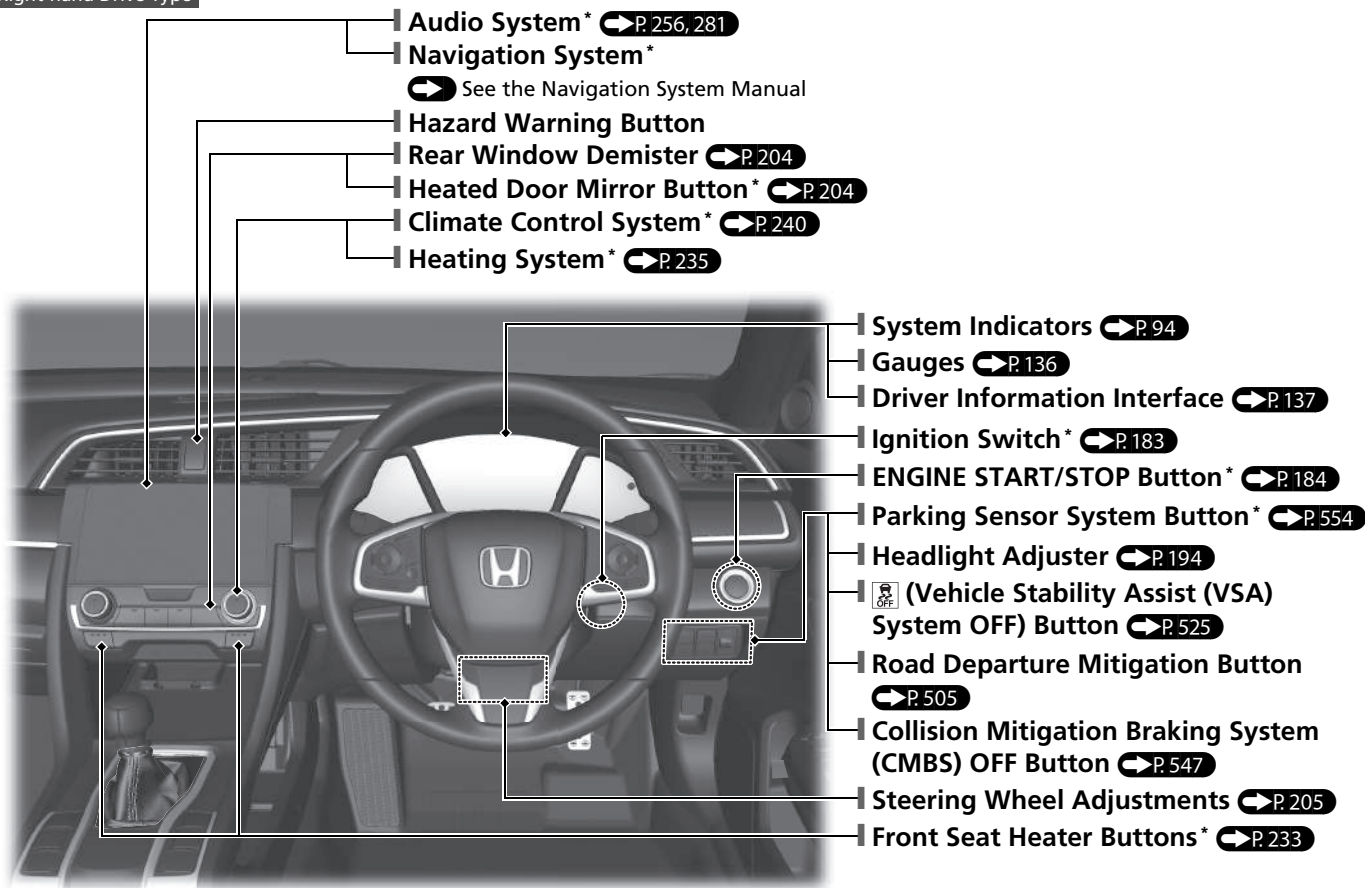
**Index** P. 703

# Visual Index

Left-hand Drive Type



Right-hand Drive Type

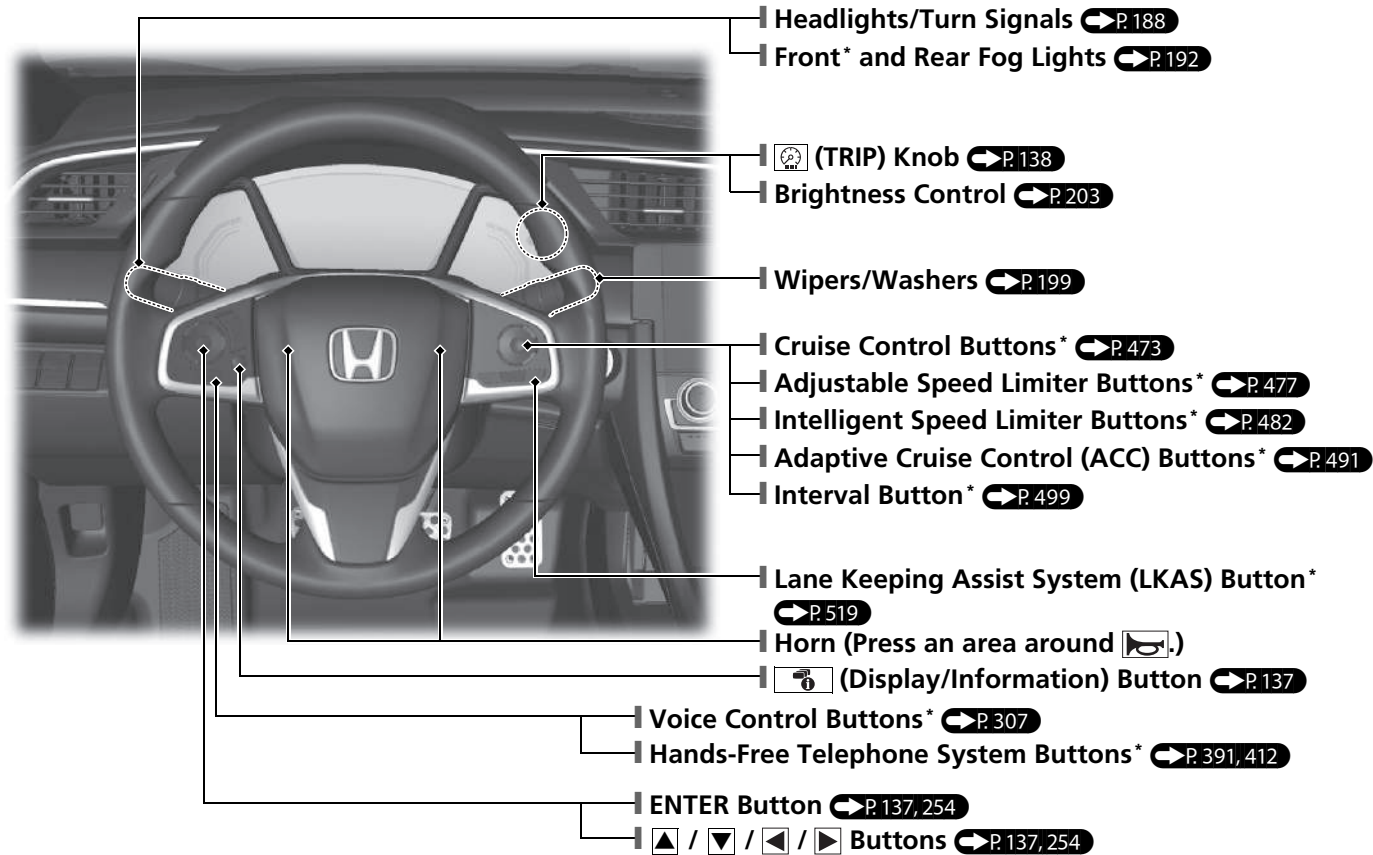
| **Audio System\*** ➔ P. 256, 281| **Navigation System\***

➔ See the Navigation System Manual

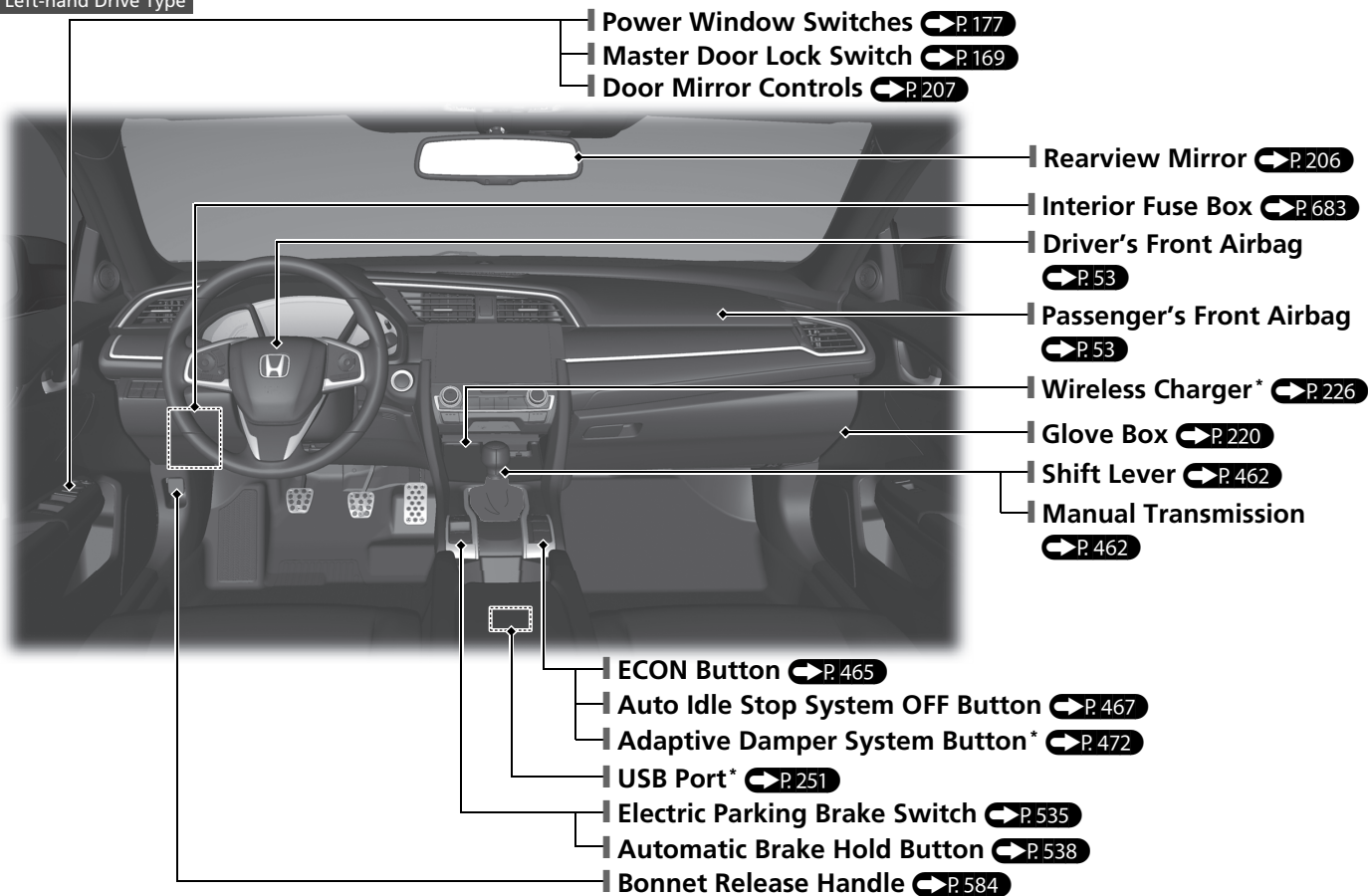
| **Hazard Warning Button**| **Rear Window Demister** ➔ P. 204| **Heated Door Mirror Button\*** ➔ P. 204| **Climate Control System\*** ➔ P. 240| **Heating System\*** ➔ P. 235| **System Indicators** ➔ P. 94| **Gauges** ➔ P. 136| **Driver Information Interface** ➔ P. 137| **Ignition Switch\*** ➔ P. 183| **ENGINE START/STOP Button\*** ➔ P. 184| **Parking Sensor System Button\*** ➔ P. 554| **Headlight Adjuster** ➔ P. 194| **(Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button** ➔ P. 525| **Road Departure Mitigation Button** ➔ P. 505| **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) OFF Button** ➔ P. 547| **Steering Wheel Adjustments** ➔ P. 205| **Front Seat Heater Buttons\*** ➔ P. 233

\* Not available on all models

# Visual Index



Left-hand Drive Type

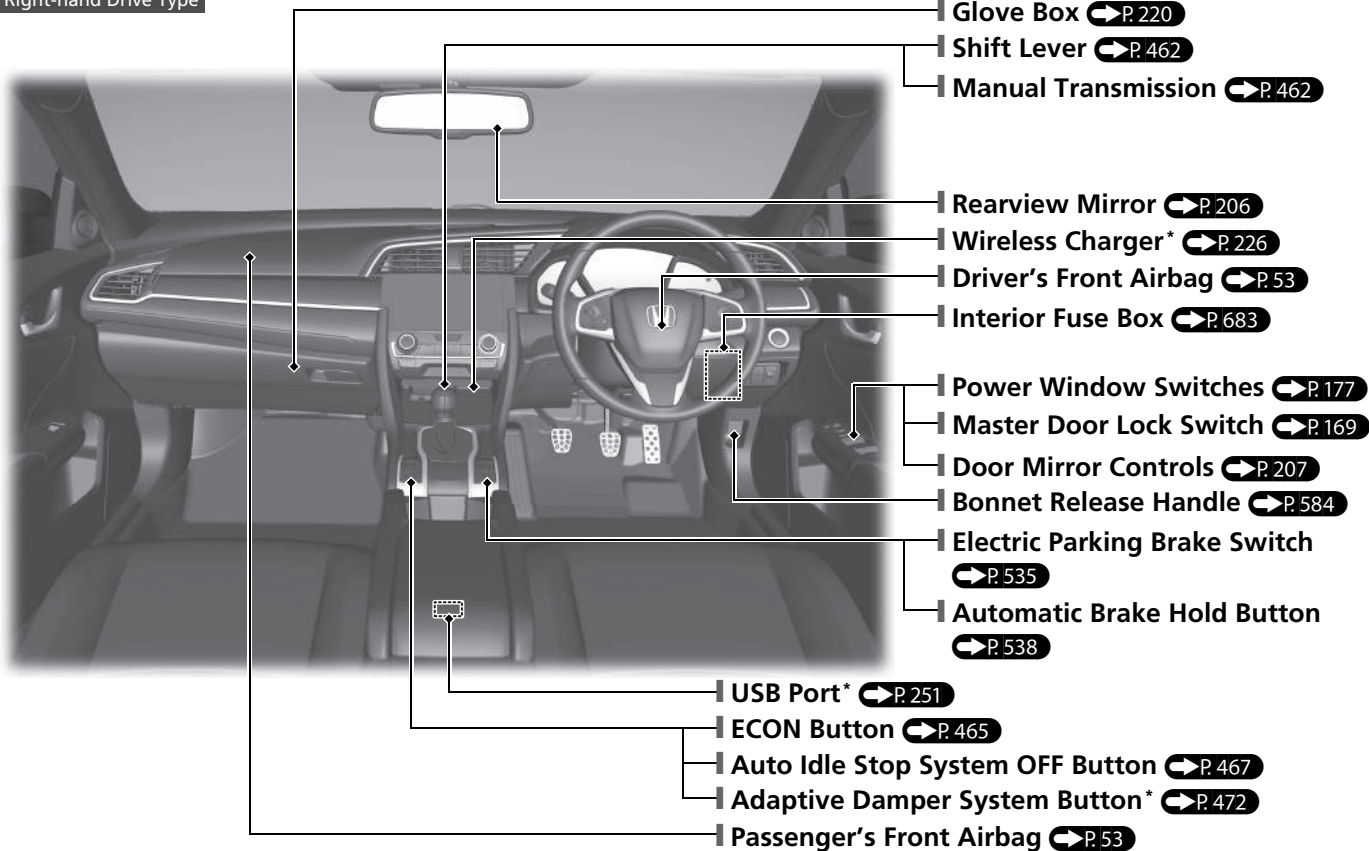


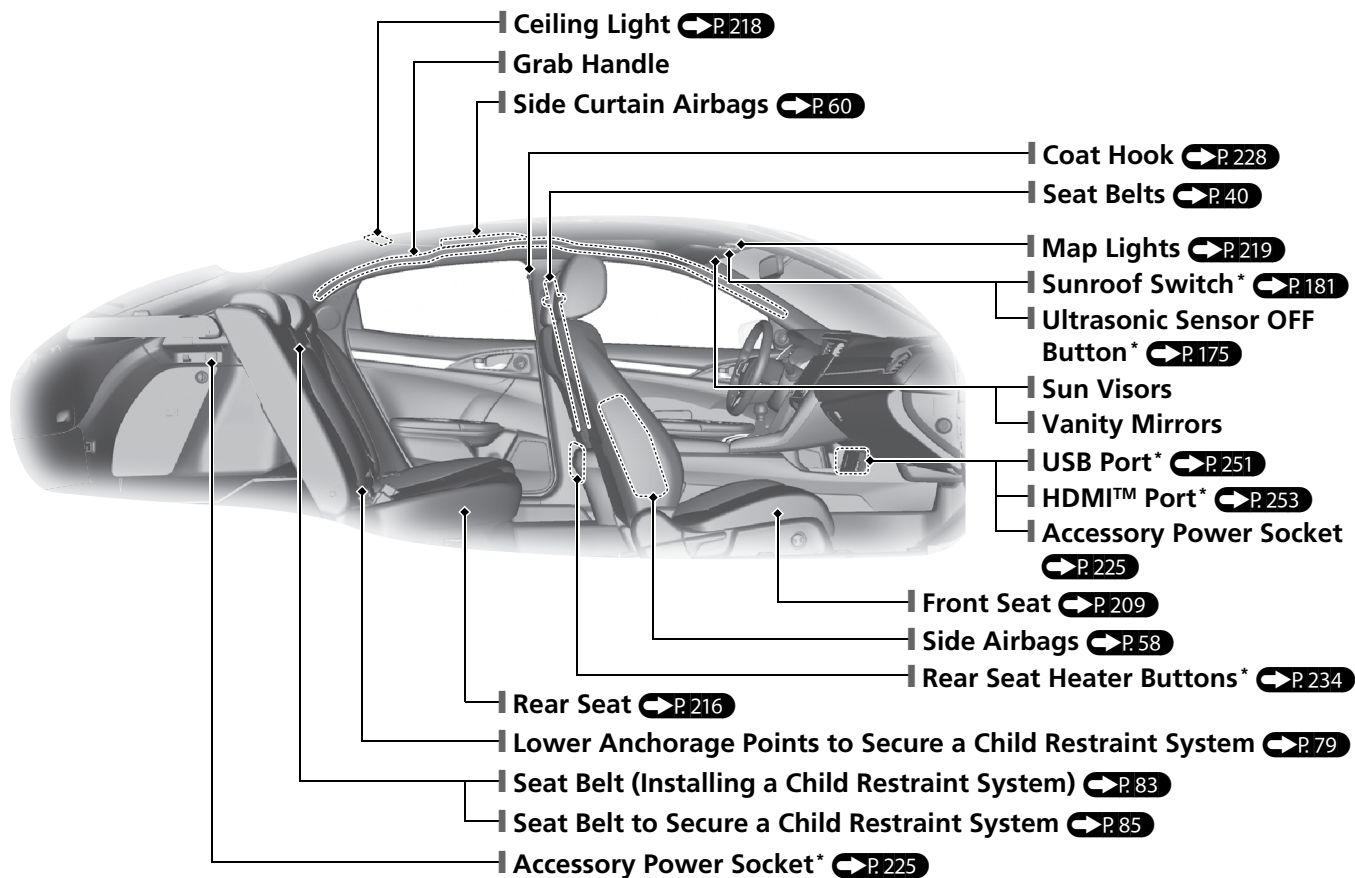
\* Not available on all models



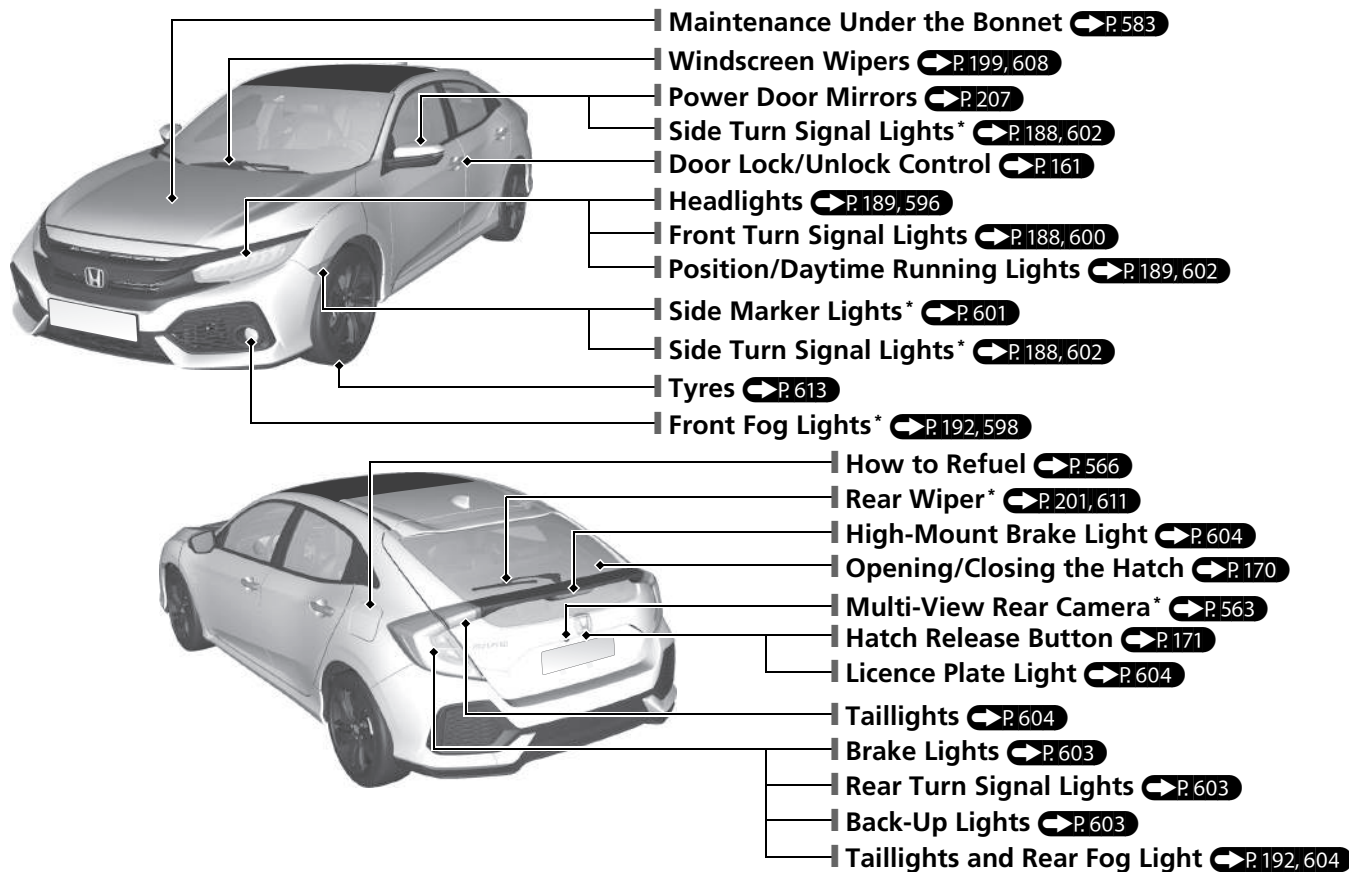
# Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type





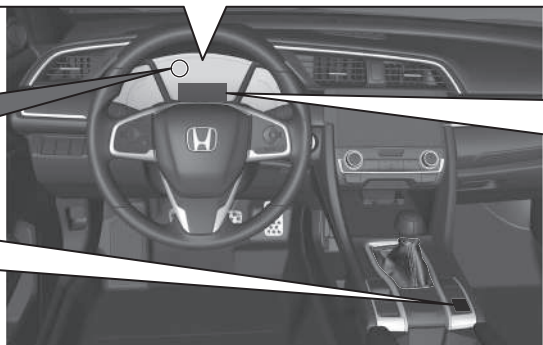
# Visual Index



# Eco Assist System

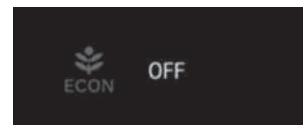
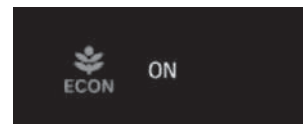
## Ambient Meter

- The colour of the ambient meter changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel efficient manner.




**ECON Button** ➔ P. 465  
Helps to maximise fuel economy.


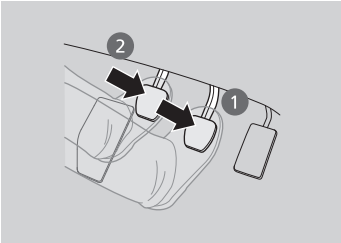
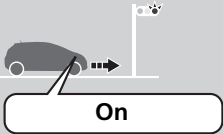

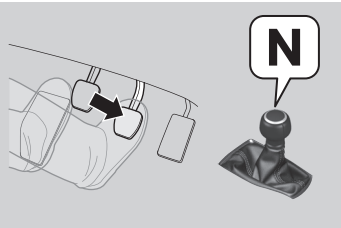
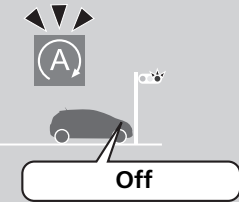
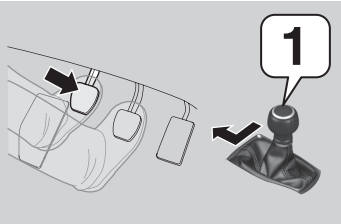
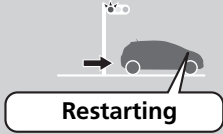
**ECON Mode Indicator** ➔ P. 106  
Comes on when the ECON button is pressed.



The message is displayed for a few seconds when the **ECON** button is pressed.

# Auto Idle Stop Function

To improve fuel economy, the engine stops and then restarts as detailed below. When Auto Idle Stop is on, the Auto Idle Stop indicator (green) comes on. 

At	Manual transmission	Engine status
 Deceleration	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Depress the brake pedal.</li><li>2. Fully depress the clutch pedal.</li></ol> 	 <b>On</b>
 Stop	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Continue to depress the brake pedal.</li><li>• Move the shift lever to <b>N</b>.</li><li>• Release the clutch pedal.</li></ul> 	 <b>Off</b>
Start-up	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Depress the clutch pedal again.</li><li>2. Move the shift lever to <b>1</b>.</li><li>3. Depress the accelerator pedal to resume driving.</li></ol> 	 <b>Restarting</b>

# Safe Driving P.35

## Airbags P.51

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

## Child Safety P.67

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

## Exhaust Gas Hazard P.90

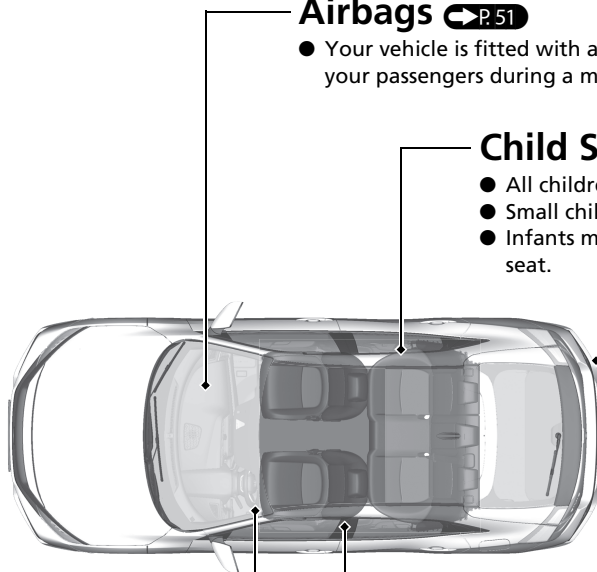
- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

## Seat Belts P.40

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

## Before Driving Checklist P.39

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.















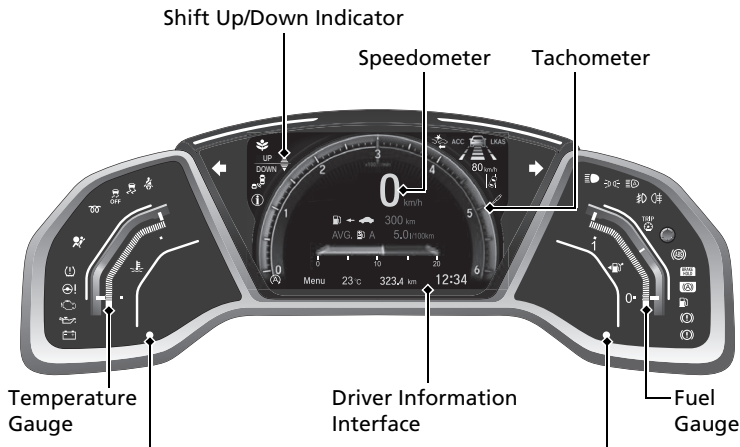
Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

# Instrument Panel ➔ P.93


Gauges ➔ P.136 / Driver Information Interface ➔ P.137 / System Indicators ➔ P.94

## System Indicators


-  ECON Mode Indicator
-  Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
-  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator
-  VSA OFF Indicator
-  Glow Plugs Indicator
-  Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
-  Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)/ Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)
-  Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator
-  Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
-  Malfunction Indicator Lamp
-  Low Oil Pressure Indicator
-  Charging System Indicator






### Left-hand Drive Type

-  Immobilizer System Indicator/Security System Alarm Indicator




### Right-hand Drive Type

-  Immobilizer System Indicator/Security System Alarm Indicator














## System Indicators

-  **ACC** Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Amber/Green)\*
-  Blind spot information Indicator\*
-  System Message Indicator

## System Indicators

-  **LKAS** Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber/Green)\*
-  Road Departure Mitigation Indicator\*
-  Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator\*

## System Indicators






-  Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
-  Adaptive Damper System Indicator\*
-  High Beam Indicator
-  Lights On Indicator
-  Auto High-Beam Indicator\*
-  Front Fog Light Indicator\*
-  Rear Fog Light Indicator
-  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
-  Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator
-  Automatic Brake Hold Indicator
-  Low Fuel Indicator
-  Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
-  Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)

# Controls P.155

## Clock P.156

### Models with colour audio system






- 1 Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- 2 Rotate  to change hour, then press .
- 3 Rotate  to change minute, then press .
- 4 Select **Set**, then press .

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

- Rotate  to select.
- Press  to enter.

### Models with Display Audio











- 1 Select the  (Home) icon, then select **Settings**.
- 2 Select **Clock**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
- 3 Touch the respective  /  icon to adjust the hours or minutes up or down.
- 4 Select **OK**.

### Models with navigation system

The audio system receives signals from GPS satellites, updating the clock automatically.

### Models without audio system

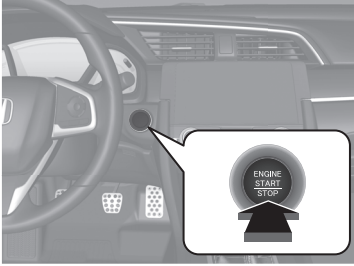


- 1 Press the  button to select , then press the **ENTER** button.
- 2 Press the  /  button until **Clock Setup** appears on the display.
- 3 Press the **ENTER** button.
- 4 Press the **ENTER** button to select **Adjust Clock**.
- 5 Press the  /  button to change hour, then press the **ENTER** button.
- 6 Press the  /  button to change minute, then press the **ENTER** button.



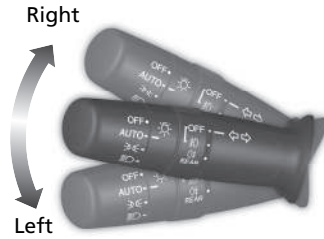
## ENGINE START/STOP Button\* P. 184

- Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



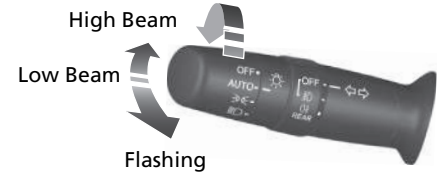
## Turn Signals P. 188

Turn Signal Control Lever



## Lights P. 189

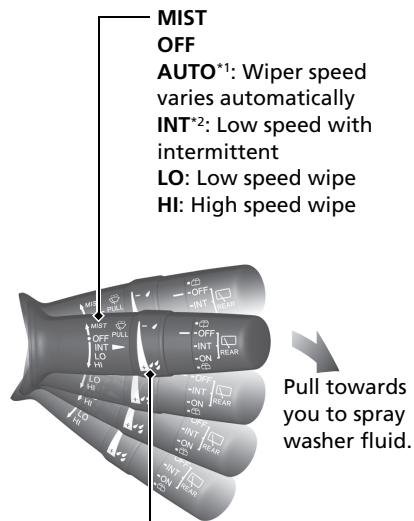
Light Control Switches



# Wipers and Washers

➔ P.199

Wiper/Washer Control Lever



**MIST**

**OFF**

**AUTO\*1:** Wiper speed varies automatically

**INT\*2:** Low speed with intermittent

**LO:** Low speed wipe

**HI:** High speed wipe

Pull towards you to spray washer fluid.

Adjustment Ring

☐: Low sensitivity\*1

☐: Lower speed, fewer sweeps\*2

☒: High sensitivity\*1

☒: Higher speed, more sweeps\*2

\*1: Models with automatic intermittent wipers

\*2: Models without automatic intermittent wipers

Models with automatic intermittent wipers

**AUTO** should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

## Steering Wheel ➔ P.205

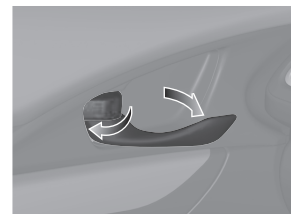
- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



# Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

➔ P.168

- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



## Hatch ➔ P.170

Hatch Release Button



Models without keyless access system

- With all the doors unlocked, press the hatch release button and lift open the hatch.


Models with keyless access system

- Press the hatch release button to unlock and open the hatch when you carry the keyless remote.

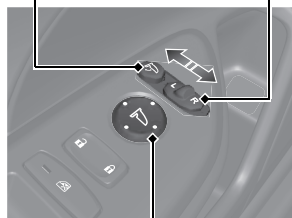
\* Not available on all models

## Power Door Mirrors

➔ P.207

- With the ignition switch in ON <sup>\*1</sup>, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button\* to fold in and out the door mirrors.


Folding Button\*      Selector Switch

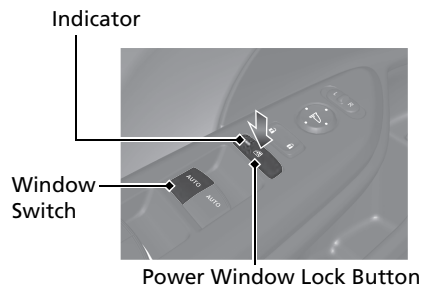


Adjustment Switch

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Power Windows

- With the ignition switch in ON <sup>\*1</sup>, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator is on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.





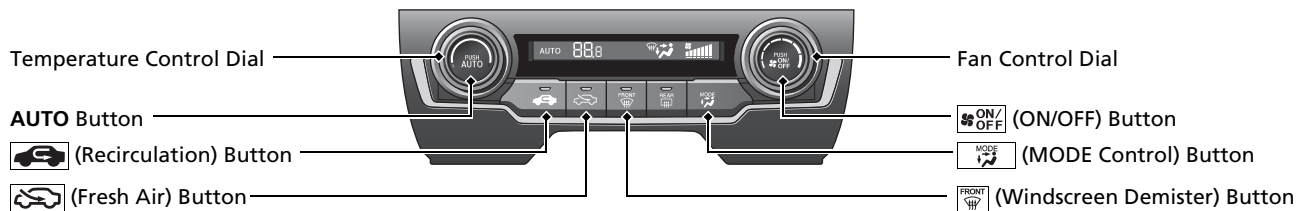
Window Switch





Power Window Lock Button

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

# Heating System\* P.235



- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the heating system.
- Press the  button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the  button to defrost the windscreen.




-  Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.
-  Air flows from floor vents.
-  Air flows from floor and dashboard vents.
-  Air flows from dashboard vents.

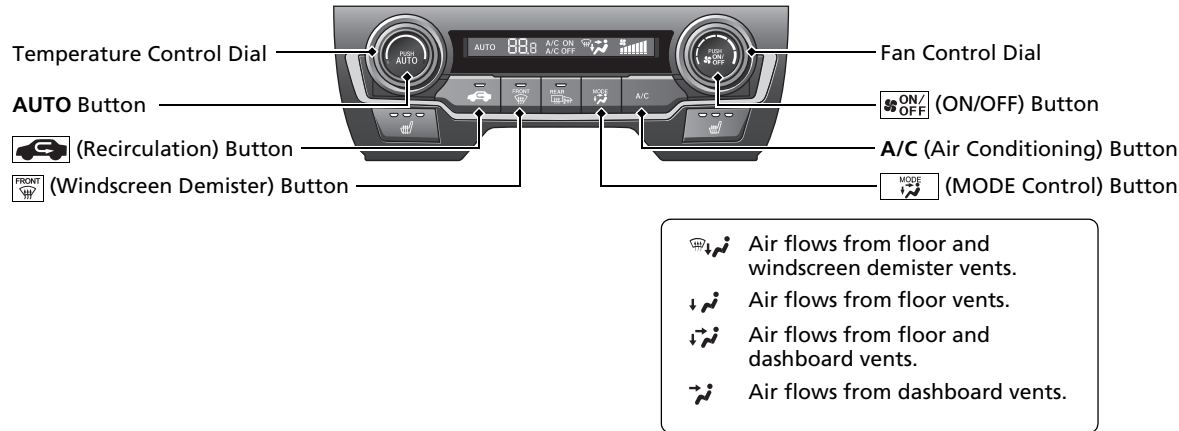
\* Not available on all models

## Climate Control System\* P.240

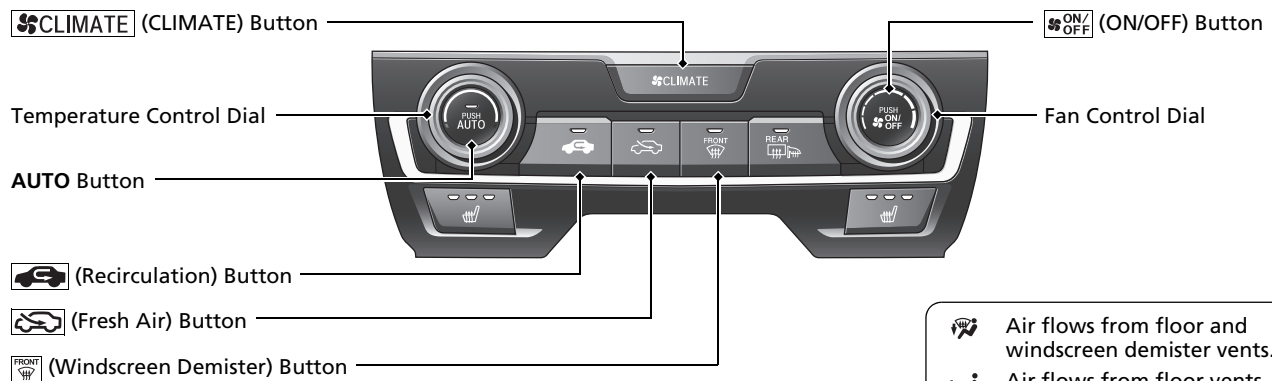
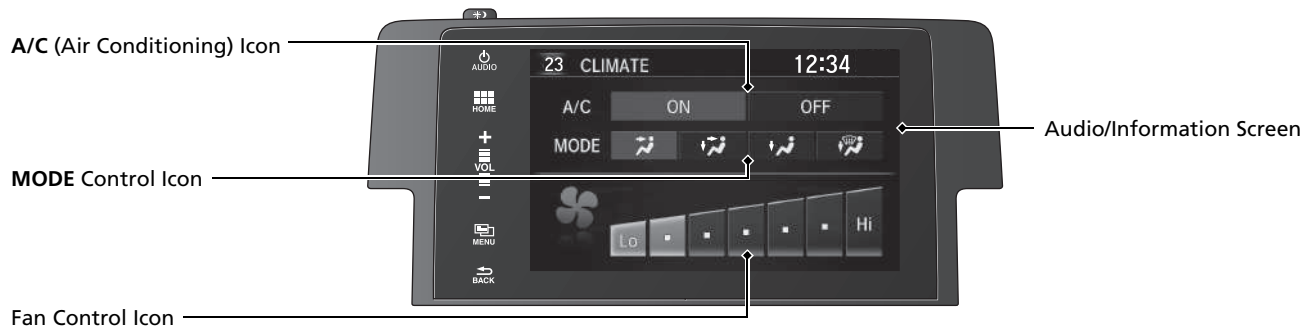
- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the  button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the  button to defrost the windscreen.

The climate control system is voice operable\*.  P.307

### Models with colour audio system



Models with Display Audio  
 Models without SYNC button

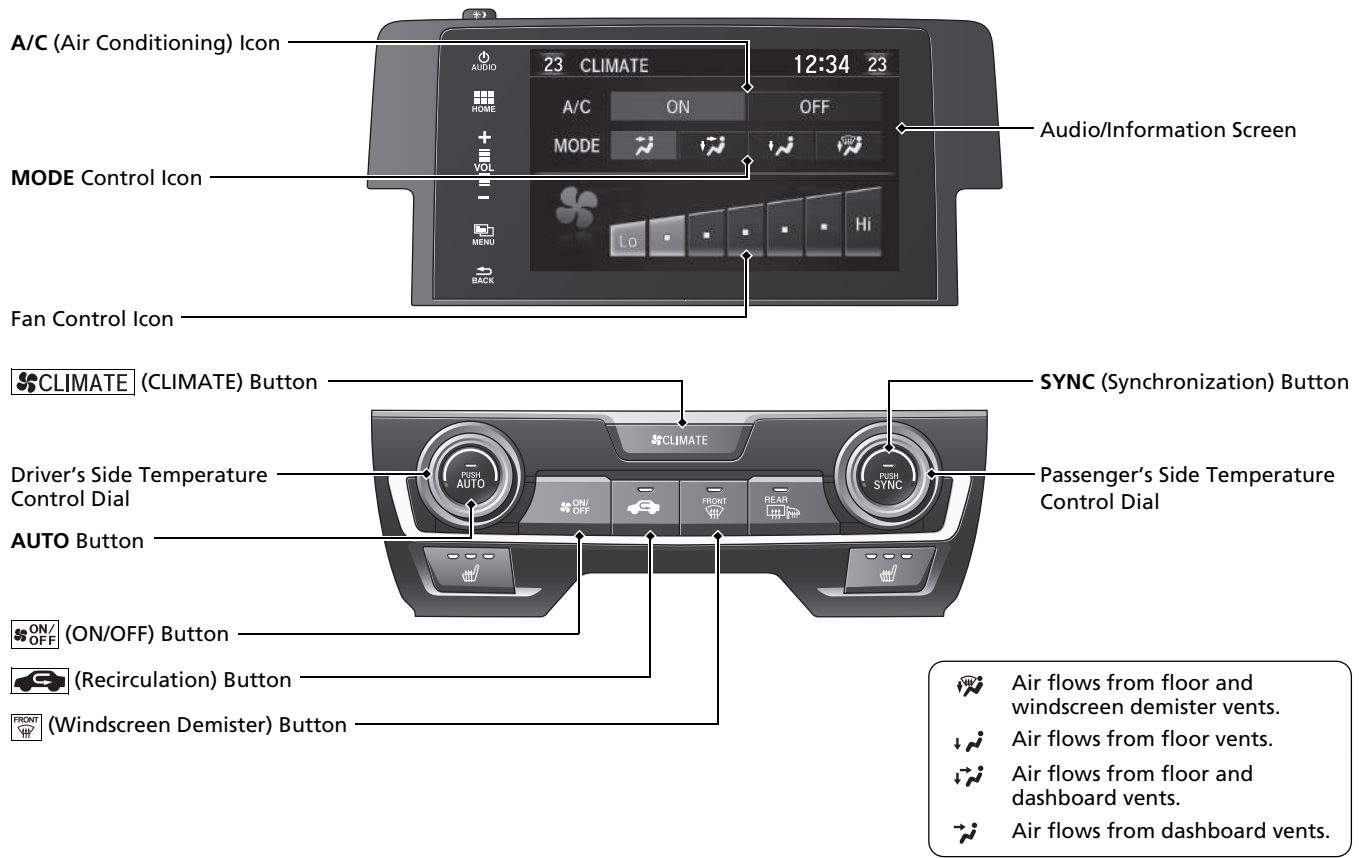


- Air flows from floor and windshield demister vents.
- Air flows from floor vents.
- Air flows from floor and dashboard vents.
- Air flows from dashboard vents.

\* Not available on all models

Models with Display Audio

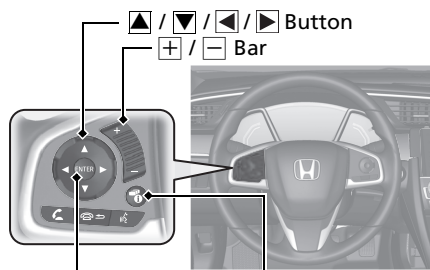
Models with SYNC button



# Features ➔ P.249

## Audio Remote Controls\*

➔ P.254



ENTER Button

Button

- **+ / - Bar**  
Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- **▲ / ▼ Button**  
Press **▲** or **▼** to cycle through the audio mode as follows:

### Models with Display Audio

FM→DAB\*→LW→MW→USB→iPod→  
*Bluetooth*® Audio→Apps→Audio Apps→  
AUX-HDMI™

### Models with colour audio system

FM1→FM2→DAB1\*→DAB2\*→LW→  
MW→USB→iPod→*Bluetooth*® Audio

### Models with Display Audio

- **ENTER Button**
  - When listening to the radio
    - 1 Press **ENTER** to switch the display to a preset list you stored in the preset buttons.
    - 2 Press **▲** or **▼** to select a preset, then press **ENTER**.
  - When listening to a USB flash drive
    - 1 Press **ENTER** to display the folder list.
    - 2 Press **▲** or **▼** to select a folder.
    - 3 Press **ENTER** to display a list of tracks in that folder.
    - 4 Press **▲** or **▼** to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to an iPod
  - 1 Press **ENTER** to display the iPod music list.
  - 2 Press **▲** or **▼** to select a category.
  - 3 Press **ENTER** to display a list of items in the category.
  - 4 Press **▲** or **▼** to select an item, then press **ENTER**.
    - ▶ Press **ENTER** and press **▲** or **▼** repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.
- When listening to *Bluetooth*® Audio
  - 1 Press **ENTER** to display the track list.
  - 2 Press **▲** or **▼** to select a track, then press **ENTER**.



-  /  Button

Radio: Press to change the preset station.

Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.

Press and hold to select the next or previous ensemble (DAB\*).

USB device:


Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.

Press and hold to change a folder.




Button:

Press to change contents:

 **Driver Information**

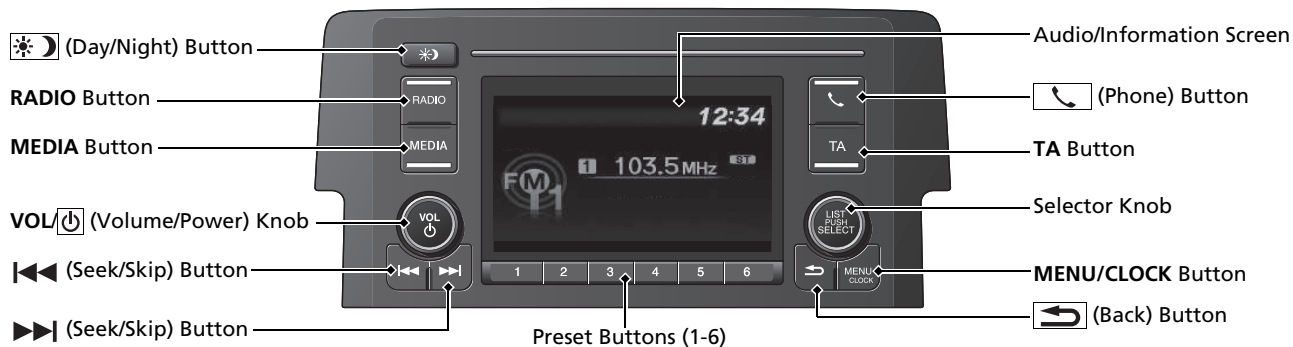
Interface  **P.137**

# Audio System\* P. 250

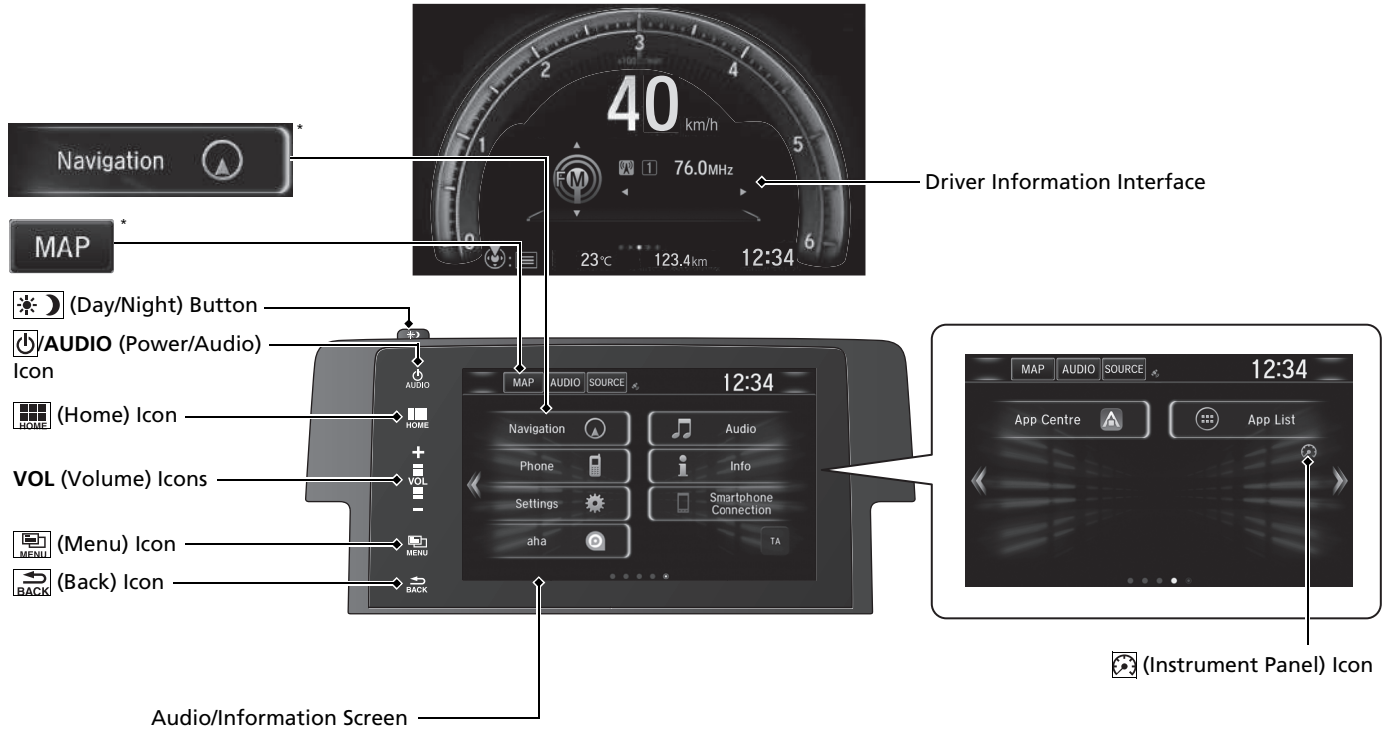
Models with colour audio system  P. 256



Driver Information Interface



For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual



# Driving P.443

## Manual Transmission

 P.462

## VSA On and Off P.525

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

## Cruise Control\* P.473

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
- To use cruise control, press the **MAIN** button. Select cruise control by pressing the **LIM** button, then press the **-/SET** button once you have achieved the desired speed (above 30 km/h or 18 mph).

## CMBS\* On and Off P.547

- When a possible collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

## Adjustable Speed Limiter

 P.477

- This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.
- To use the adjustable speed limiter, press the **MAIN** button. Select the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the **LIM** button, then press the **-/SET** button when your vehicle reaches the desired speed.
- The vehicle speed limit can be set from 30 km/h (18 mph) to 250 km/h (156 mph).



## Deflation Warning System P.530

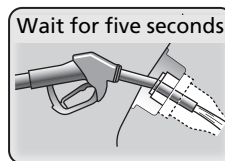
- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- Deflation warning system is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.
- A calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

## Refueling P. 565

Fuel recommendation: EN 590 standard diesel fuel

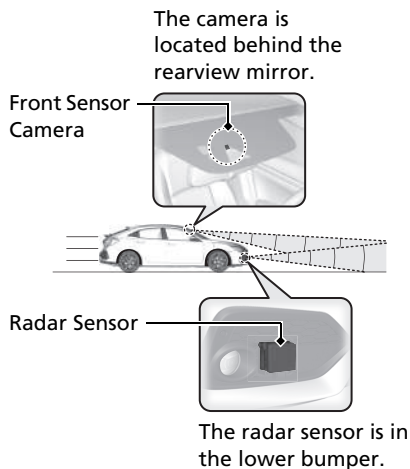
Fuel tank capacity: 46.9 L (10.3 Imp gal)

- 1** Unlock the driver's door.  
 Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside  P. 168
- 2** Press on the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.
- 3** After refueling, wait for about five seconds before removing the filler nozzle.



# Honda Sensing\*

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors, a radar sensor located in the lower bumper and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.



## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P.490

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

## Road Departure Mitigation System P.505

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

## Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P.517

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

## Traffic Sign Recognition System P.510

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit and that overtaking is prohibited, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the driver information interface.

## Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P.543

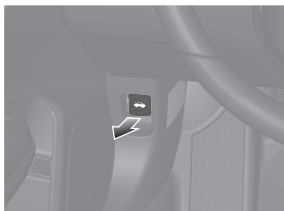
Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimise collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

# Maintenance ➔ P.569

## Under the Bonnet ➔ P.583

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake/clutch fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

- 1 Pull the bonnet release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



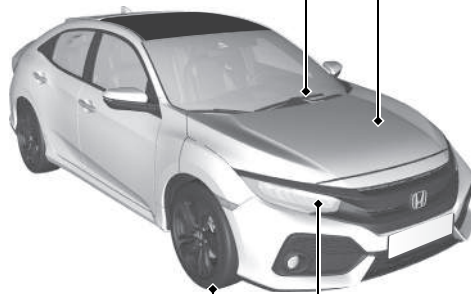
- 2 Locate the bonnet latch lever, pull it up, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



- 3 When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

## Wiper Blades ➔ P.608

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen.



## Tyres ➔ P.613

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

## Lights ➔ P.596

- Inspect all lights regularly.

# Handling the Unexpected P.637

## Flat Tyre P.640

Models with tyre repair kit

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the tyre repair kit.

Models with a compact spare tyre

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tyre with the compact spare tyre in the luggage area.



## Engine Won't Start P.661

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



## Overheating P.668

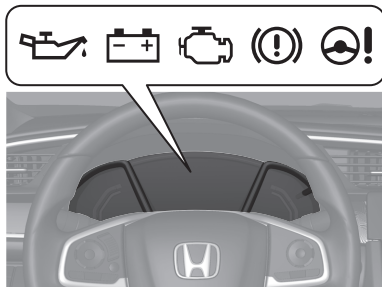
- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.



## Indicators Come On

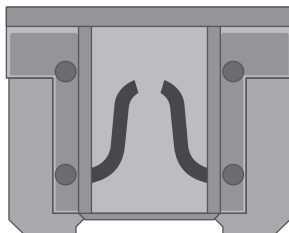
 P.671

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



## Blown Fuse P.680

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



## Emergency Towing P.688

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.





# What to Do If



Models without keyless access system

The ignition switch does not turn from **0** to **I**. Why?

Models with keyless access system

The power mode does not change from **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)** to **ACCESSORY**. Why?



The steering wheel may be locked.

Models without keyless access system

- Try to turn the steering wheel left and right while turning the ignition key.

Models with keyless access system

- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.



Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?



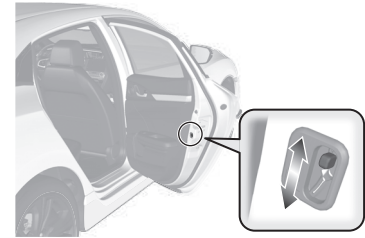
This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

➔ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ➔ P.540

---

**Q** The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

**A** Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.



To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.

---

**Q** Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

**A** If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

---

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

**A** The beeper sounds when:

- The exterior lights are left on.
- The Auto Idle Stop is in operation.

**Models with keyless access system**

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
-



Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?



The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.



Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?



Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.



I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?



The Deflation Warning System needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.

➤ Deflation Warning System ➔ P.530



Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?



- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in **N**. If so, select any other position.



Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?



The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

# Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

## **For Safe Driving**

Important Safety Precautions.....	36
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	38
Safety Checklist .....	39

## **Seat Belts**

About Your Seat Belts .....	40
Fastening a Seat Belt .....	46
Seat Belt Inspection.....	49
Anchorage Points.....	50

## **Airbags**

Airbag System Components .....	51
Types of Airbags .....	53

Front Airbags (SRS) .....	53
Side Airbags.....	58
Side Curtain Airbags .....	60
Airbag System Indicators.....	62
Airbag Care .....	63

## **Pop-up Hood System**

About the Pop-up Hood System .....	64
Pop-up Hood System Care .....	66

## **Child Safety**

Protecting Child Passengers .....	67
Safety of Infants and Small Children...	69
Safety of Larger Children .....	87

## **Exhaust Gas Hazard**

Carbon Monoxide Gas.....	90
--------------------------	----

## **Safety Labels**

Label Locations .....	91
-----------------------	----

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

## Important Safety Precautions

---

### ■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

### ■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

### ■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

### ■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

### ⓘ Important Safety Precautions

---

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

**■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely**

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

**■ Control your speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

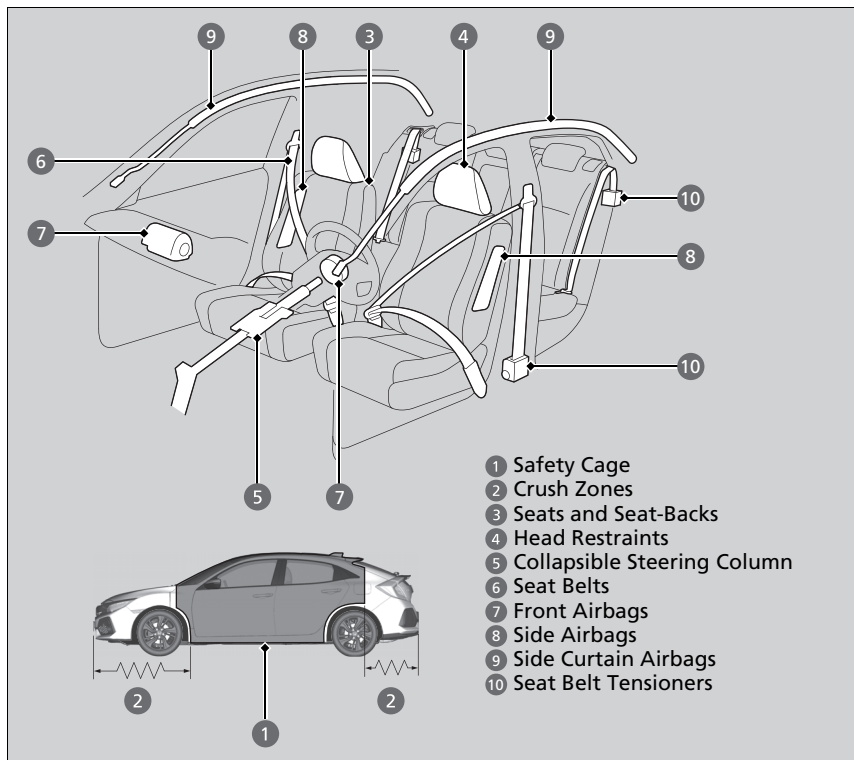
**■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition**

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

**■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle**

Children left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which the children and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in injury or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave children in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

## Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

### ► Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

## Safety Checklist

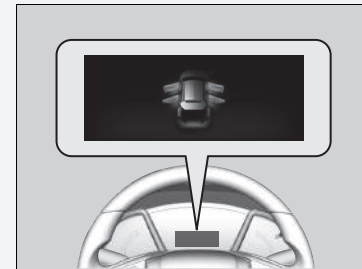
For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  - **Adjusting the Seats** P. 209
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  - **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions** P. 209
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  - **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 46
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height and weight.
  - **Child Safety** P. 67

### ➤ Safety Checklist

If the door and/or hatch open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the hatch is not completely closed. Close all doors and the hatch tightly until the message disappears.

➤ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 117





## About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

### About Your Seat Belts

#### **WARNING**

**Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.**

**Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.**

**WARNING:** Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

**WARNING:** Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

**WARNING:** Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

**WARNING:** Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

## ■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

### 🔧 Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt P. 83

#### 🔧 About Your Seat Belts

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

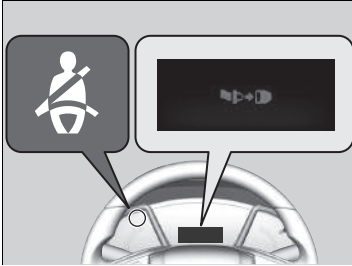
Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

### ■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

## Seat Belt Reminder



### ■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts. If the ignition switch is turned to ON **II**\*<sup>1</sup> and a seat belt is not fastened, the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### ⊠ Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the ignition switch is turned to ON **II**\*<sup>1</sup>. When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat.

Check if:

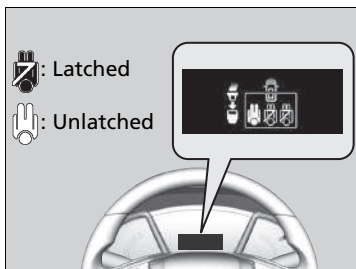
- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor.

Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



### ■ Rear seats


Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. The driver information interface display notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are used.

The display appears when:

- A rear door is opened or closed.
- Any of the rear passengers latches or unlatches their seat belt.

The beeper sounds if any rear passenger's seat belt is unlatched while driving.

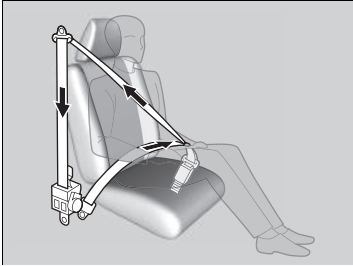
To see the display:

Press the  (display/information) button.

## Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats and the outer rear seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



### Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

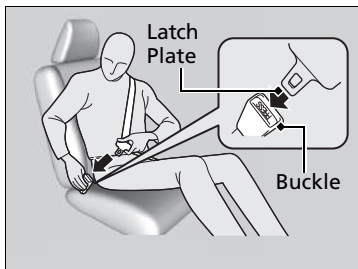
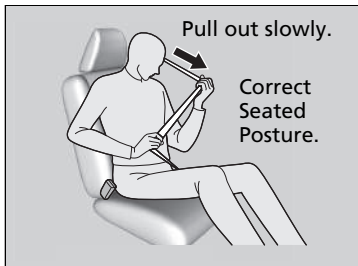
The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

## Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

▶ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 209



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.

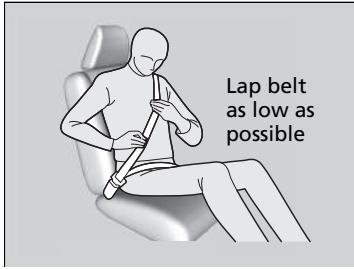
2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

### ▶▶ Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

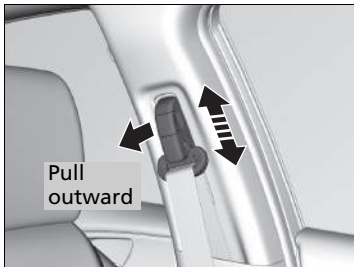
Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

## ■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchor up and down while pulling the release outward.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

## ▶▶ Fastening a Seat Belt

### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

**Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.**

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

## ▶▶ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

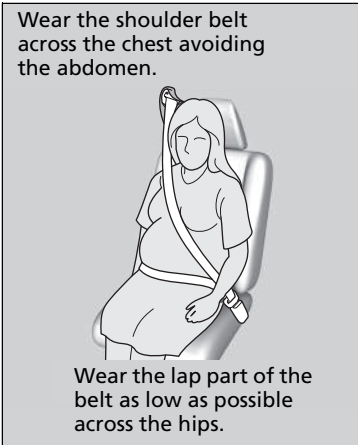
The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.



## ■ Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.



## ▣ Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

## Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

### Seat Belt Inspection

#### **WARNING**

**Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.**

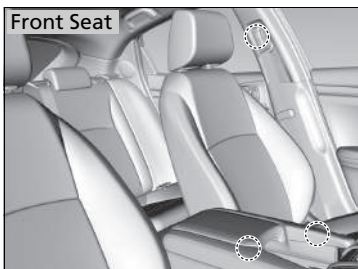
**Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.**

**WARNING:** No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

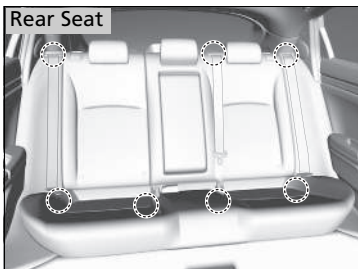
**WARNING:** It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

**WARNING:** Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

## Anchorage Points



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

## Airbag System Components

The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.
- An electronic control unit that, when the vehicle is on, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.
- Automatic seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.
- An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off.

## ■ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

### **Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.**

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

**Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

## ▣ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

## Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

## Front Airbags (SRS)


The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

**SRS** (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

### Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

### Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the ignition switch is in ON <sup>\*1</sup>.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

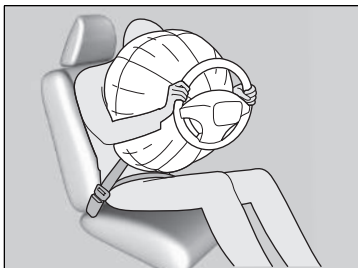
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## ■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

## ■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

### ■ When front airbags should not deploy

**Minor frontal crashes:** Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

**Side impacts:** Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

**Rear impacts:** Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

**Rollovers:** Seat belts and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

### ■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

### ■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

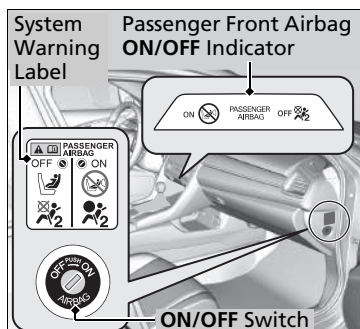
Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.



## ■ Passenger Front Airbag Off System

If it is unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, you must manually deactivate the passenger front airbag system, using the ignition key or built in key.

### ■ Passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch



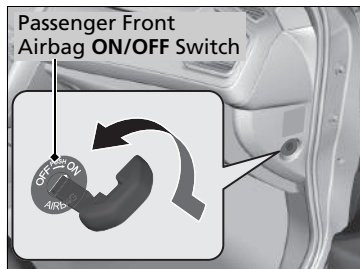
When the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch is in:

**OFF:** The passenger front airbag is deactivated. The passenger front airbag does not inflate during a frontal crash that inflates driver's front airbag.

The passenger front airbag off indicator stays on as a reminder.

**ON:** The passenger front airbag is activated. The passenger front airbag on indicator comes on and remains on for about 60 seconds.

### ■ To deactivate the passenger front airbag system



1. Set the parking brake, and turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]<sup>\*1</sup>. Remove the key.
2. Open the front passenger's door.
3. Insert the key to the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch.
  - ▶ The switch is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.
4. Turn the key to **OFF**, and remove it from the switch.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## ▶▶ Passenger Front Airbag Off System

### ⚠ WARNING

The passenger front airbag system must be turned off, if it is not avoidable to put a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.


If the front passenger airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with enough force to kill or cause a very serious injury to the infant.

### ⚠ WARNING

Make sure to turn on the passenger front airbag system when a rear-facing child restraint system is not used on the front passenger seat.

Leaving the passenger front airbag system deactivated can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

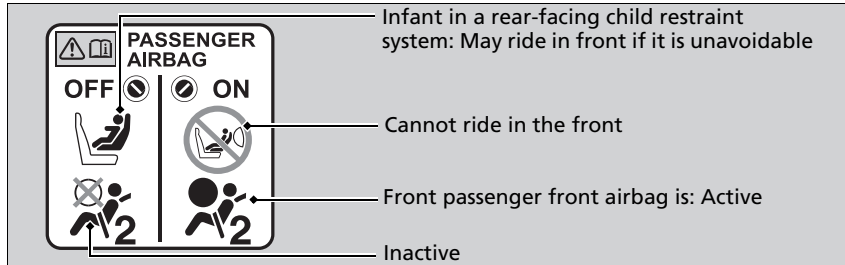
### ■ Passenger front airbag off indicator

When the passenger front airbag system is activated, the indicator goes off after a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>\*1</sup>.

When the passenger front airbag system is deactivated, the indicator stays on, or goes off momentarily and comes back on.

### ■ Passenger front airbag off system label

The label is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.



### ⊠ Passenger Front Airbag Off System

#### NOTICE

- Use your vehicle's ignition key or built in key to turn the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. If you use a different key, the switch can be damaged, or the passenger front airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not close the door or apply an excessive load on the ignition key or built in key while the key is in the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. The switch or the key can be damaged.

We strongly recommend that you do not install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

#### ⊠ Protecting Infants P. 69

It is your responsibility to change the setting of the passenger front airbag system to **OFF** when you put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

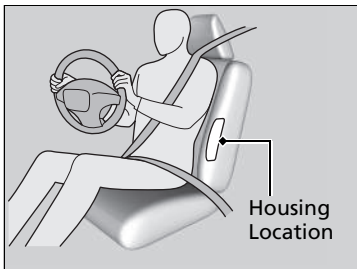
When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, turn the system back on.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

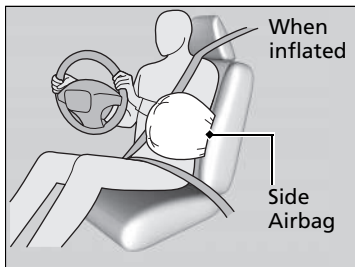
Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

### Side Airbags

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

## Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

### ■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

### ■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag to not deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

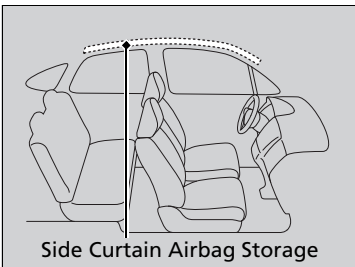
## Side Airbags

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer. Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

## Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and any passengers during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

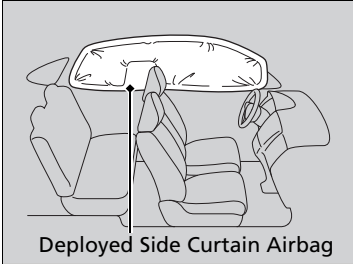
### Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

## ■ Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

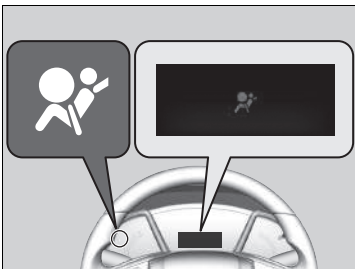
### ■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

## Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

### Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



#### ■ When the ignition switch is turned to ON \*1

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

### Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

#### **WARNING**

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

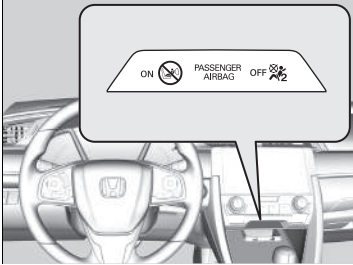
#### **WARNING**

Remove the rear-facing child restraint system immediately from the front passenger seat if the SRS indicator comes on. Even if the passenger front airbag has been deactivated, do not ignore the SRS indicator.

The SRS system may have a fault which could cause the passenger front airbag to be activated, causing serious injury or death.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator



### ■ When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator stays on while the passenger's front airbag system is deactivated.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, manually turn the system back on. The indicator should go off.

## Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

### ■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

### ■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

### ✘ Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.



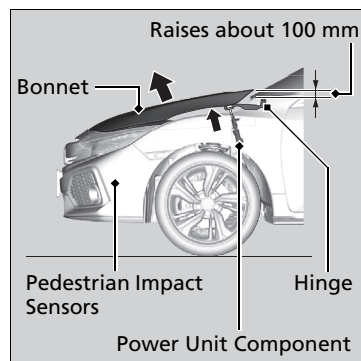
## About the Pop-up Hood System

The pop-up hood system is designed to help to reduce the possible head injuries of a pedestrian if they experience a frontal impact with your vehicle.

### The System Activates When

Your vehicle strikes a pedestrian or other objects at moderate or higher speed.

### How the System Works



When the pedestrian impact sensors detect a certain amount of impact, the pop-up hood system is activated and the rear of the bonnet will raise.

The raised bonnet can help to reduce pedestrian head injuries.

### About the Pop-up Hood System

## ⚠️ WARNING

After the pop-up hood is activated, the power unit components become extremely hot and can cause burns. Do not touch the power unit components until they have cooled.

### NOTICE

Do not attempt to open the bonnet after the pop-up hood system has been activated. After the system activation, make sure the raised bonnet does not interfere with visibility, and then drive slowly and carefully.

If the bonnet is not fully closed, it may not work properly. Make sure the bonnet is fully closed before driving.

The following conditions may also activate the system.

- A severe impact on the underside of your vehicle.
- Driving over speed bumps at high speed, or over a large pothole.
- When the objects impact the pedestrian impact sensors.

The system may not activate if your vehicle is:

- Impacted from the rear or side.
- Tipped over or rolled over.
- A pedestrian is struck at an angle.

Other factors, such as where, at which angle, or at what vehicle speed the impact has occurred, may prevent the pop-up hood system from activating.

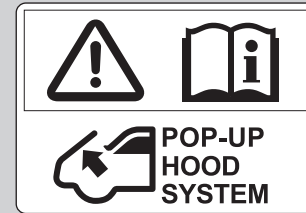
► About the Pop-up Hood System

For the pop-up hood system to work properly:

- Always use the same size tyres as the original. The system may not read your vehicle speed correctly with the different size tyres.
- Never apply force to the system's power unit. It can be damaged if you slam the bonnet shut.
- Do not impact the pedestrian impact sensors in the front bumper.

Pop-up Hood System label is found under the bonnet:

► **Label Locations** P. 91



## ■ System Warning Message for Pop-up Hood



### ■ When the power mode is set to ON

A system warning message appears on the driver information interface if there is a potential problem with the pop-up hood system.

## Pop-up Hood System Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any pop-up hood system components yourself. However, if the pop-up hood system has ever activated, you need to have the control unit, and other related parts replaced by a dealer.

## ⚠ System Warning Message for Pop-up Hood

### ⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the pop-up hood message can result in a malfunction of the pop-up hood. This can result in serious injury or death if your vehicle impacts a pedestrian.

If the pop-up hood message comes on, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

## ⚠ Pop-up Hood System Care

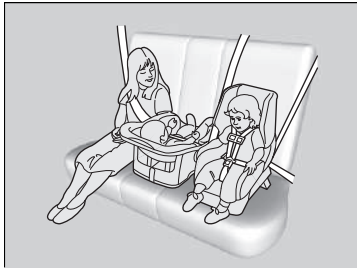
If the front bumper is damaged, have the vehicle checked by a dealer even if the pop-up hood system did not activate.

## Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

**Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat.** This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

### Protecting Child Passengers

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.**

**Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.**

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm (60 inches) be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

#### **European models**

Child restraint systems must meet UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

**➤ Selecting a Child Restraint System P. 72**

#### **Except European models**

We recommend that child restraint systems meet UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

▶▶ Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

**⚠ WARNING**

<b>⚠ AIRBAG</b>		
		

**NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**

**WARNING:** Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

▶▶ **Opening/Closing the Power Windows**  
P. 177

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor.

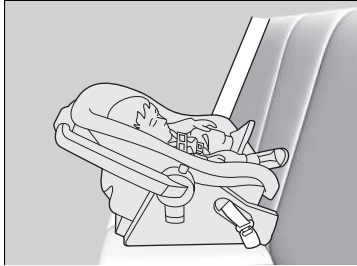
Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

▶▶ **Safety Labels** P. 91

## Safety of Infants and Small Children

### Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child restraint system until the infant reaches the restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



#### Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- ▶ If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child seat and the seat in front of it.

### Protecting Infants

#### ⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

As required by UN Regulation No. 94:

#### ⚠ WARNING



**NEVER** use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an **ACTIVE AIRBAG** in front of it, **DEATH** or **SERIOUS INJURY** to the **CHILD** can occur.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

#### ▶▶ Protecting Infants

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

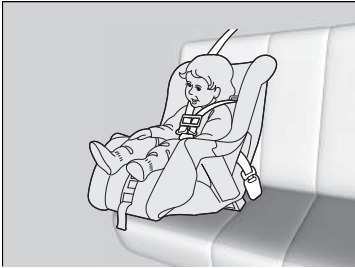
Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If it is absolutely unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, manually turn off the passenger front airbag system.

▶▶ **Passenger Front Airbag Off System** P. 56

## Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



### ■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

## Protecting Smaller Children

### ⚠ WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.



## ■ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximizing your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISO FIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

### ■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

### ▶▶ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

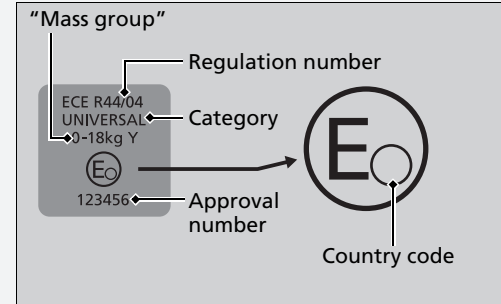
Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

### ■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

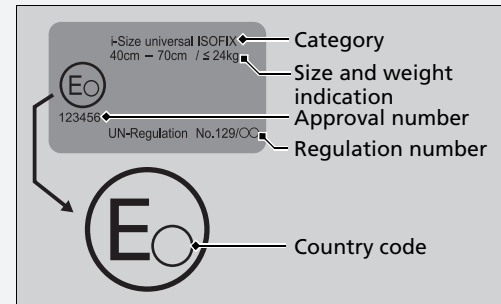
If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN/ECE Regulation.

#### ▶▶ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label



## ■ Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint Systems

The two outer rear seats in your vehicle are equipped with lower anchorages. However, not all of the various types of child restraint systems are suitable for use in your vehicle. Before you purchase or use any lower anchorage-compatible (i-Size/ISOFIX) child restraint system, refer to the following tables to ensure that the restraint system is appropriate for the vehicle, the seating position, and the child's weight (mass group) and size.

## ▣ Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint Systems

Mass group is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the mass group as indicated in the manufacturer's instructions as well as on the package and labels of the child restraint system.

The particular child restraint systems listed in the table are genuine Honda products. They are available from your dealer.

For correct installation, refer to the instructions manual that came with the child restraint system.

■ ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems

MASS Group	Size Class	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX positions				Recommended Child Restraint Systems*1
			Front passenger	Rear seat			
				L-Side	R-Side	Centre	
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	—	X	X	—	
	G	ISO/L2	—	X	X	—	
group 0 up to 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	—	IL*2	IL*2	—	Honda Baby Safe ISOFIX
group 0+ up to 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	—	IL*2	IL*2	—	Honda Baby Safe ISOFIX
	D	ISO/R2	—	IL*2	IL*2	—	Honda Baby Safe ISOFIX
	C	ISO/R3	—	IL*2	IL*2	—	Honda Baby Safe ISOFIX
group I 9 to 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	—	IL	IL	—	
	C	ISO/R3	—	IL	IL	—	
	B	ISO/F2	—	IUF	IUF	—	Honda ISOFIX
	B1	ISO/F2X	—	IUF	IUF	—	Honda ISOFIX
	A	ISO/F3	—	IUF	IUF	—	Honda ISOFIX
group II 15 to 25 kg			—	X	X	—	
group III 22 to 36 kg			—	X	X	—	

▶ Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint Systems

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

ISOFIX Size Class	Fixture (CRF)	Description
G	ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
F	ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
E	ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
D	ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
C	ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
B1	ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
B	ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
A	ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems

- 
- \*1: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up-to-date information on our recommended CRSs. Other CRSs may also be suitable for use. Refer to the CRS manufacturer's list of recommended vehicles for the CRS in question.
  - \*2: Honda Baby Safe ISOFIX is able to equipped for rear-facing.
  - IUF: Suitable for forward-facing ISOFIX child restraints system of universal category approved for use in this mass group.
  - IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS), including those listed in the corresponding box in the right column of the table. These ISOFIX CRS are those of the 'specific vehicle', 'restricted' or 'semi-universal' categories.
  - X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.
- 

**■ i-Size Child Restraint Systems**

	Seating position			
	Front Passenger	Rear L-side	Rear R-side	Rear Centre
i-Size child restraint system	—	i-U	i-U	—

---

i-U: Suitable for forward- and rearward-facing i-Size "universal" child restraint systems.

---

## ■ Child Restraint Systems to be Installed with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

Not all of the various types of child restraint systems are suitable for use in your vehicle. Before you purchase or use a child restraint system, refer to the following table to ensure that the restraint system is appropriate for the vehicle, the seating position, and the child's weight (mass group) and size.

### ☒ Child Restraint Systems to be Installed with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

Mass group is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the mass group as indicated in the manufacturer's instructions as well as on the package and labels of the child restraint system.

The particular child restraint systems listed in the table are genuine Honda products. They are available from your dealer.

For correct installation, refer to the instructions manual that came with the child restraint system.

■ Child Restraint Systems installed with Seat Belt

MASS Group	Seating position					Recommended Child Restraint Systems*1
	Front passenger		Rear seat			
	Passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch position		L-Side	R-Side	Centre	
	ON	OFF				
group 0 up to 10 kg	X	U*2	U	U	U	Honda Baby Safe
group 0+ up to 13 kg	X	U*2	U	U	U	Honda Baby Safe
group I 9 to 18 kg	UF*2	U*2	U	U	U	Honda ISOFIX (Belted) Honda Eclipse
group II 15 to 25 kg	UF*2	U*2	U, L*3	U, L*3	U	Honda KID FIX XP SICT L; Honda KID FIX XP SICT with ISOFIX mounted
group III 22 to 36 kg	UF*2	U*2	U, L*3	U, L*3	U	Honda KID FIX XP SICT L; Honda KID FIX XP SICT with ISOFIX mounted

U: Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

L: Suitable for particular child restraint systems (CRS) given in the table.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

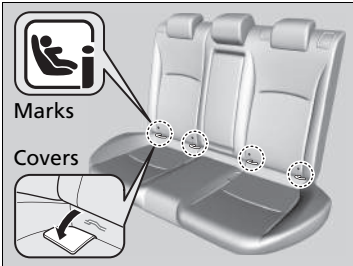
\*1: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up-to-date information on our recommended CRSs. Other CRSs may also be suitable for use. Refer to the CRS manufacturer's list of recommended vehicles for the CRS in question.

\*2: Move the front seat to its slide rail rearmost position and adjust the front seat-back angle to its most upright position.

\*3: Honda KID FIX XP SICT is able to equipped for front-facing.

## ■ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



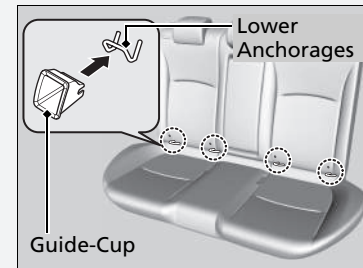
1. Locate the anchorage marks affixed to the base of the seat cushion.
2. Pull out the anchorage covers under the marks to expose the lower anchorages.

## ▣ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

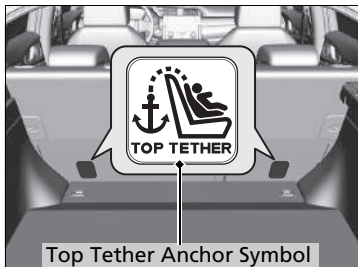
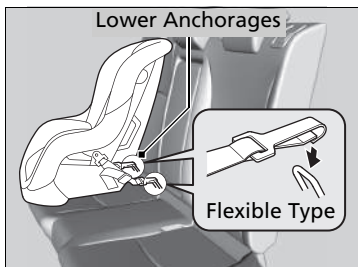
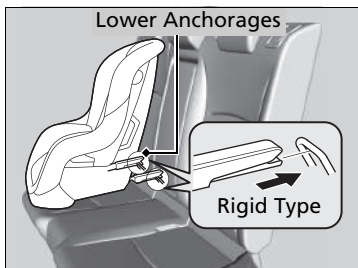
### ⚠ WARNING

Never attach two child restraint system to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.







3. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

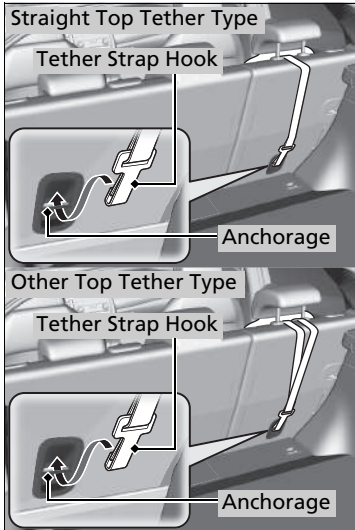
▶ When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

▶▶ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

**WARNING:** Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether anchor symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle. A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.



**Child restraint system with tether strap**

**4.** Raise the head restraint to its highest position.

**Models with luggage area cover**

► Retract the luggage area cover.

► **Luggage Area Cover\*** P. 231

**5.** Route the tether strap between the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.

► Make sure the strap is not twisted.

**6.** Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

**7.** Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.

**8.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

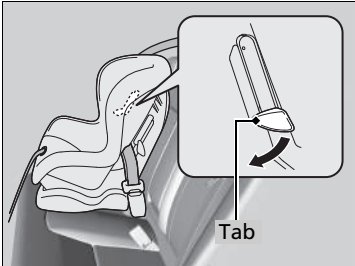
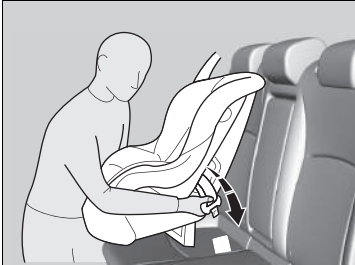
\* Not available on all models



**Child restraint system with support leg**

4. Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
  - ▶ Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support. If this is the case, move the seat forward or back so that the support leg is resting on a level section.
  - ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child seat and the seat in front of it.

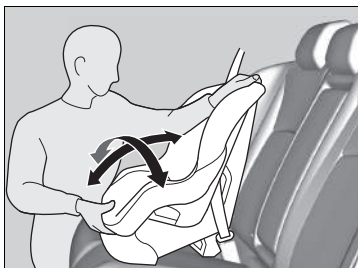
## Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
  - ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
3. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
4. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
  - ▶ When doing this, place your weight on child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
5. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
  - ▶ When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

## Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

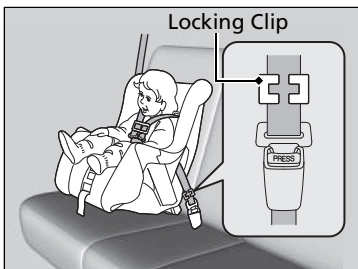


6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

**Except European models**

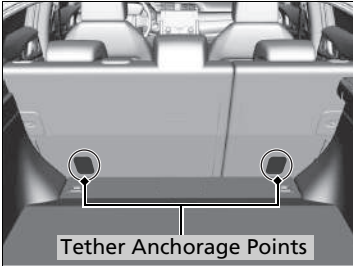
If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through the steps 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.



3. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
4. Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
5. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to steps 6 and 7.

## ■ Adding Security with a Tether



Two tether anchorage points are located behind each rear outer seating positions. If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point.

### ■ Models with luggage area cover

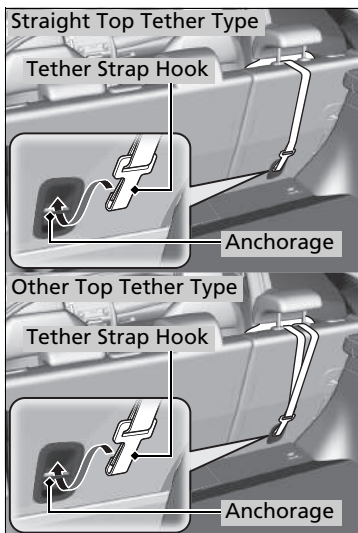
- ▶ Retract the luggage area cover.
  - **Luggage Area Cover\*** P. 231

## ▣ Adding Security with a Tether

**WARNING:** Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for forward facing child seats when using the seat belt or lower anchorages.

\* Not available on all models



2. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap between the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
  - ▶ Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

## Safety of Larger Children

### ■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

### ■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



#### ■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

### ▶▶ Safety of Larger Children

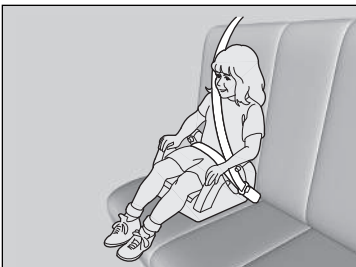
## ⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

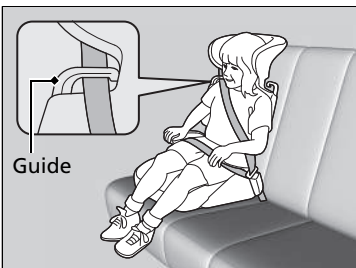
If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.



## Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

## Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

## ■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

## ■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.


## Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

### ■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the hatch open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the hatch open, open all the windows and set the heating system\*/climate control system\* as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the heating system\*/climate control system\* in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

### Carbon Monoxide Gas

## ⚠ WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

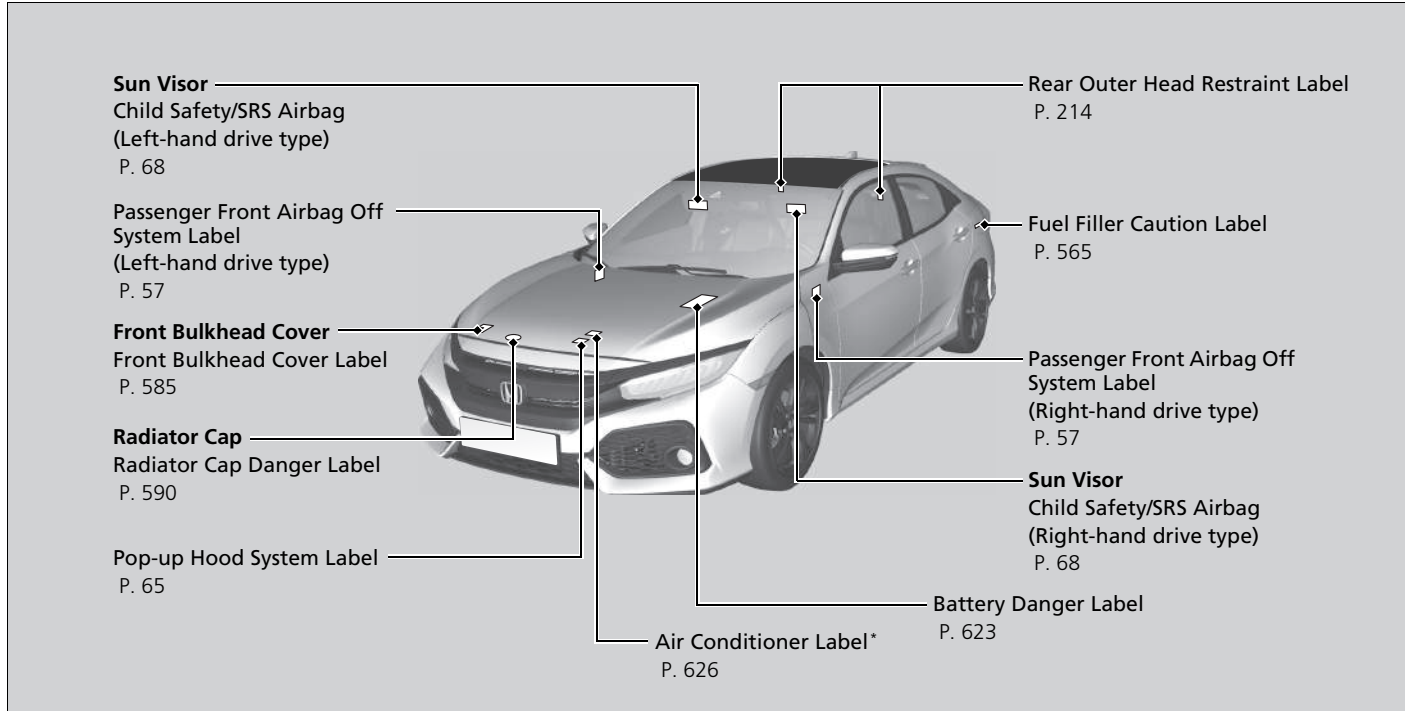
An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.

Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

## Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



\* Not available on all models



# Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.













## **Indicators**

Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages..... 117













## **Gauges and Driver Information Interface**

Gauges..... 136

Driver Information Interface ..... 137






Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
 (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off if the parking brake has been released.</li> <li>Comes on when the parking brake is applied and goes off when it is released.</li> <li>Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.</li> <li>The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released.</li> <li>Comes on for about 15 seconds when you pull the electric parking brake switch while the ignition switch is in LOCK *1.</li> <li>Stays on for about 15 seconds when you turn the ignition switch to LOCK *1 while the electric parking brake is set.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>What to do it comes on while driving</b> P. 673</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Comes on along with the ABS indicator</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks</b> P. 673</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Blinks and the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on at the same time</b> - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set.               <p>Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on</b> P. 674</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	  

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.









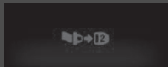
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 538</li> </ul>	
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 538</li> </ul>	
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, and goes off when the engine starts.</li> <li>Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Starting the Engine</b> P. 453, 456</li> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place.</li> <li>▶ <b>If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On</b> P. 671</li> </ul>	
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, and goes off when the engine starts.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>• Shows the self-testing condition of the diagnostics of the emission control system.</li> </ul>	

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.














Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
 (Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system or the automatic brake hold system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>	
		<p><b>Models with CMBS</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the radar sensor.</li> <li>• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit.   <b>Load Limit</b> P. 447</li> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	









\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, and goes off when the engine starts.</li> <li>Comes on when the battery is not charging.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Turn off the automatic heating system*/climate control system* and rear demister in order to reduce electricity consumption.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>If the Charging System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 671</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
	Shift Up Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when shifting up is recommended.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Shift Up/Down Indicators</b> P. 463</li> </ul>	—
	Shift Down Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when shifting down is recommended.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Shift Up/Down Indicators</b> P. 463</li> </ul>	—
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>.</li> <li>If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later.</li> <li>Blinks while driving if either you and/or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts.</li> <li><b>Stays on after you and/or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt(s)</b> - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Seat Belt Reminder</b> P. 43</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	 





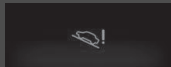




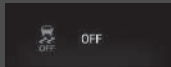

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Low Fuel Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 7.0 litres/ 1.54 Imp gal left).</li> <li>Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on</b> - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.</li> <li><b>Blinks</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	 
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the Range on the driver information interface reaches to 0.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Maximum vehicle speed is restricted.</li> <li>Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. The vehicle speed limit will be released when refueling 10 Litres (2.2 Imp gal) or more.   <b>Refueling</b> P. 565</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the remaining fuel is nearly-empty.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The vehicle will stop soon.</li> <li>You cannot restart the engine. Immediately refuel your vehicle.   <b>Refueling</b> P. 565</li> </ul>	
	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.   <b>Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)</b> P. 540</li> </ul>	



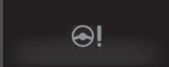






\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	<p>Supplemental Restraint System Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Supplemental restraint system</li> <li>- Side airbag system</li> <li>- Side curtain airbag system</li> <li>- Seat belt tensioner</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
<p>ON </p> <p>OFF </p>	<p>Passenger Front Airbag On/Off Indicators</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Both indicators come on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off after a system check up. When the passenger front airbag is active: The on indicator comes back on and remains on for about 60 seconds. When the passenger front airbag is inactive: The off indicator comes back on and stays on. This is a reminder that the passenger front airbag is deactivated.</li> </ul>	<p> <b>Passenger Front Airbag Off System</b> P. 56</p>	


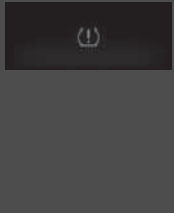

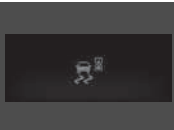
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Blinks when VSA is active.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, brake assist or hill start assist system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System</b> P. 524</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	 
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when you partially disable VSA.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>VSA On and Off</b> P. 525</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	





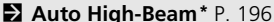
\*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, and goes off when the engine starts.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS System.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 675</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
	Adaptive Damper System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the Dynamic Mode is on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Damper System*</b> P. 472</li> </ul>	
	Glow Plugs Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Models without keyless access system</b></li> </ul> </li> <li>Comes on for a while when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup> under the extremely low engine coolant temperature condition, then goes off.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Models with keyless access system</b></li> </ul> </li> <li>Comes on if the engine is cold when you press the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The engine is cold. The engine can be started once the indicator goes off.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Starting the Engine</b> P. 453, 456</li> </ul> </li> <li>If you still find it hard to start the engine, have your vehicle inspected by your dealer.</li> <li>The engine automatically starts when the indicator goes off.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Starting the Engine</b> P. 453, 456</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

\* 1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.






Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	<p>Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>[II]</b>*1, then goes off.</li> <li>• May come on briefly if the ignition switch is turned to ON <b>[II]</b>*1 and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete.</li> <li>• Comes on and stays on when:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low.</li> <li>- The system has not been initialised.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system, or when a compact spare tyre* is temporarily installed.</li> <li>• Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary.</li> <li>• <b>Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures</b> - The system needs to be initialised.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▣ <b>Deflation Warning System Calibration</b> P. 531</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Blinks and remains on</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare tyre, get your regular tyre repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.</li> <li>• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	  

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.






Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	System Message Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>While the indicator is on, press the  (display/information) button to see the message again.</li> <li>Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Respond to the message accordingly.</li> <li>The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the  button is pressed.</li> </ul>	—
	Auto High-Beam Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met.</li> </ul>	 <b>Auto High-Beam*</b> P. 196	—

\* Not available on all models



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blink when you operate the turn signal lever.</li> <li>• If you press the hazard warning button, both indicators and all turn signals blink at the same time.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Does not blink or blinks rapidly</b> - A turn signal light bulb has blown. Change the bulb immediately.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Replacing Light Bulbs</b> P. 600, 602, 603</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blink four times when the emergency stop signal is active.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Emergency Stop Signal</b> P. 542</li> </ul>	
	High Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.</li> </ul>	—	—
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the light switch in a position other than <b>OFF</b> or when the switch is set to <b>AUTO</b> and the exterior lights come on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you remove the key from the ignition switch*1 while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.</li> </ul>	—
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the front fog lights are on.</li> </ul>	—	—
	Rear Fog Light Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the rear fog light is on.</li> </ul>	—	—





\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.






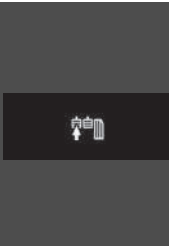



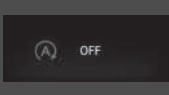
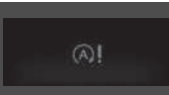
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*2
 <p>Indicator</p>	<p>Immobilizer System Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks</b> - You cannot start the engine. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK <b>0</b>*1, pull the key out*2, and then insert the key and turn it to ON <b>II</b>*1 again.</li> <li><b>Repeatedly blinks</b> - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.</li> </ul>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Models without keyless access system</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">  </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">  </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Models with keyless access system</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">  </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">  </div>

Instrument Panel





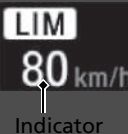




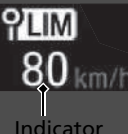


\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.







\*2: Right-hand drive models only: Apply and hold the brake and/or clutch pedal before turning the ignition on.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
 <p>Indicator</p>	<p>Security System Alarm Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Security System Alarm</b> P. 173</p>	
	<p>ECON Mode Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when ECON mode is on.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>ECON Mode</b> P. 465</p>	






Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when Auto Idle Stop is in operation. The engine automatically shuts off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Auto Idle Stop</b> P. 466</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when the ambient conditions may cause the windows to fog up.</li> <li>Blinks when the ambient conditions may become different from the climate control settings you have selected.</li> <li>Blinks when the  button is pressed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Depress the clutch pedal. The engine automatically restarts.</li> <li> <b>Auto Idle Stop</b> P. 466</li> </ul>	
	Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> </ul>	—	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the Auto Idle Stop system has been turned off by the Auto Idle Stop system <b>OFF</b> button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF</b> P. 467</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks if there is a problem with the Auto Idle Stop system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	




\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Cruise Main Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>MAIN</b> button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the <b>LIM</b> button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Cruise Control*</b> P. 473</li> </ul>	—
	Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>MAIN</b> button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the <b>LIM</b> button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Adjustable Speed Limiter</b> P. 477</li> </ul>	—
	Cruise Control and Adjustable Speed Limiter Set Speed Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you have set a speed for cruise control.</li> <li>Comes on when you have set a speed for adjustable speed limiter.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Cruise Control*</b> P. 473</li> <li> <b>Adjustable Speed Limiter</b> P. 478</li> </ul>	—
	Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>MAIN</b> button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the <b>LIM</b> button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Intelligent Speed Limiter</b> P. 481</li> </ul>	—
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Intelligent Speed Limiter Set Speed Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.</li> <li>Comes on when you have set a speed for intelligent speed limiter.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*</b> P. 490</li> <li> <b>Intelligent Speed Limiter</b> P. 481</li> </ul>	—

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the road departure mitigation system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicator may comes on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit.   <b>Load Limit</b> P. 447</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if the road departure mitigation system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	







\*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the road departure mitigation system shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel.</li> <li>The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you cleaned the radar sensor.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  <b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*</b> P. 543                             </li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system* to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  <b>Front Sensor Camera*</b> P. 488                             </li> </ul> </li> </ul>	 


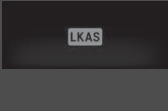

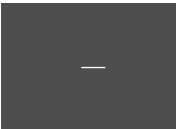
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the road departure mitigation system shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Front Sensor Camera</b>* P. 488</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

\* Not available on all models



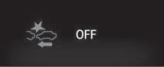





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with ACC.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.</li> <li>ACC has been automatically cancelled.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit.   <b>Load Limit</b> P. 447</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if the ACC is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>MAIN</b> button.</li> </ul>	 <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*</b> P. 490	

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.




Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>MAIN</b> button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*</b> P. 517</li> </ul>	

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.





Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on when you deactivate the CMBS. A driver information interface message appears for five seconds.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly without the CMBS off</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*</b> P. 543</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	 
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicator may comes on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Load Limit</b> P. 447</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if the CMBS is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the CMBS system shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on</b> - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Front Sensor Camera*</b> P. 488</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you cleaned the camera.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*</b> P. 543</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.


\* Not available on all models




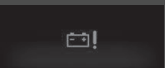
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the CMBS system shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system* to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Front Sensor Camera</b>* P. 488</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as a tunnel.</li> <li>The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you cleaned the radar sensor.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)</b>* P. 543</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

\* Not available on all models






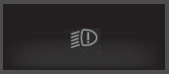


Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Blind spot information Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>• Stays on while the blind spot information system is turned off.</li> </ul>	<p>☒ <b>Customized Features</b> P. 354</p>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of sensor.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Remove the obstacle in the vicinity of sensor.</li> </ul> <p>☒ <b>Blind spot information (BSI) System*</b> P. 527</p>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	

## Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages




The following messages appear only on the driver information interface. Press the  (display/information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if any door or the hatch is not completely closed.</li> <li>• Appears if any door or the hatch is opened while driving. The beeper sounds.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Goes off when all doors and the hatch are closed.</li> </ul>
<p>Models with parking sensor system</p>  <p>Models with rearview camera system</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if there is a problem with the parking sensor system.</li> <li>• If there is a problem with any of the sensors, the all sensor indicator(s) comes on in red.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on or the beeper does not stop even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.</li> <li>• Appears along with the battery charging system indicator when the battery is not charging.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Checking the Battery</b> P. 619</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Turn off the automatic heating system*/climate control system* and rear demister to reduce electricity consumption.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>If the Charging System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 671</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

\* Not available on all models







Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears once if the outside temperature is below 3°C while the ignition switch is in ON *1.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There is a possibility that the road surface is icy and slippery.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the engine oil level is low while the engine is running.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears while driving</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place.   <b>If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears</b> P. 678</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the engine is running, there is a system problem in the engine oil level sensor.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears while driving</b> - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Models with LED headlights</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when there is a problem with the headlights.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears while driving</b> - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when there is a problem with the pop-up hood system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.   <b>Pop-up Hood System</b> P. 64</li> </ul>





\*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Overheating</b> P. 668</p>
<p>Models without audio system</p>  <p>Models with colour audio system</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears while you are customizing the settings and the parking brake is released.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Customized Features*</b> P. 143</p>





\* Not available on all models


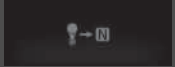



Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if the automatic brake hold is automatically cancelled while it is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Immediately depress the brake pedal.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the automatic brake hold system is turned off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 538</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without wearing the driver's seat belt.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fasten the driver's seat belt.</li> <li>➤ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 538</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.</li> <li>➤ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 538</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while it is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 538</li> <li>➤ <b>Parking Brake</b> P. 535</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears while driving</b> - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.</li> <li>➤ <b>Parking Brake</b> P. 535</li> </ul>




Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when any of the rear seat belts are latched or unlatched, or either rear door is opened and closed.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Seat Belt Reminder</b> P. 43</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the vehicle speed reaches the set speed. You can set two different speeds for the alarm.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Speed Alarm</b> P. 141</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the starter system has a problem.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>As a temporary measure, hold the ignition switch to START *1 for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and clutch pedal, manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>


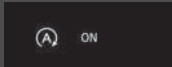
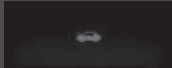
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you need to regenerate the diesel particulate filter (DPF). This is not a DPF failure.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)</b> P. 594</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when particulate matter (PM) has started clogging the diesel particulate filter (DPF) system. This is a problem.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when water has accumulated in the fuel system.</li> <li>Appears if you have parked your vehicle for an extended period.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have a dealer drain off the water from the system as soon as possible. Accumulated water may cause damage to the fuel system.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears during driving if there is a problem with the engine control system.</li> <li>Appears if you do not use the proper fuel for the climate or regional conditions.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>If the PGM-FI Symbol Appears</b> P. 679</li> <li>Use of inadequate fuel may reduce engine power.</li> <li>➤ <b>Fuel recommendation</b> P. 565</li> </ul>



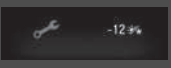
Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the engine does not restart automatically due to the following reasons:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The bonnet is open.</li> <li>- There is a problem in the system that disables Auto Idle Stop.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Follow the normal procedure to start the engine.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Starting the Engine</b> P. 453, 456</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when you move the shift lever from <b>N</b> to any other position without depressing the clutch pedal while Auto Idle Stop is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The engine will not start even when the battery charge becomes low. Shift to <b>N</b> to avoid the battery charge becomes low.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Auto Idle Stop</b> P. 466</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears in white if the clutch pedal is not fully depressed when you start the engine.</li> <li>• Appears in amber when the following conditions are kept while Auto Idle Stop is in operation:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- You are not wearing a seat belt.</li> <li>- The shift lever is in any position except <b>N</b>.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Depress the clutch pedal.</li> <li>• Depress the clutch pedal. Wear the seat belt immediately, and continue to keep the shift lever in <b>N</b> next time Auto Idle Stop activates.</li> </ul>

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate for some reason.</li> <li>• Appears when the engine restarts automatically.</li> <li>• Appears when the battery temperature is around 5°C or lower.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Auto Idle Stop Activates When:</b> P. 468</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the engine coolant temperature is too low or high.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Auto Idle Stop does not activate when:</b> P. 468</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the automatic heating system*/climate control system* is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Auto Idle Stop Activates When:</b> P. 468</p>





Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the battery charge level is low.</li> <li>• Appears when the battery is low performance.</li> <li>• Appears when the system is under the following conditions while Auto Idle Stop activates:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The battery charge level is low.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>► <b>Auto Idle Stop</b> P. 466</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The engine restarts automatically in a few seconds.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when you turn the Auto Idle Stop system on.</li> </ul>	<p>► <b>Auto Idle Stop</b> P. 466</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the bonnet is opened.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Close the bonnet.</li> </ul>

Models with Service Reminder System

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when any of the service items is required in less than 30 days.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The remaining days will be counted down per day.  <b>➤ Service Reminder System* P. 573</b></li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when any of the service items is required in less than 10 days.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have the indicated service performed as soon as possible.  <b>➤ Service Reminder System* P. 573</b></li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the indicated maintenance service is still not done after the remaining time reaches 0.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Your vehicle has passed the service required point. Immediately have the service performed and make sure to reset the service reminder.  <b>➤ Service Reminder System* P. 573</b></li> </ul>



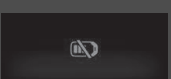



Instrument Panel






Models without keyless access system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in ACCESSORY <b>I</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn the ignition switch to LOCK <b>0</b>, then remove the key.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in LOCK <b>0</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Remove the key from the ignition switch.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the ignition key is turned to ACCESSORY <b>I</b> from ON <b>II</b>. (The driver's door is closed.)</li> </ul>	<p>—</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the ignition switch is turned to START <b>III</b> without depressing the clutch pedal.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn the ignition switch with depressing the clutch pedal.</li> </ul>










Models with keyless access system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the adaptive damper system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this message appeared, your vehicle has normal damping ability without the adaptive damper feature.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system or keyless starting system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you close the door with the power mode on without the keyless remote inside the vehicle.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The message goes away when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle, and close the door.   <b>Keyless Remote Reminder</b> P. 186</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the keyless remote battery becomes weak.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Replace the battery as soon as possible.   <b>Keyless Remote</b> * P. 625</li> </ul>



Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.</li> <li>Appears after you unlock and open the driver's door.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Starting the Engine</b> P. 456</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the power mode is ACCESSORY.</li> <li>Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is ACCESSORY.</li> </ul>	<p>—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button twice with your foot off the clutch pedal to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if the keyless remote's battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. The beeper sounds six times.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bring the back of the keyless remote into contact with the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button.</li> </ul> <p>➤ <b>If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak</b> P. 663</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the steering wheel is locked.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button is pressed while driving.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Emergency Engine Stop</b> P. 664</p>



Models with CMBS

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the system predicts the vehicle cutting in in front of you from the right and decrease your vehicle speed according to the cut-in vehicle.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The system automatically keeps a safe distance from the cut-in vehicle when the system predicts the cutting in.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>How the system works</b> P. 503, 528, 544</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the system predicts the vehicle cutting in in front of you from the left and decrease your vehicle speed according to the cut-in vehicle.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The system automatically keeps a safe distance from the cut-in vehicle when the system predicts the cutting in.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>How the system works</b> P. 503, 528, 544</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when ACC has been automatically cancelled.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves. Press the <b>RES/+</b> button.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*</b> P. 490</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close while ACC is in operation.</li> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>-/SET</b> button while the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC has been automatically cancelled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*</b> P. 490</li> </ul> </li> <li>ACC cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*</b> P. 490</li> </ul> </li> </ul>




Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if the VSA or traction control function operates while ACC is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC has been automatically cancelled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*</b> P. 490</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>RES/+</b> or <b>-/SET</b> button while the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is depressed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*</b> P. 490</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>RES/+</b> or <b>-/SET</b> button while the vehicle is moving and the clutch pedal is depressed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*</b> P. 490</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the clutch pedal is applied too long while ACC is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC has been automatically cancelled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*</b> P. 490</li> </ul> </li> </ul>


\* Not available on all models

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the speed of the vehicle is too high for you to set ACC.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reduce the speed, then set ACC.                      ➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*</b> P. 490</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when ACC is cancelled due to excessive high vehicle speed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reduce the speed, then reset ACC.                      ➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*</b> P. 490</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the speed of the vehicle is too low for you to set ACC.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Raise the speed, then set ACC.                      ➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*</b> P. 490</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when ACC is cancelled due to excessive low vehicle speed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Raise the speed, then reset ACC.                      ➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*</b> P. 490</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you. The beeper sounds.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)                      ➤ <b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*</b> P. 543                      ➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*</b> P. 490</li> </ul>


Message	Condition	Explanation
	<p><b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane. The steering wheel vibrates rapidly.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*</b> P. 517</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<p><b>Road Departure Mitigation System</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane.</li> </ul> <p><b>When you selected Warning Only</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.</li> </ul> <p><b>When you selected Normal, Delayed or Early</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane. The system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Road Departure Mitigation System*</b> P. 505</li> </ul> </li> <li>• You can change the setting for the road departure mitigation system. <b>Normal, Delayed, Warning Only, and Early</b> can be selected.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Customized Features*</b> P. 143, 354</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blinks when you fail to steer the vehicle. The beeper sounds simultaneously.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Operate the steering wheel to resume the LKAS.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but there is a problem with a system related to the LKAS. The LKAS cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously if selected by customization.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If any other system indicators come on, such as the VSA, ABS and brake system, take appropriate action.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Indicators</b> P. 94</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

\* Not available on all models

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front.</li> <li>• May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth.</li> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you clean the sensor cover.</li> </ul> <p>➤ <b>Honda Sensing*</b> P. 29</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if the temperature inside the front sensor camera is too high and the ACC, LKAS, traffic sign recognition system and auto high-beam cannot be activated.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the climate control system to cool down the camera.</li> <li>• <b>Disappears</b> - The camera has been cooled down and the systems are activated normally.</li> </ul> <p>➤ <b>Front Sensor Camera*</b> P. 488</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if the area around the front sensor camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc and be prevented from detecting a vehicle in front.</li> <li>• May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the front window gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you cleaned the area around the camera.</li> </ul> <p>➤ <b>Front Sensor Camera*</b> P. 488</p>


Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if there is a problem with the auto high-beam.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manually operate the headlight switch.</li> <li>• If you are driving with the high-beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams.</li> </ul>

Models with headlight washer

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when washer fluid gets low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refill washer fluid.  <span>▶ Refilling Window Washer Fluid P. 593</span> </li> </ul>



## Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, tachometer, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the ignition switch is in ON <sup>\*1</sup>.

### Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h or mph.

### Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

### Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.



### Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.


#### Speedometer

**Right-hand drive type except Cyprus models**

Press the  (display/information) button repeatedly until the  icon is shown on the driver information interface. Press **ENTER**, then press and hold it again. The speedometer reading and the displayed measurements will switch between km/h and mph.

#### Fuel Gauge

##### NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches . Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

#### Temperature Gauge

##### NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.

 **Overheating** P. 668




## Driver Information Interface

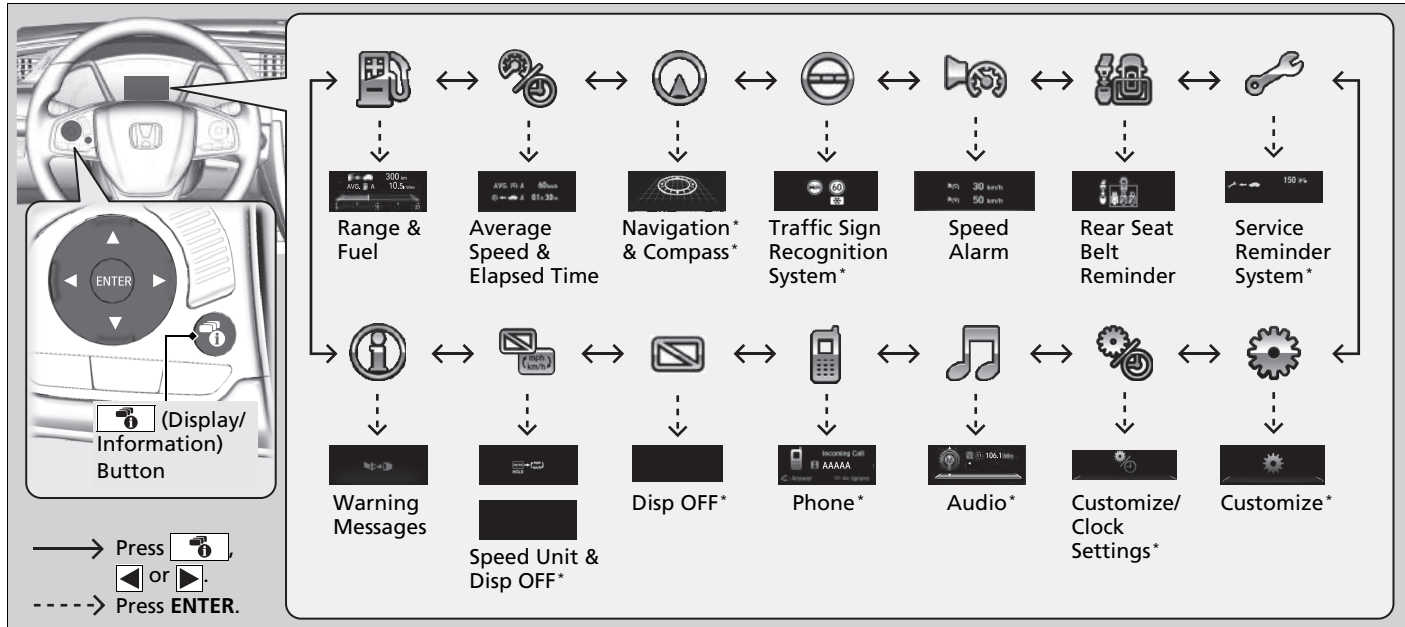
The driver information interface shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature indicator, and other gauges.

It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

### Switching the Display

#### Main displays

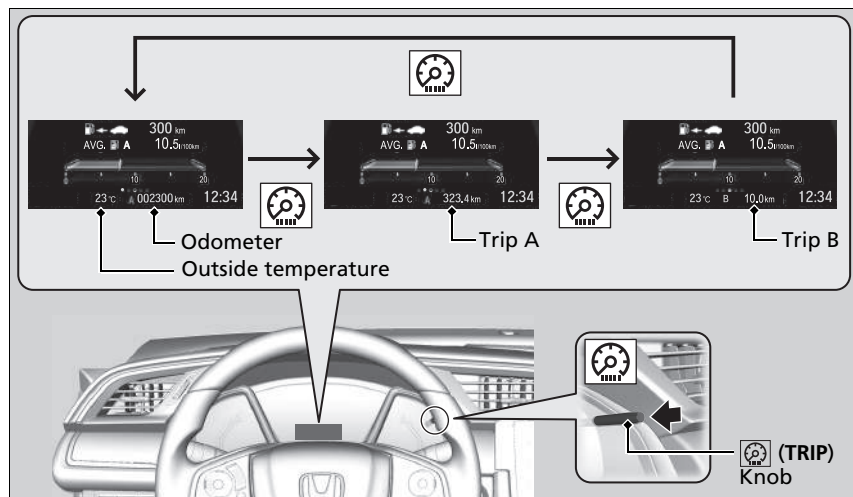
Press the  (display/information) button, and then press  or  to change the display. Press **ENTER** to see detailed information.



\* Not available on all models

### ■ Trip computer

Press the  (TRIP) knob to change display.



Instrument Panel


### ■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres or miles that your vehicle has accumulated.


### ■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of kilometres or miles driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

### ▶▶ Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the  knob.

## ■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the  knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

## ■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100 km or mpg. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

## ■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimate is based on the fuel economy of your previous trips.

## ■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

## ■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in km/h or mph since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

## ■ Instant Fuel Economy Gauge

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km or mpg.

### ⌘ Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

➤ **Customized Features\*** P. 143, 354

### ⌘ Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➤ **Customized Features\*** P. 143, 354

### ⌘ Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

➤ **Customized Features\*** P. 143, 354

### ⌘ Instant Fuel Economy Gauge

You may temporarily find the instant fuel economy higher than in normal driving while the DPF (diesel particulate filter) system is in operation.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Service Reminder System\*

Shows the service reminder system.


➤ **Service Reminder System\*** P. 573

## ■ Rear Seat Belt Reminder

Appears when any of the rear seat belts are latched or unlatched.

## ■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>\*1</sup>, the outside temperature indicator blinks for ten seconds.

### ■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## ☒ Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

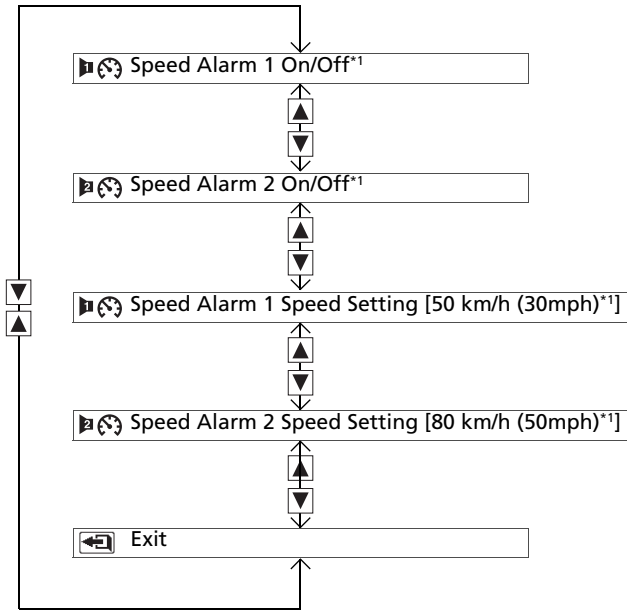
Use the driver information interface or audio/information screen's customized features to correct the temperature.

➤ **Customized Features\*** P. 143, 354

## Speed Alarm

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

Each time you press the ▲/▼ button, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:



\*1: Default Setting

## ■ Turn-by-Turn Directions\*

Shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination linked with the navigation system.

➤ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

## ■ Traffic Sign Recognition System\*

Shows the traffic sign recognition system.

➤ **Traffic Sign Recognition System\*** P. 510

## ■ Audio\*

Shows the current audio information.

➤ **Audio System Basic Operation** P. 256, 281

## ■ Phone\*

Shows the current phone information.

➤ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 391, 412

## ▶▶ Turn-by-Turn Directions\*

### Models with navigation system

The driver information interface shows a compass when the route guidance is not used.

You can select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on or not during the route guidance.

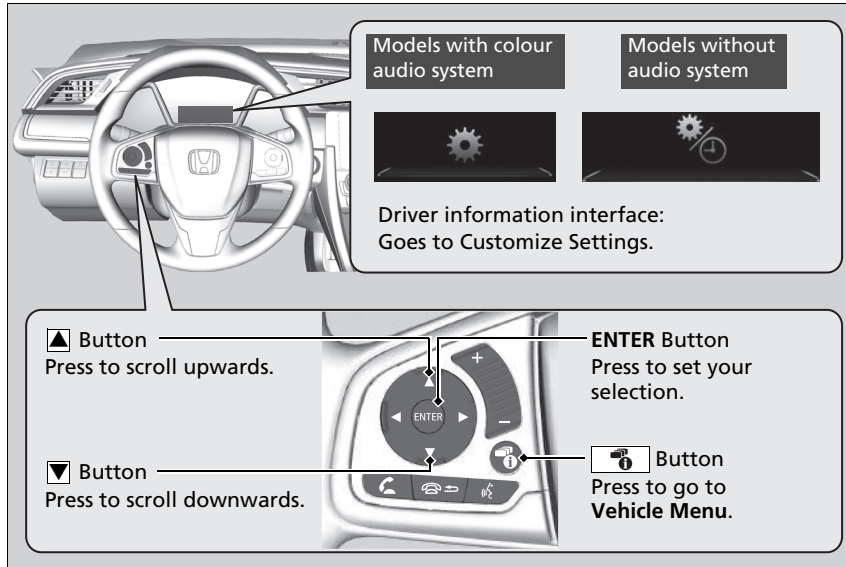
➤ **Customized Features\*** P. 143, 354

## ■ Customized Features\*

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

### ■ How to customize

Select the / (Customize Settings) screen by pressing the button while the ignition switch is in ON , and the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the parking brake is set. Select / , then press the **ENTER** button.



## ▶ Customized Features\*

To customize other features, press the / button.

▶ **List of customizable options** P. 147

▶ **Example of customization settings** P. 153

Set the parking brake before you attempt to change any customized setting.

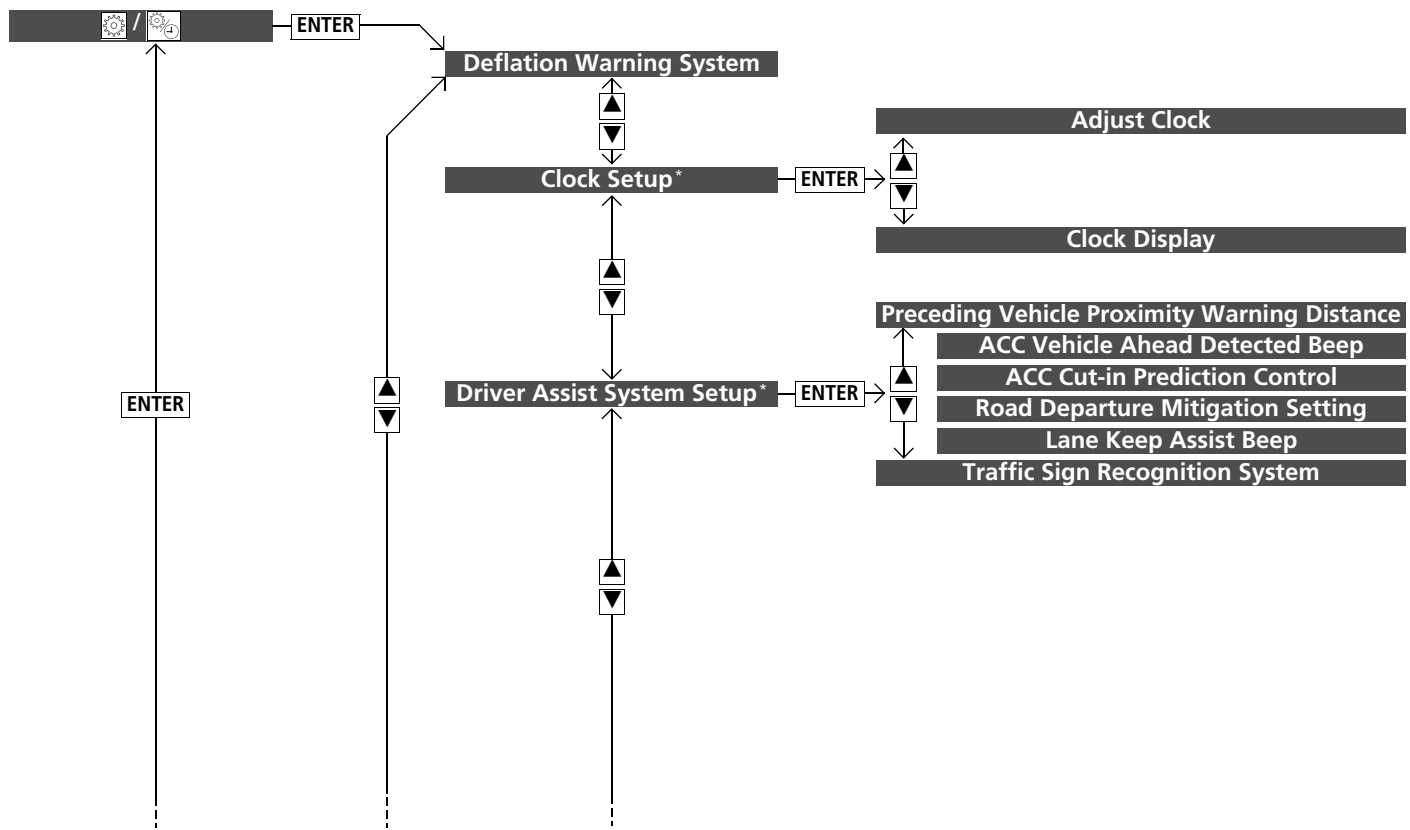
\* Not available on all models

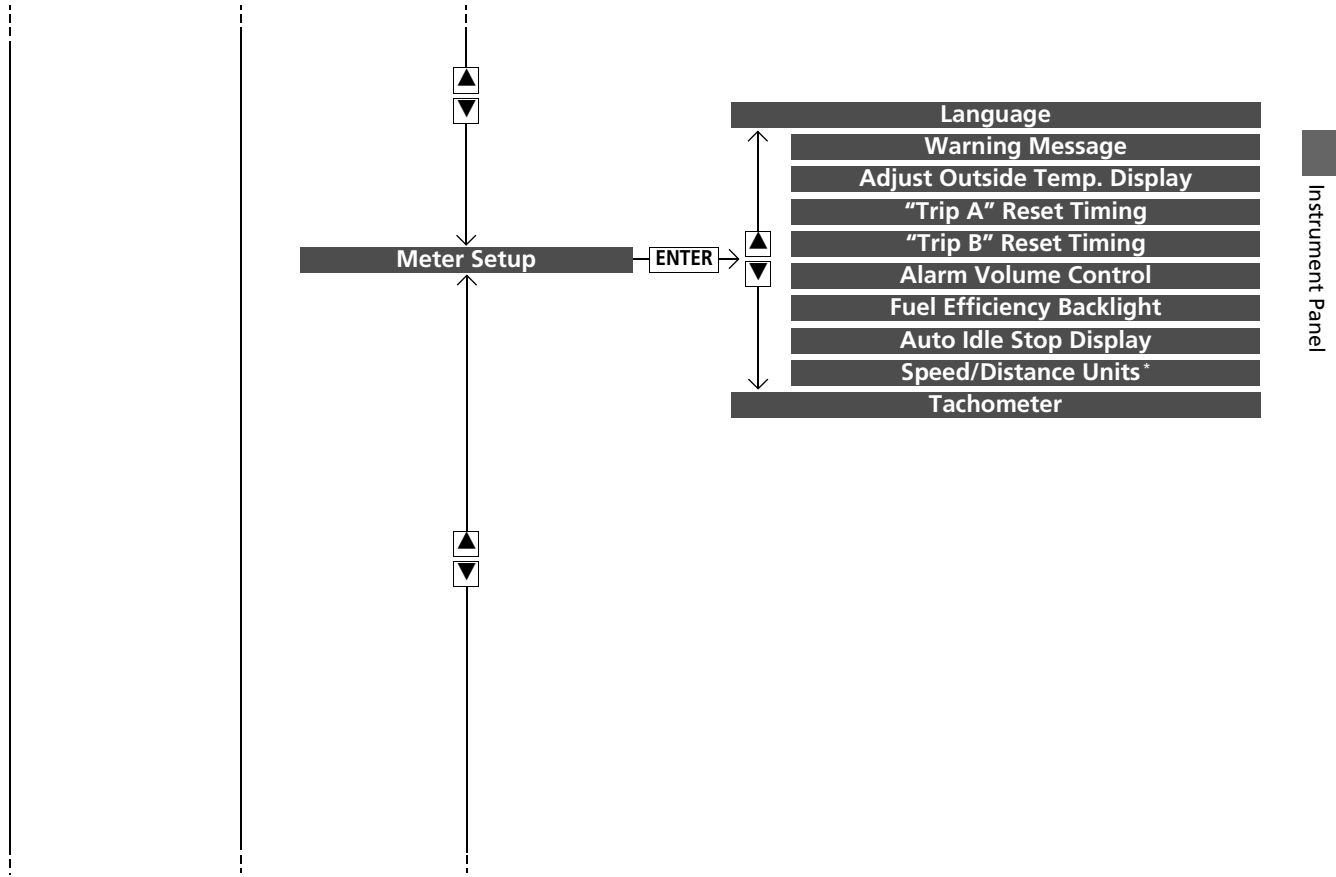


■ **Customization flow**

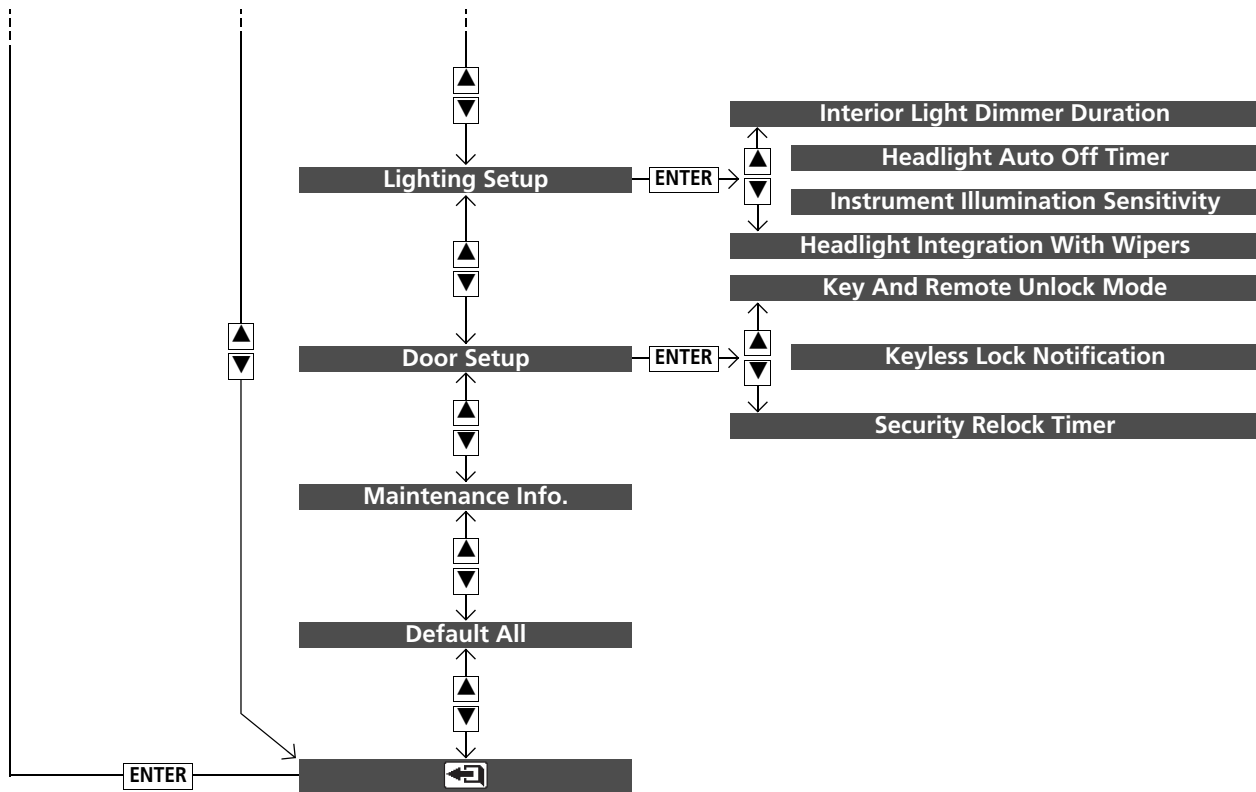
Press the  button.

Instrument Panel





\* Not available on all models



■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Deflation Warning System</b>	—	Initialises the deflation warning system.	<b>Initialise/Cancel</b>
<b>Clock Setup*</b>	<b>Adjust Clock</b>	Adjust the time. ➤ <b>Adjusting the Clock</b> P. 156	—
	<b>Clock Display</b>	Sets time display 24 hour, 12 hour or off.	<b>24 h/12 h*<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Driver Assist System Setup*</b>	<b>Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning Distance</b>	Changes the distance at which CMBS alerts.	<b>Far/Normal*<sup>1</sup>/Near</b>
	<b>ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep</b>	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of ACC range.	<b>ON/OFF*<sup>1</sup></b>
	<b>ACC Cut-in Prediction Control</b>	Turns the ACC cut-in prediction control feature on and off.	<b>ON*<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>
	<b>Road Departure Mitigation Setting</b>	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	<b>Normal*<sup>1</sup>/Delayed/Warning Only/Early</b>
	<b>Lane Keep Assist Beep</b>	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	<b>ON/OFF*<sup>1</sup></b>
	<b>Traffic Sign Recognition System</b>	Selects whether the traffic sign small icons come on the driver information interface.	<b>Small Icons ON*<sup>1</sup>/Small Icons OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Meter Setup</b>	<b>Language</b>	Changes the displayed language.	<b>English*<sup>1</sup>/French/Spanish/ German/Italian/ Portuguese/Russian/ Finnish/Norwegian/ Swedish/Danish/Dutch/ Polish/Turkish</b>
	<b>Warning Message</b>	Switches warning message to be displayed or not.	<b>ON/OFF*<sup>1</sup></b>
	<b>Adjust Outside Temp. Display</b>	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	<b>-3°C ~ ±0°C*<sup>1</sup> ~ +3°C</b>
	<b>"Trip A" Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	<b>When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/ Manual Reset*<sup>1</sup></b>
	<b>"Trip B" Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	<b>When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/ Manual Reset*<sup>1</sup></b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Meter Setup</b>	<b>Alarm Volume Control</b>	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	<b>Max/Mid<sup>*1</sup>/Min</b>
	<b>Fuel Efficiency Backlight</b>	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
	<b>Auto Idle Stop Display</b>	Selects whether the Auto Idle Stop display comes on or not.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
	<b>Speed/Distance Units<sup>*</sup></b>	Selects the trip computer units.	<b>mph·miles<sup>*1</sup>/km/h·km</b>
	<b>Tachometer</b>	Selects whether the tachometer is displayed on the driver information interface.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Lighting Setup</b>	<b>Interior Light Dimmer Duration</b>	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	<b>60sec/30sec*<sup>1</sup>/15sec</b>
	<b>Headlight Auto Off Timer</b>	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	<b>60sec/30sec/15sec*<sup>1</sup>/0sec</b>
	<b>Instrument Illumination Sensitivity</b>	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the <b>AUTO</b> position.	<b>Max/High/Mid*<sup>1</sup>/Low/Min</b>
	<b>Headlight Integration With Wipers</b>	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the <b>AUTO</b> position.	<b>ON*<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

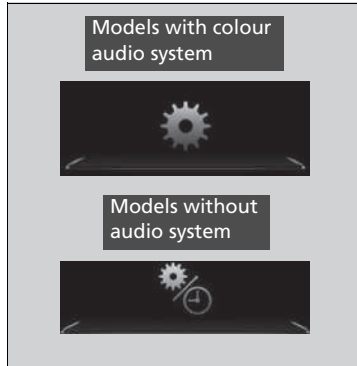


Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Door Setup</b>	<b>Key And Remote Unlock Mode</b>	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first operation of the remote or ignition key.	<b>Driver Door Only<sup>*1</sup>/All Doors</b>
	<b>Keyless Lock Notification</b>	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
	<b>Security Relock Timer</b>	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	<b>90sec/60sec/30sec<sup>*1</sup></b>
<b>Maintenance Info.</b>	—	Cancels/Resets the service reminder display when you have performed the maintenance service.	<b>Cancel/All Due Items</b>
<b>Default All</b>	—	Cancels/Resets all the customized settings as default.	<b>OK/Cancel</b>

\*1:Default Setting

### ■ Example of customization settings

The steps for changing the “Trip A” Reset Timing setting to **When Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for “Trip A” Reset Timing is **Manual Reset**.







1. Press the button to select / , then press the **ENTER** button.



2. Press the button until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the **ENTER** button.
  - ▶ **Language** appears first in the display.



4. Press the  button until **"Trip A"** **Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the **ENTER** button.
  - ▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When Refueled**, **When Ignition Is Turned Off**, **Manual Reset**, or **Exit**.
5. Press the  button and select **When Refueled**, then press the **ENTER** button.
  - ▶ The **When Refueled** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.
6. Press the  button until  appears on the display, then press the **ENTER** button.
7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

# Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.



<b>Clock</b> .....	156
<b>Locking and Unlocking the Doors</b>	
Key Types and Functions .....	158
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength* .....	160
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside .....	161
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside .....	168
Childproof Door Locks .....	169
<b>Opening and Closing the Hatch</b> .....	170
<b>Security System</b>	
Immobilizer System .....	173
Security System Alarm .....	173
Ultrasonic Sensors* .....	175
Super Locking* .....	176

<b>Opening and Closing the Windows</b> ....	177
<b>Sunroof*</b> .....	181
<b>Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel</b>	
Ignition Switch* .....	183
ENGINE START/STOP Button* .....	184
Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison .....	187
Turn Signals .....	188
Light Switches.....	189
Front* and Rear Fog Lights .....	192
Headlight Adjuster* .....	194
Daytime Running Lights .....	195
Auto High-Beam* .....	196
Wipers and Washers .....	199

Brightness Control .....	203
Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button .....	204
Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	205
<b>Adjusting the Mirrors</b>	
Interior Rearview Mirror .....	206
Power Door Mirrors .....	207
<b>Adjusting the Seats</b> .....	209
<b>Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items</b>	
Interior Lights .....	218
Interior Convenience Items .....	220
<b>Heating System*</b> .....	235
<b>Climate Control System*</b> .....	240

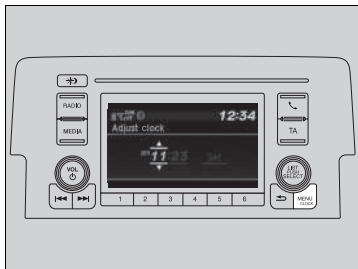
\* Not available on all models

## Adjusting the Clock

### Models without navigation system







You can adjust the time in the clock display with the ignition switch in ON .

### Adjusting the Time







### Models with colour audio system

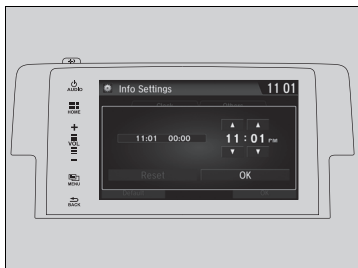
#### ■ Using the MENU/CLOCK button

1. Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
  - ▶ **Adjust clock** is selected.
2. Rotate  to change hour, then press .
3. Rotate  to change minute, then press .
4. To enter the selection, rotate  and select **Set**, then press .

### Models with Display Audio

#### ■ Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
4. Select  or  to change hour.
5. Select  or  to change minute, then select **OK**.



### Adjusting the Clock

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

▶ **Customized Features\*** P. 143, 354

### Models without colour audio system

You cannot adjust the time while the vehicle is moving.

### Models with navigation system

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system, so the time does not need to be adjusted.

### Using the MENU/CLOCK button

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate  to select.





Press  to enter.

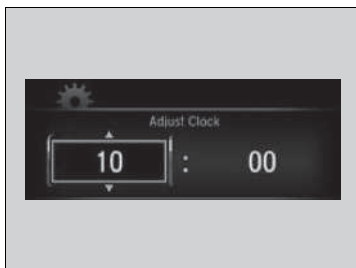
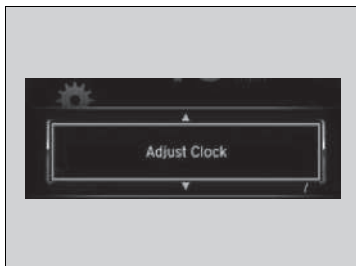
### Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen

You can turn the clock display on and off.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 354






You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the upper right corner of the display.

1. Touch the clock on the display for a few seconds.
2. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Select  or  to change hour.
4. Select  or  to change minute, then select **OK**.



#### Models without audio system

#### ■ Using the settings menu on the driver information interface

1. Press the  button to select , then press the **ENTER** button.
2. Press the  button until **Clock Setup** appears on the display.
3. Press the **ENTER** button.
4. Press the **ENTER** button to select **Adjust Clock**.
5. Press the  button to change hour, then press the **ENTER** button.
6. Press the  button to change minute, then press the **ENTER** button.
  - ▶ The display will return to the normal screen.

## Key Types and Functions

This vehicle comes with the following keys:

Retractable Key\*



Keyless Remote\*



Use the keys to start and stop the engine, and to lock and unlock all the doors and hatch. You can also use the remote transmitter to lock and unlock all the doors and hatch.

### Key Types and Functions

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

#### Immobilizer System P. 173

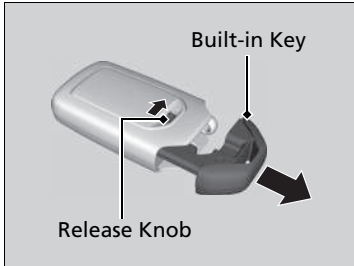
Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.

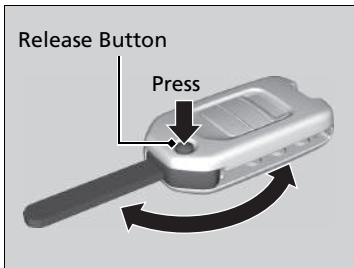
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

### Built-in Key\*



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled. To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

### Retractable Key\*



The key folds up inside the remote transmitter.

1. Press the release button to release the key out from the transmitter.
  - ▶ Make sure to fully extend the key.
2. To close the key, press the release button then push the key inside the transmitter until you hear a click.

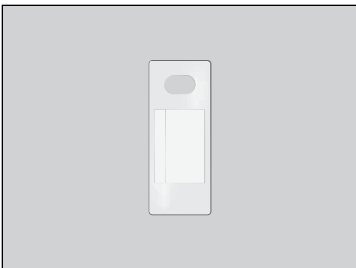
### Retractable Key\*

If the key is not fully extended, the immobilizer system may not work properly, and the engine may not start. Avoid contact with the key whenever it extends or retracts.

\* Not available on all models



## ■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

## Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength\*

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote when locking/unlocking the doors and hatch, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors and hatch, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, cell phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

## ☒ Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle. If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

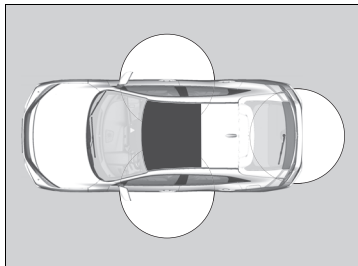
If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

## ☒ Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength\*

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use. The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

### ■ Using the Keyless Access System\*



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and hatch. You can lock/unlock the doors and hatch within a radius of about 80 cm (32 inches) of the outside door handle or hatch release button.

### ☒ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors relocked: The light goes off immediately.

➤ **Interior Lights** P. 218

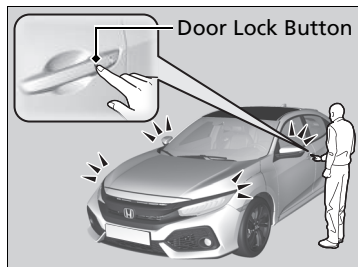
### ☒ Using the Keyless Access System\*

If you do not open a door or the hatch within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and hatch will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

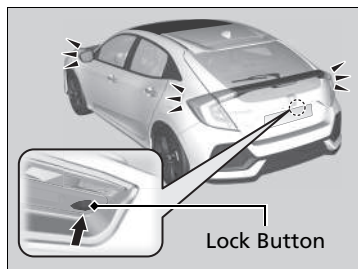
\* Not available on all models

### ■ Locking the doors and hatch



Press the door lock button on the front door or on the hatch.

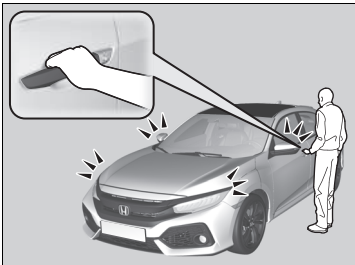
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash three times; all the doors and hatch lock; and the security system sets.



### ▶▶ Using the Keyless Access System \*

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the hatch while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to two seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least two seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm (32 inches) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the hatch with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

## ■ Unlocking the doors and hatch

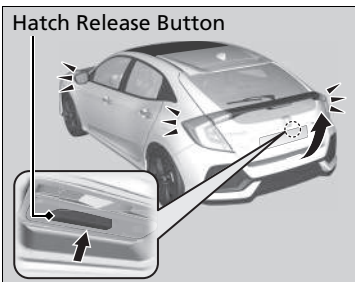


Grab the driver's door handle:

- ▶ The driver's door unlocks.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:

- ▶ All doors and the hatch unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once.



Press the hatch release button.

- ▶ The hatch unlocks.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once.

▶ **Using the Hatch Release Button** P. 171

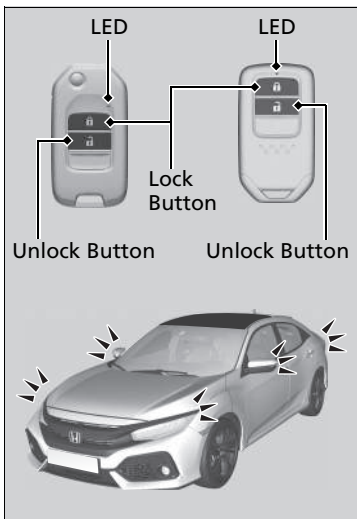
## ▶▶ Using the Keyless Access System\*

The light flash and door unlock mode settings can be customized using the audio/information screen.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 354

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Using the Remote Transmitter



### ■ Locking the doors and hatch

Press the lock button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash three times, all the doors and hatch lock, and the security system sets.

### ▶▶ Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the hatch within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and hatch will automatically relock.

You can change the relock timer setting.

▶ **Customized Features\*** P. 143, 354

#### Models without keyless access system

The remote transmitter will not work when the key is in the ignition switch.

#### Models with keyless access system

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

#### Models with keyless access system

##### Right-hand drive type

You cannot lock any doors from the outside when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle, and the beeper sounds. If you want to lock a door while the remote is still in the vehicle, do any of the following four times:

- Press the lock button on the keyless remote.
- Turn the key in the cylinder to lock.
- Press the door lock button on the door handle or the hatch.

#### All models

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

## ■ Unlocking the doors and hatch

Press the unlock button.

### Once:

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once, and the driver's door unlocks.

### Twice:

- ▶ The remaining doors and hatch unlock.

### ☒ Using the Remote Transmitter

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

☒ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 624

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

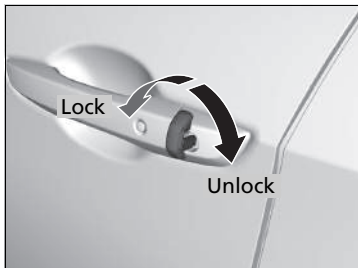
☒ **Customized Features\*** P. 143, 354

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the remote transmitter does not work, use the key instead.

### ➤ Replacing the Button Battery P. 624



Fully insert the key and turn it.

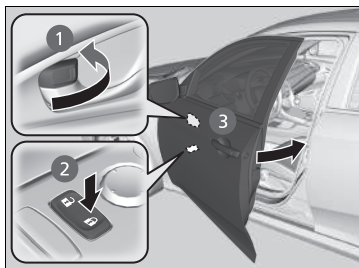
### ➤ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors and hatch lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turning the key a second time within a few seconds does not unlock the remaining doors and the hatch.

Unlocking the doors with the key causes the security system to alarm. Always unlock the doors with the remote transmitter.

## ■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



### ■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward **1** or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction **2**, then pull and hold the outside door handle **3**. Close the door, then release the handle.

### ■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

## ■ Lockout prevention system

### Models without keyless access system

The doors and hatch cannot be locked when the key is in the ignition switch.

### Models with keyless access system

The doors and hatch cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

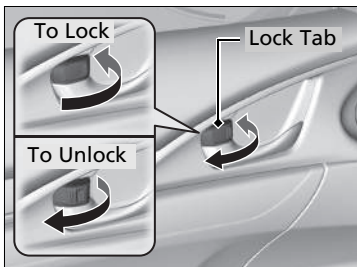
## ▶ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and hatch lock at the same time. Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.



## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

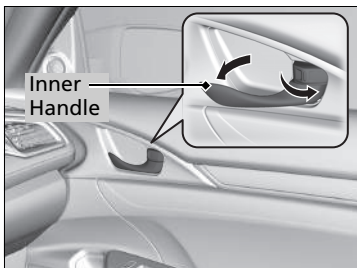
### ■ Using the Lock Tab



■ **Locking a door**  
Push the lock tab forward.

■ **Unlocking a door**  
Pull the lock tab rearward.

### ■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



Pull the front door inner handle.  
▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

### ☒ Using the Lock Tab

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the hatch lock at the same time.

When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

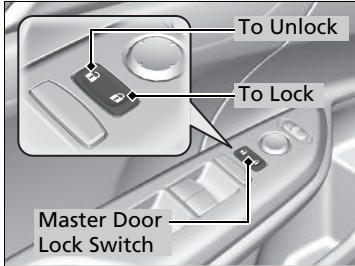
### ☒ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

☒ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 169

## ■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

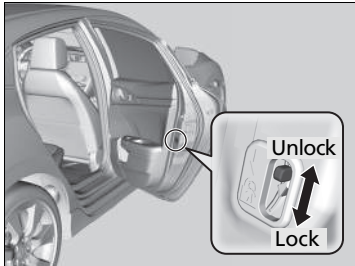


Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and the hatch.

## Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

## ■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

### ■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

## ▣ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock either of the front doors using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the hatch lock/unlock at the same time.

## ▣ Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

## Precautions for Opening/Closing the Hatch

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the hatch before opening or closing it.

- Open the hatch all the way.
  - ▶ If it is not fully opened, the hatch may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the hatch to close.

Keep the hatch closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.
  - ❏ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 90

### Precautions for Opening/Closing the Hatch

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Anyone caught in the path of a hatch that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.**

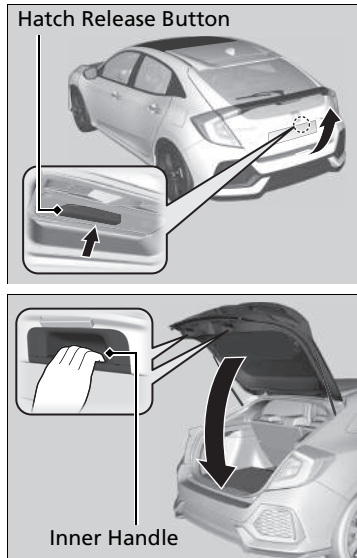
**Make sure that all people are clear of the hatch before opening or closing it.**

Be careful not to hit your head on the hatch or to put your hands between the hatch and the luggage area when closing the hatch.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

## Using the Hatch Release Button



When all the doors are unlocked or press the hatch unlock button on the remote transmitter, the hatch is unlocked. Press the hatch release button and lift open the hatch.

### Models with keyless access system

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the hatch before opening it.

### All models

To close the hatch, grab the inner handle, pull the hatch down, and push it closed from outside.

If you close the hatch when all the doors are locked, the hatch locks automatically.

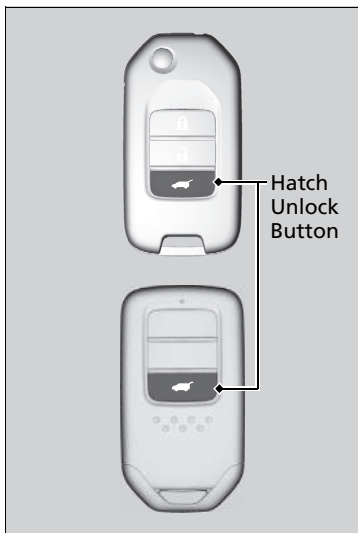
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash three times.

### ▶▶ Using the Hatch Release Button

#### Models with keyless access system

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the hatch while someone else with the remote is within range.
- Do not leave the keyless remote inside the luggage area and close the hatch when all the doors are locked. The beeper sounds and the hatch cannot be locked.

## ■ Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the hatch unlock button to unlock the hatch.

## ▣ Using the Remote Transmitter

If you have unlocked and opened the hatch using the remote transmitter, when closing, the hatch locks automatically.

## Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when inserting the key into the ignition switch\* or pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button\*:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the ignition switch\* or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button\*.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the ignition switch\* or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button\*.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

## Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the hatch, bonnet, or doors are opened without the remote transmitter, or keyless access system\*.

### ■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

### ■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system\*, or turn the ignition switch to ON **II**\*1. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### ▣ Immobilizer System

#### NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact your dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your engine, contact a dealer.

*Right-hand drive type models only:* Apply and hold the brake pedal before turning the vehicle on the first time after the battery has been disconnected.

### ▣ Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

Continued

### ■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in LOCK **0**\*1, and the key has been removed from the ignition switch.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the hatch are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter or keyless access system\*.

### ■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks. When the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds, the security system alarm is set.

### ■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter, keyless access system\*, or the ignition switch is turned to ON **II**\*1. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### 🔔 Security System Alarm

The security alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.

The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced.

If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system\*.

Do not unlock the door using the key. The security system alarm goes off.

#### Models with ultrasonic sensors

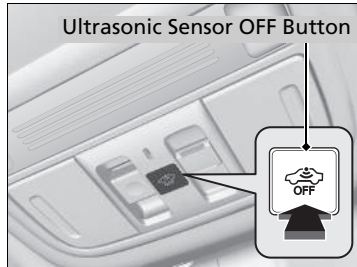
To set the ultrasonic sensor along with the security system, lock the doors and the hatch with the key, remote transmitter or keyless access system\*.



## Ultrasonic Sensors\*

The ultrasonic sensors activate only when the security system alarm sets. The sensors detect if someone intrudes into the passenger compartment through a window or moves in the compartment, and activate the alarm.

### ■ To set the security system alarm without activating the ultrasonic sensors

You can set the security system alarm without activating the ultrasonic sensor.



To turn off the ultrasonic sensor system, press the ultrasonic sensor OFF button after you remove the key from the ignition switch, or with the key in the ACCESSORY  or LOCK \*1.

▶ The  is on in red.

To turn it on again, press the ultrasonic sensor OFF button.


Ultrasonic sensors are turned on every time you set the security system alarm, even if you turned it off the last time.


### ▶▶ Ultrasonic Sensors\*



Do not set the security system alarm while someone is in the vehicle, or if a window is open. The system may accidentally activate when the ultrasonic sensor detects vibrations or loud sounds.

Whether the ultrasonic sensor is activated, the security system can only be turned off by the remote transmitter or keyless access system\*, not the key.

Do not unlock the door using the key. The security system alarm goes off.

It is possible to confirm whether the vehicle security system was activated without your knowledge. If the security system has been activated for any reason, the  will blink for 5 minutes after you unlock the door and disable the system.

If, however, you start the engine, the  will stop blinking after 5 seconds.

If the ultrasonic sensor is malfunctioning or there is another problem, the  will come on for 5 minutes after you unlock the door and disable the system. If, however, you start the engine, the  will shut off.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models



## Super Locking \*

The super locking function disables the lock tabs on all doors.

### ■ To activate the super locking function

- Turn the key in the driver's door towards the vehicle front twice within five seconds.
- Press the lock button on the remote transmitter twice within five seconds.

#### Models with keyless access system

- Press the door lock button on the door handle or the hatch twice within five seconds.

### ■ To cancel the super locking function

Unlock the driver's door with the remote transmitter or keyless access system\*.

#### Super Locking\*

### **WARNING**


No one must be inside the vehicle with the super locking set. Persons locked in can get seriously sick or die from the heat built inside the vehicle if left in the sun.

**Make sure there is no one inside the vehicle before setting the super locking.**

Do not unlock the door using the key. The security system alarm goes off.

Even if you have unlocked, opened, and then closed the hatch, the super locking function continues to be in effect.

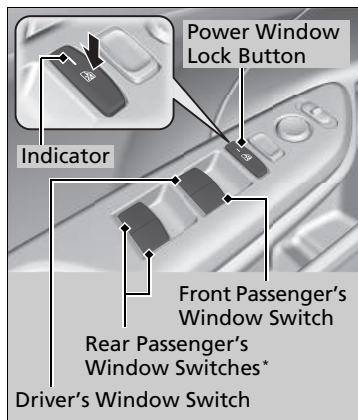
## Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the ignition switch is in ON <sup>\*1</sup>, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pressed, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

### Opening/Closing Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



#### Manual operation

**To open:** Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

#### Automatic operation

**To open:** Push the switch down firmly.

**To close:** Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*


### Opening/Closing the Power Windows

#### **WARNING**

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch to LOCK <sup>\*1</sup>.

#### Auto-open/close function on front windows

Opening either front door cancels this function.

#### Auto-open/close function on all windows

Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

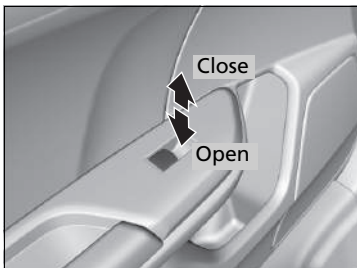
#### Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

## ■ Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function\*



**To open:** Push the switch down.

**To close:** Pull the switch up.

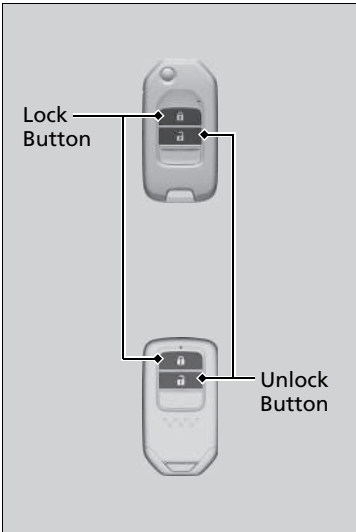
Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

## ☒ Opening/Closing the Power Windows

You cannot fully open the rear windows.

Auto-open/close function on all windows

**Opening/Closing the Windows and Sunroof\* with the Remote**



**To open:** Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.  
**To close:** Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows and sunroof stop midway, repeat the procedure.

\* Not available on all models

Auto-open/close function on all windows


## ■ Closing the Windows and Sunroof\* with the Key

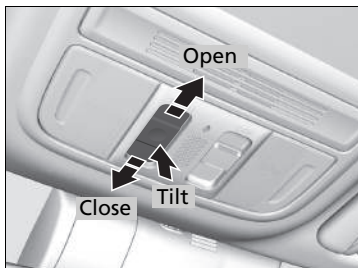


**To close:** Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows and sunroof at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

## Opening/Closing the Sunroof

You can only operate the sunroof when the ignition switch is in ON \*1. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the sunroof.



### Automatic operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back firmly.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunroof will automatically open or close all the way. To stop the sunroof midway, push the switch briefly.

### Manual operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

### Tilting the sunroof up

**To tilt:** Push on the centre of the sunroof switch.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

## Opening/Closing the Sunroof

### WARNING


Opening or closing the sunroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the sunroof before opening or closing it.

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

### NOTICE

Opening the sunroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the sunroof panel or motor.

The power sunroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch to LOCK \*1.

Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

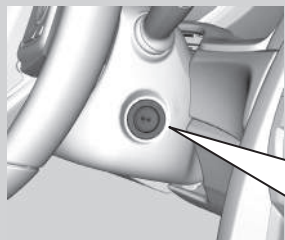
#### ▶▶ Opening/Closing the Sunroof

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the sunroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the sunroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes. Make sure that all objects, including fingers, are clear of the sunroof.

You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the sunroof.

- ▶▶ **Opening/Closing the Windows and Sunroof\* with the Remote** P. 179
- ▶▶ **Closing the Windows and Sunroof\* with the Key** P. 180

## Ignition Switch \*



- 0** LOCK: Insert and remove the key in this position.
- I** ACCESSORY: Operate the audio system\* and other accessories in this position.
- II** ON: This is the position when driving.
- III** START: This position is for starting the engine. The switch returns to ON **II** when you let go of the key.

### Ignition Switch \*

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Removing the key from the ignition switch while driving locks the steering. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

Remove the key from the ignition switch only when parked.

If you open the driver's door when the key is in LOCK **0** or ACCESSORY **I**, the following messages appear on the driver information interface:

- In LOCK **0**: 
- In ACCESSORY **I**: 

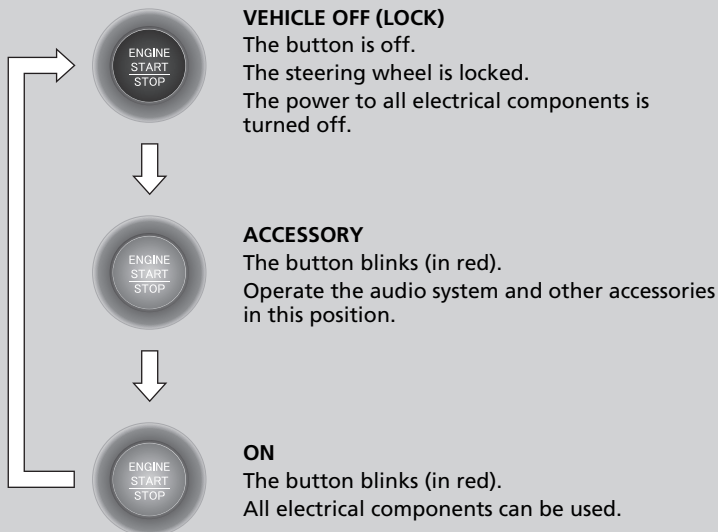
If the key won't turn from LOCK **0** to ACCESSORY **I**, turn the key while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the key to turn.

\* Not available on all models



## ENGINE START/STOP Button \*

### ■ Changing the Power Mode

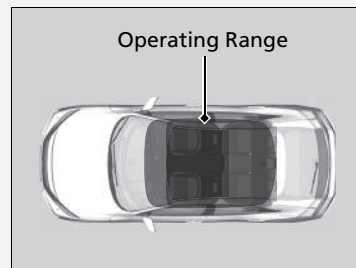


Without pressing the clutch pedal

➡ Press the button.

### ▶▶ ENGINE START/STOP Button \*

#### ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range



You can start the engine when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

The engine may also run if the keyless remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button is on (in red), if the engine is running.

If the battery of the keyless remote is getting low, the engine may not start when you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. If the engine does not start, refer to the following link.

▶▶ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**  
P. 663

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

## ■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

When in this mode:

The steering wheel does not lock.

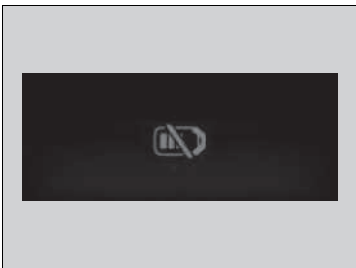
You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system.

Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

## ■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

## ■ Keyless Remote Reminder



Warning buzzers may sound from inside and/or outside the vehicle to remind you that the keyless remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place it to be within its operational range.

### ■ When the power mode is in ON

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, a warning buzzer sounds from both inside and outside the vehicle. A warning message on the driver information interface notifies the driver inside that the remote is outside of the vehicle.

### ■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

## ☒ Keyless Remote Reminder









When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

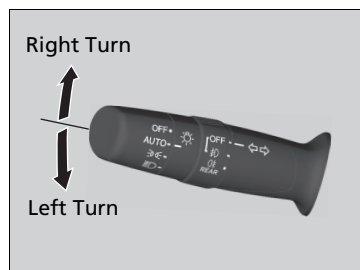
Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.


## Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison

<p>Ignition Switch Position</p>	<p>LOCK <b>0</b> (with/without the key)</p> 	<p>ACCESSORY <b>I</b></p> 	<p>ON <b>II</b></p> 	<p>START <b>III</b></p> 
<p>Without Keyless Access System</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Engine is turned off and power is shut down.</li> <li>• The steering wheel is locked.</li> <li>• No electrical components can be used.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Engine is turned off.</li> <li>• Some electrical components such as the audio system* and the accessory power socket can be operated.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal key position while driving.</li> <li>• All electrical components can be used.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use this position to start the engine.</li> <li>• The ignition switch returns to the ON <b>II</b> position when you release the key.</li> </ul>
<p>Power Mode</p>	<p>VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)</p> 	<p>ACCESSORY</p> 	<p>ON</p>  <p>Button is: <b>Blinking</b>    <b>On</b></p>	<p>START</p> 
<p>With Keyless Access System and <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> Button</p>	<p>Button-Off</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Engine is turned off and power is shut down.</li> <li>• The steering wheel is locked.</li> <li>• No electrical components can be used.</li> </ul>	<p>Button-Blinking</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Engine is turned off.</li> <li>• Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.</li> </ul>	<p>Button-Blinking (engine is turned off) On (engine is running)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All electrical components can be used.</li> </ul>	<p>Button-On</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The mode automatically returns to ON after the engine starts.</li> </ul>

\* Not available on all models

## Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the ignition switch is in ON <sup>\*1</sup>.

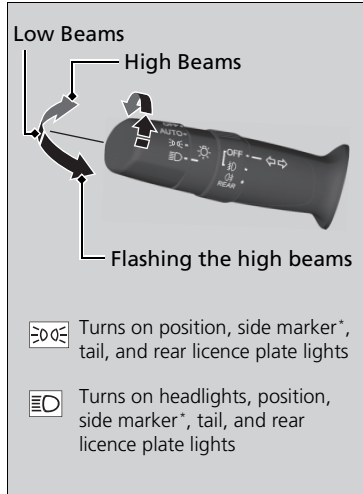
### ■ One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times. This feature can be used when signalling for a lane change.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

# Light Switches

## Manual Operation



Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting or position of the ignition switch.

### ■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

### ■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

### ■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

### ■ Lights off

Turn the lever to **OFF** when the parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to **OFF** to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

## Light Switches

### Models with keyless access system

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

### Models without keyless access system

If you remove the key from the ignition switch while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

### ➤ Lights On Indicator P. 104

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

\* Not available on all models

### ■ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)



Automatic lighting control can be used when the ignition switch is in ON <sup>\*1</sup>.

When the light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

The headlights comes on when you unlock a door in dark areas with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

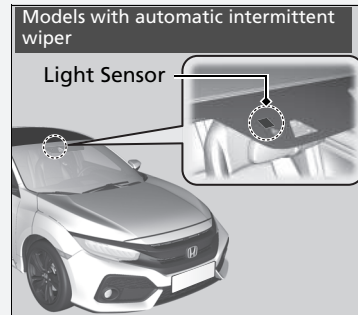
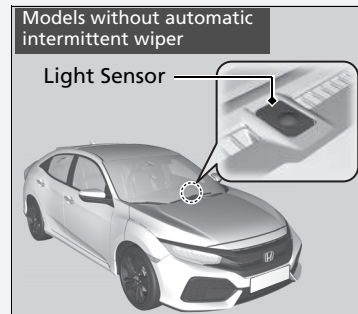
- ▶ Once you lock the door, the headlights will go off.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### ▶ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.





## Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

## Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you remove the key or set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door. However, when the switch is in , the position lights remain on.

If you turn the ignition switch to LOCK \*1 with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### ⌘ Headlight Integration with Wipers

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.

The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

### ⌘ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

➤ **Customized Features\*** P. 143, 354



## Front\* and Rear Fog Lights

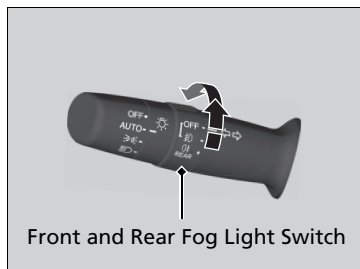
### ■ Front fog lights

Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.



### ■ Rear fog light

Can be used when the headlights or the front fog lights are on.




### ■ Front and Rear Fog Lights\*






#### ■ To turn the front fog lights on

Rotate the switch up from the OFF position to the  position. The  indicator comes on.

#### ■ To turn the front and rear fog lights on

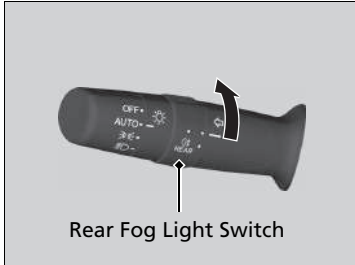
Rotate the switch one position up from the  position. The  and  indicators come on.

#### ■ To turn the rear fog light on



Rotate the switch one position up from the  position and then rotate the switch one position down from the  position. The  indicator stays on.

To turn the rear fog light off, turn the headlight switch to the **OFF** position.

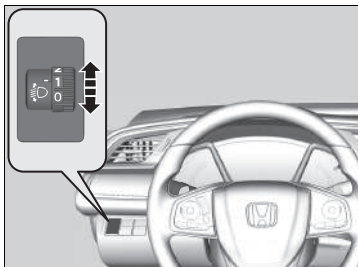
## ■ Rear Fog Light\*



### ■ To turn the rear fog light on

Rotate the switch to . The  indicator comes on.

## Headlight Adjuster\*



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the position lights are on.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

### ■ To select the adjustment dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver	0
A driver and a front passenger	1
Five persons in the front and rear seats	2
Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3
A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	

### ▶▶ Headlight Adjuster\*

#### Models with LED headlights

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

#### Models with halogen headlights

The headlights are suitable for left hand drive and right hand drive, without the need to make any adjustments or masking, as per UN Regulation No. 48 Dover Regulation.

#### Models with LED headlights


You may need to alter the headlight beam distribution.

▶▶ **Adjusting Headlight Distribution** P. 534

## Daytime Running Lights

---

The position/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in ON \*1.
- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.

Turning off the ignition switch or setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) will turn off the daytime running lights.

The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the headlight switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside.

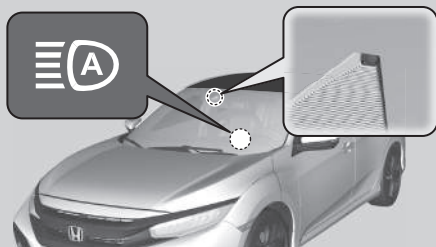
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Auto High-Beam \*

Using a camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, this system detects light sources ahead of the vehicle. Depending on the light source, the system automatically switches the headlights to high beam for optimal visibility at night.

### The system operates when:

- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The low beams are on and the system recognises that you are driving at night.
- The vehicle speed is above 40 km/h (25 mph).

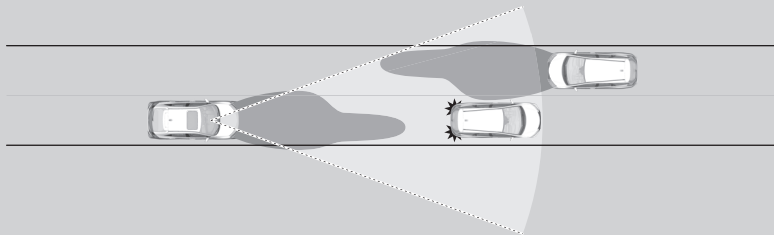


### How it works

When the camera detects lights coming from a preceding or oncoming vehicle, the headlights remain in low beam.

When the camera detects no lights coming from a preceding or oncoming vehicle, the headlights change to high beam.

The view angle or distance that the camera can detect lights ahead differs depending on conditions, such as the brightness of the lights and the weather.



### Auto High-Beam \*

The auto high-beam determines when to change the headlight beams by responding to the brightness of the lights ahead of your vehicle. In the following cases, the system may not respond to the lights properly:

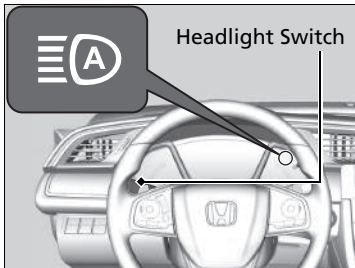
- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Other light sources, such as street lights and electric billboards are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or with many curves.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.

If you find the timing of beam changes inconvenient for driving, change the headlight beams manually.

If you do not want the system to be activated at any time when the headlight switch is in **AUTO**, consult a dealer or disable the system.

▶ **Disabling or Re-enabling the System** P. 198

## Operating the System



To activate the system, turn the headlight switch to **AUTO** and then set the headlights to low beam. The auto high-beam indicator will come on.

📖 **Light Switches** P. 189

The high beams remain on unless:

- You have been driving below 24 km/h (15 mph) for an extended amount of time.
- The speed of the vehicle drops below 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The windscreen wipers have been running at a high speed for more than a few seconds.
- You enter a well lit location.

The high beams come back on once the condition that caused them to turn off no longer exists.

If needed, you can temporarily turn the system off manually. Turn on the high beams by pushing the lever forward until you hear a click, or flash the high beams once by pulling the lever towards you. To turn the system back on, pull and hold the lever towards you for a few seconds.


\* Not available on all models

## Operating the System


For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean. When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply the windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

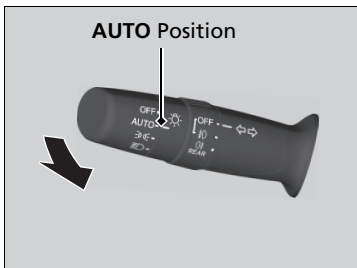
If the  message appears:

- Use the climate control system\* to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the  message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ Disabling or Re-enabling the System



Disable or re-enable the system when the vehicle is parked and the ignition switch is in ON **II**\*1 and the light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

**Disabling the system:** Pull the light switch lever towards you and hold it for at least 40 seconds. The auto high-beam indicator in the meter will blink twice.

**Re-enabling the system:** Pull the light switch lever towards you and hold it for at least 30 seconds. The auto high-beam indicator in the meter will blink once.

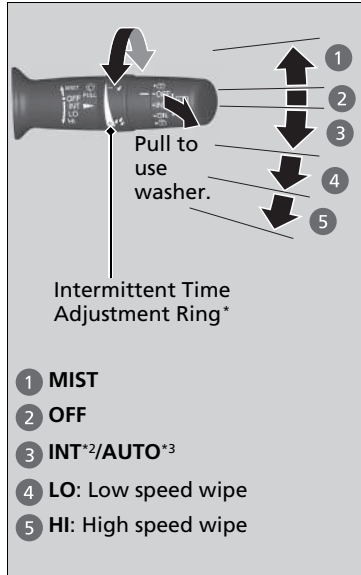
## ▣ Disabling or Re-enabling the System

The auto high-beam is in the previously selected disabled or re-enabled setting each time you start the engine.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

# Wipers and Washers

## Windscreen Wipers/Washers



- 1 MIST
- 2 OFF
- 3 INT\*<sup>2</sup>/AUTO\*<sup>3</sup>
- 4 LO: Low speed wipe
- 5 HI: High speed wipe

The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the ignition switch is in ON \*<sup>1</sup>.

### ■ MIST

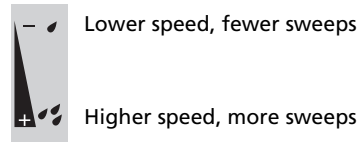
The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT\*<sup>2</sup>/AUTO\*<sup>3</sup>, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

### ■ Adjusting wiper operation\*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.



### ■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

## Wipers and Washers

### NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

### Models with intermittent time adjustment ring

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens. When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting and the LO setting become the same.

### NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen. Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

\* 1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* 2: Models with manual intermittent operation

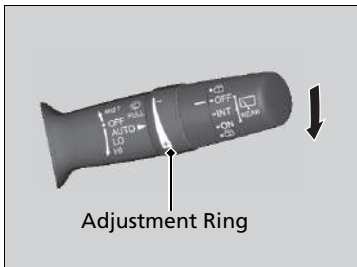
\* 3: Models with automatic intermittent operation

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*



## ■ Automatic Intermittent Wipers\*



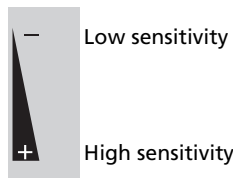
When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

### ■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

### Sensor sensitivity



\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

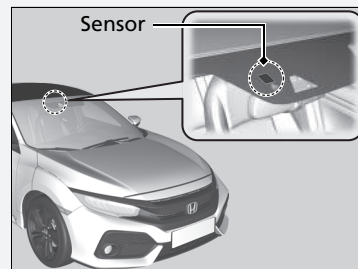
## ▶ Wipers and Washers

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.

Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and turn the ignition switch to **ACCESSORY** [1] or **LOCK** [0]\*1, then remove the obstacle.

## ▶ Automatic Intermittent Wipers\*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



### NOTICE


**AUTO** should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

**Rear Wiper/Washer\***



- 1 INT: Intermittent
- 2 ON: Continuous wipe
- 3 OFF
- 4 Washer

The rear wiper and washer can be used when the ignition switch is in ON \*1.

**Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)**

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

**Washer** 

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position. Hold it to activate the wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, it stops operating after a few more sweeps.

**Operating in reverse**

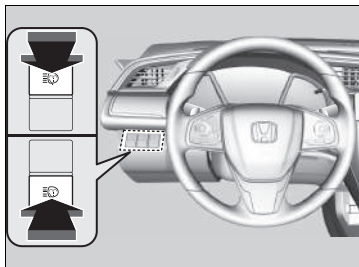
When you put the transmission into  with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.


Windscreen Wiper Operation	Rear Wiper Operation
Intermittent	Intermittent
Low speed wipe	Continuous
High speed wipe	

\* 1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Headlight Washers\*



Turn the headlights on and press the headlight washer button to operate. The headlight washers also operate when you turn the windscreen washers for the first time after the ignition switch is in ON <sup>\*1</sup>.

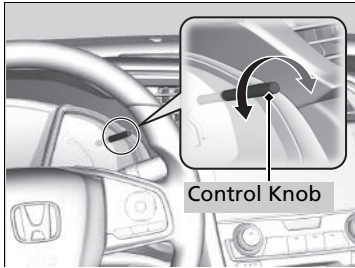
## ▣ Headlight Washers\*


The headlight washers use the same fluid reservoir as the windscreen washers.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## Brightness Control



When the position lights are turned on and the ignition switch is in ON <sup>\*1</sup>, you can use the brightness control knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.

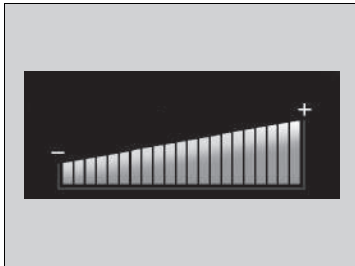
**Brighten:** Turn the knob to the right.

**Dim:** Turn the knob to the left.

Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous display.

### ■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.



### ▣ Brightness Control

By default, the instrument panel switches to night-time mode when the headlights are automatically engaged. You can delay the timing of night-time mode activation when the headlight switch is in **AUTO**.

▣ **Customized Features\*** P. 143, 354

Instrument panel brightness varies, depending on whether the exterior lights are on or off. The instrument panel dims to reduce glare when they are on.

When it is bright outside and the headlight integration with the wiper is activated, the instrument panel brightness does not change.


To cancel the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on, turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max.

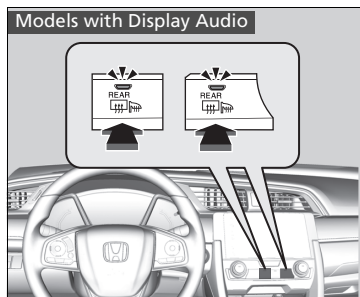
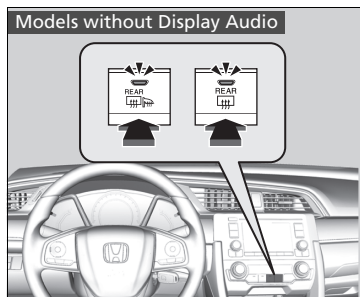
The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

\* 1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror\* Button

Press the rear demister and heated door mirror button to defog the rear window and mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON <sup>\*1</sup>.




The rear demister and heated door mirrors automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, they do not automatically switch off.

### Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror\* Button

#### NOTICE

When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to damage the heating wires. It is critical to wipe the window from side to side along the demister heating wires.

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

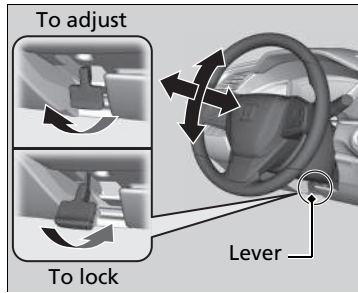
When the outside temperature is below 5°C, the heated door mirror may activate automatically for 10 minutes when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>\*1</sup>.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
  - ▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
  - ▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
  - ▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

### Adjusting the Steering Wheel

#### **⚠ WARNING**

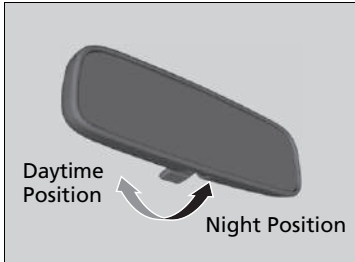
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

## Interior Rearview Mirror

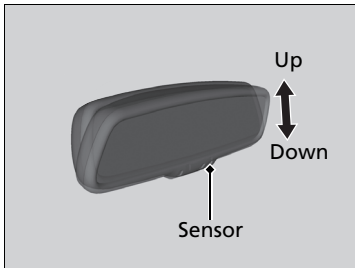
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

### Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions\*



Flip the tab to switch the position. The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror\*



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based on inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

### Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

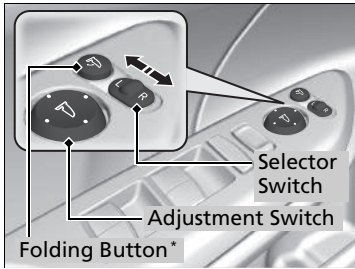
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.


➤ **Front Seats** P. 209

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror\*

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in **R**.

## Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON \*<sup>1</sup>.

### ■ Mirror position adjustment

**L/R selector switch:** Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

**Mirror position adjustment switch:** Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

### ■ Folding door mirrors\*

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

\* 1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models



## ■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function \*

### ■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the remote transmitter twice within 10 seconds, and hold it.

- ▶ You can release the button once the mirrors start folding in automatically.

#### Models with keyless access system

Press the door lock button on either front door or the hatch twice within 10 seconds, and hold it.

- ▶ You can release the button once the mirrors start folding in automatically.

### ■ Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock the driver's door using the remote transmitter. Open the driver's door.

- ▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

#### Models with keyless access system

Grab the door handle on either front door and unlock the driver's door. Open the driver's door.

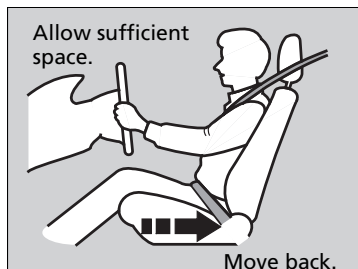
- ▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

## ⊗ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function \*

You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

## Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

### Adjusting the Seats

#### **WARNING**

**Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.**

**Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.**

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm (10 inches) between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

## ■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

### ■ Adjusting the front manual seats

**Height Adjustment**  
(Driver side only)  
Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

**Horizontal Position Adjustment**  
Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.

**Seat-back Angle Adjustment**  
Pull up the lever to change the angle.

**Lumbar Support Adjustment\***

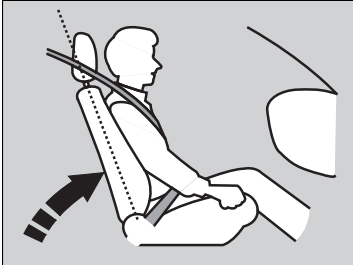
Driver's seat is shown.

The diagram shows a driver's seat with four callout boxes. The first box shows a lever with up and down arrows. The second box shows a bar with an up arrow. The third box shows a lever with an up arrow. The fourth box shows a circular dial with a left and right arrow. The seat itself has arrows indicating height, horizontal, and back angle adjustments.

### ►► Adjusting the front manual seats

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

## Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

## Adjusting the Seat-Backs

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.**

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

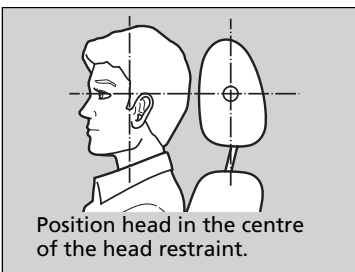
Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

## Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

### Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions



Front head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

### Head Restraints

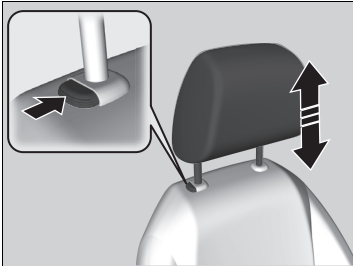
#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.**

**Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.**

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any object between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

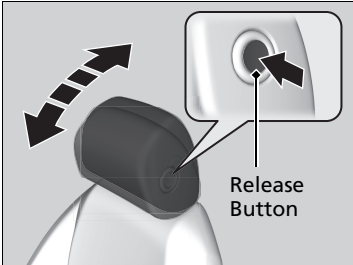


**To raise the head restraint:**

Pull it upward.

**To lower the head restraint:**

Push it down while pressing the release button.



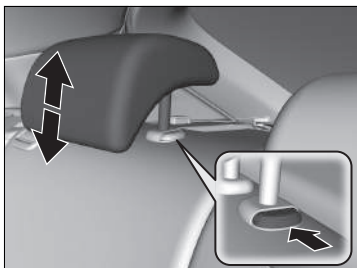
**To tilt the head restraint forward:**

Push the back of it forward.

**To tilt the head restraint backward:**

Push it backward while pressing the release button on the side of the head restraint.

### ■ Changing the Rear Outer Seat Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in a outer back seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

**To raise the head restraint:**

Pull it upward.

**To lower the head restraint:**

Push it down while pressing the release button.

### ■ Removing and Reinstalling the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraints

Front and rear outer head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

**To remove a head restraint:**

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

**To reinstall a head restraint:**

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

### ▣ Changing the Rear Outer Seat Head Restraint Positions

When you use the head restraints on the rear outer seating positions, pull up the head restraints to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.



### ▣ Removing and Reinstalling the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraints

**⚠ WARNING**

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

## Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

### ▶▶ Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

#### **WARNING**

**Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

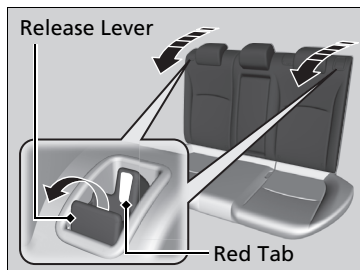
**Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.**



## Rear Seats

### Folding Down the Rear Seats

Separately fold down the left and right halves of the rear seat to make room for luggage.



1. Lower the head restraints to their lowest position.
2. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat-back.

### Folding Down the Rear Seats

The rear seat-back(s) can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the luggage area.

To lock a seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks, so that the red tabs in the release lever go down.

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back.

**Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending to the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.**

The front seat(s) must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the rear seats as they fold down.

## Armrest

### ■ Using the Front Seat Armrest

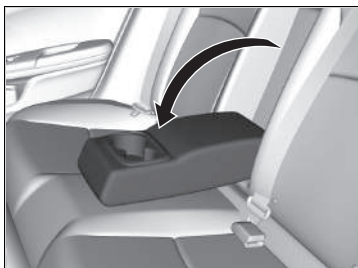


The console lid can be used as an armrest.

**To adjust:**

Slide the armrest to desired position.

### ■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest\*

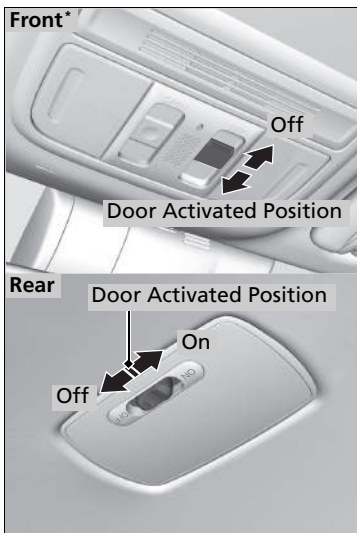


Pull down the armrest in the centre backrest.

\* Not available on all models

## Interior Lights

### Interior Light Switches



#### ■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

#### ■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any of the doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.

#### Models without keyless access system

- You remove the key from the ignition switch.

#### Models with keyless access system

- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

#### ■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

### Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights go off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.

#### Models without keyless access system

- When you remove the key from the ignition switch but do not open a door.

#### Models with keyless access system

- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

➤ **Customized Features\*** P. 143, 354

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.

#### Models without keyless access system

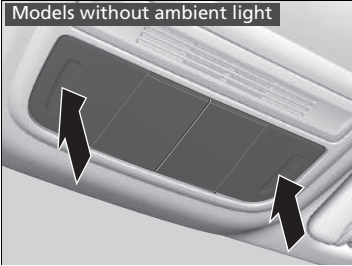
- When you close the driver's door with the key in the ignition switch.
- When you turn the ignition switch to ON [II].

#### Models with keyless access system

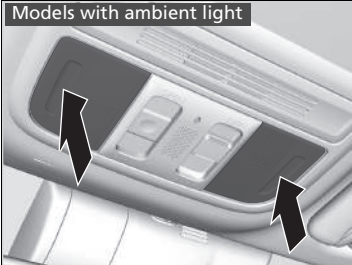
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

## Map Lights

Models without ambient light



Models with ambient light



The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.

### Interior Light Switches

To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the engine is off.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, or without the key in the ignition switch, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

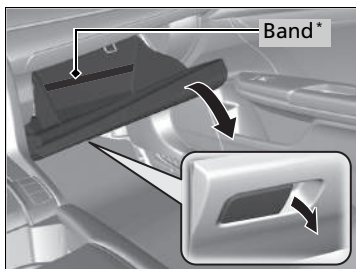
### Map Lights

When the front interior light switch\* is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the lens.

\* Not available on all models

## Interior Convenience Items

### ■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

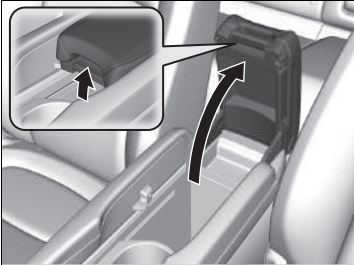
### ▣ Glove Box

#### **⚠ WARNING**

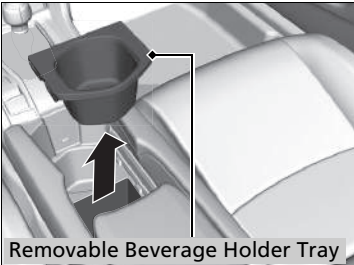
An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

## ■ Console Compartment

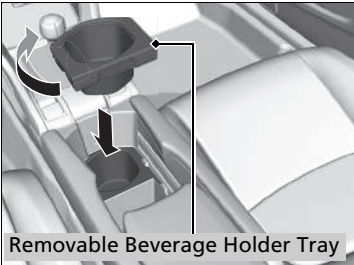


Your vehicle has a multi-function centre console. It includes a storage compartment and an armrest. Slide the armrest to the rearmost position. Pull up on the handle to open the console compartment.



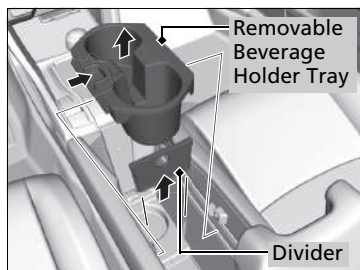
### ■ Right-hand drive type

You can create more storage space by removing the removable beverage holder tray.



If you want to make greater use of the console box:

1. Raise the removable beverage holder tray and reverse its orientation.
2. Put the removable beverage holder on the beverage holder which is in front.

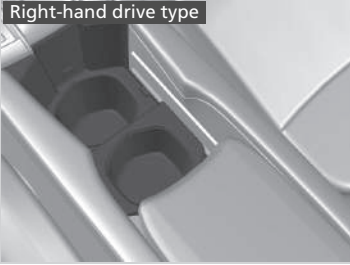


**Left-hand drive type**

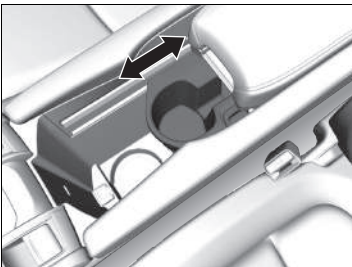
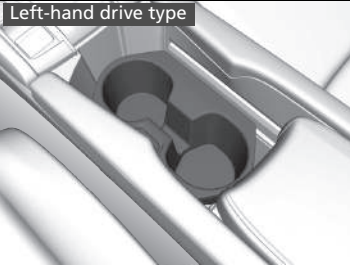
You can create more storage space by removing the removable beverage holder tray and a divider.

## Beverage Holders

Right-hand drive type



Left-hand drive type



### ■ Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.

- Move the armrest rearward to use the beverage holders.

Left-hand drive type

#### To place a short beverage container:

Move the removable beverage holder tray forward.

**To place a tall beverage container:** Move the removable beverage holder tray rearward.

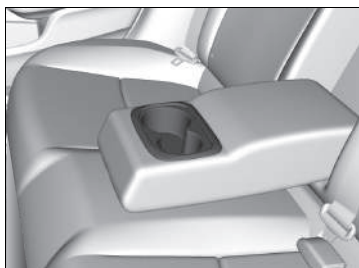
## » Beverage Holders

### NOTICE

Spilled liquids damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

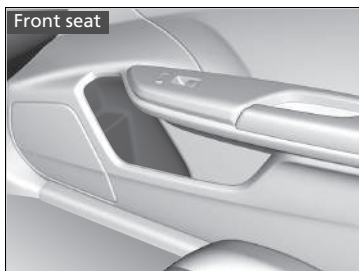
Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.





■ **Rear seat beverage holders\***

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.



Front seat

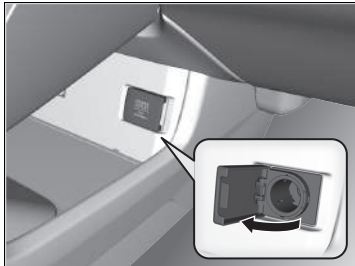
■ **Door beverage holders**



Rear seat

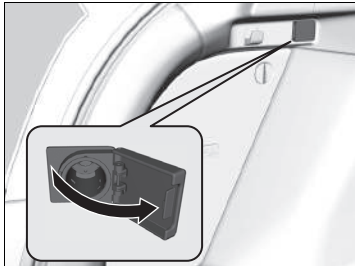
## ■ Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power socket can be used when the ignition switch is in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II**\*1.



### ■ Accessory power socket (console panel)

Open the cover to use it.



### ■ Accessory power socket (luggage area)\*

Open the cover to use it.

## » Accessory Power Socket

### NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the power socket.


The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

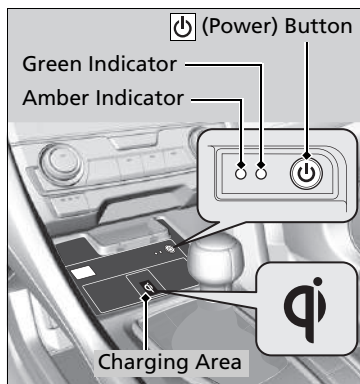
To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine running.


\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Wireless Charger\*

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge a compatible device on the area indicated by the  mark as follows:



1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the  (power) button.
  - When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
  - The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
  - Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.
3. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
  - Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

## ⓘ Wireless Charger\*

### **WARNING**

**Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.**


- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (i. e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzene or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the engine is not running. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

■ **When charging does not start**


Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simultaneously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Move the device to the centre of the charging area where  is located.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.

▶▶ Wireless Charger\*

**NOTICE**

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charging area while charging. The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also precision machines such as watches can go wrong.

“Qi” and  marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:

- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as TV station, electric power plant, or service station.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and device to heat up.

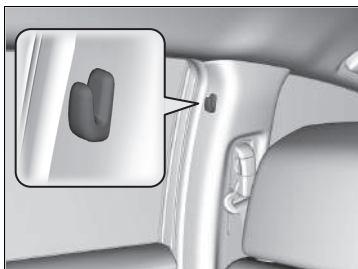
Charging may be briefly interrupted when:

- All the doors and the hatch are closed
  - to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Coat Hooks

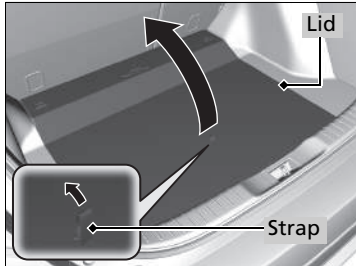


There are coat hooks on the left and right door pillars.

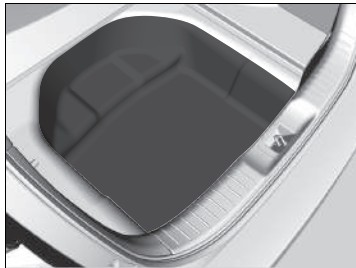
## ▣ Coat Hooks

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

## ■ Under-Floor Storage Area\*

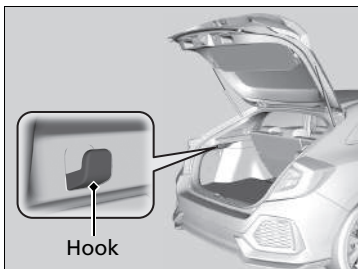


Pull the strap and open the lid.



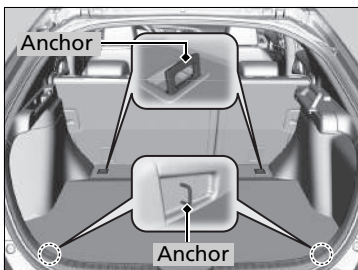
\* Not available on all models

### ■ Luggage Hook



The luggage hook in the luggage area can be used to hang a light items.

### ■ Tie-down Anchors



The tie-down anchors on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

### ▣ Luggage Hook

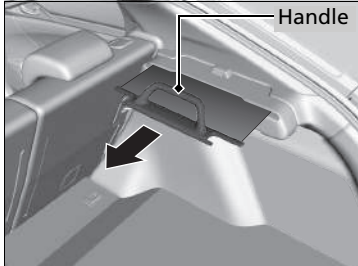
#### NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 3 kg (6 lbs) on the luggage hook. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hook.

### ▣ Tie-down Anchors

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

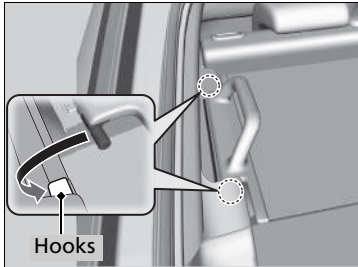
**Luggage Area Cover\***



The luggage area cover can be used to conceal your items and protect them from direct sunlight.

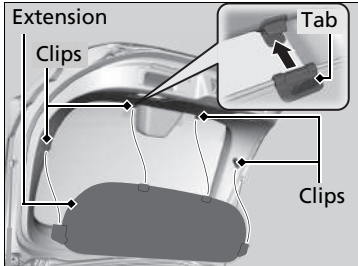
**■ To extend:**

Pull the handle fully towards the hook on the other side and let the hook catch hold of the handle.



**■ To retract:**

Slip the rods out of the hooks, then slowly roll it back until it is completely retracted.



**■ Luggage area cover extension**

The extension is attached at the back of the hatch by four clips. It extends the covering area when you close the hatch. To remove, unclip the extension from the hatch. When reinstalling the extension, make sure that the tabs come to the near side.

**▣ Luggage Area Cover\***

Do not access parcels in the luggage area while driving.  
This may cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Do not stack objects higher than the top of the seat in the luggage area. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a sudden stop.

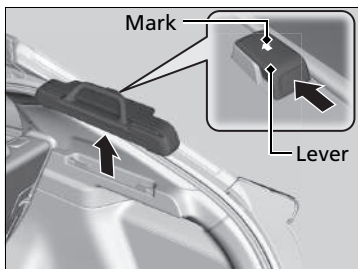
To prevent luggage area cover damage:

- Do not place items on the luggage area cover.
- Do not put weight on the luggage area cover.

\* Not available on all models

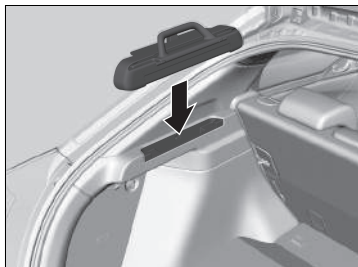
*Continued*





■ **To remove:**


Push and hold the lever in the direction of the arrow mark on the housing and lift the housing out of its position.

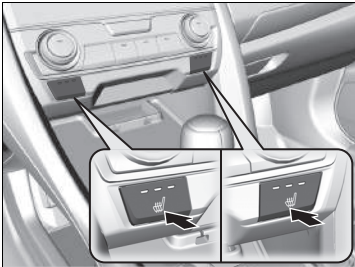


The housing can be installed on either side of the luggage area.

## Front Seat Heaters\*



The ignition switch must be in ON \*1 to use the seat heaters.



Press the seat heater button:

- Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
- Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
- Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
- Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

## Front Seat Heaters\*

### **WARNING**

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

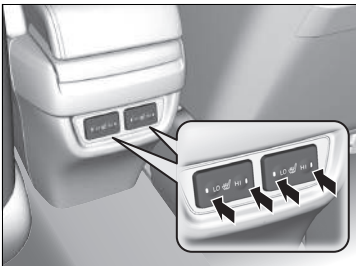
Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

\* 1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Rear Seat Heaters\*



The power mode must be in ON to use the seat heaters.

There is no heater in the rear centre seating position.

While in **HI**, the heater cycles on and off.

- The appropriate indicator will be on while the seat heater is on. Briefly press the switch on the opposite side to turn the heater off. The indicator will be off.

## ▣ Rear Seat Heaters\*

### ⚠ WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

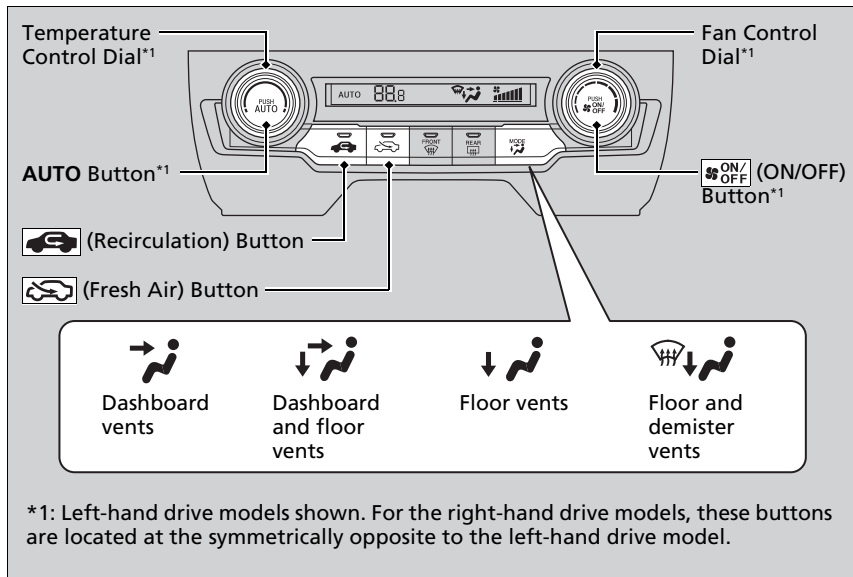
Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in **LO** when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

In the **LO** setting, the heater runs continuously and does not automatically turn off.

## Using Automatic Heating

The automatic heating system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or outside air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference.



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
3. Press the **ON/OFF** (ON/OFF) button to cancel.

\* Not available on all models

### Using Automatic Heating

If any buttons are pressed while using the heating system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

During idle-stops, heating system is suspended, and only the blower remains active. If you do not want heating system suspended, press the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button to cancel idle-stop.



To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.


When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.


Pressing the **ON/OFF** button switches the heating system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

While ECON mode is active, the heating system may have reduced heating performance.

### ■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

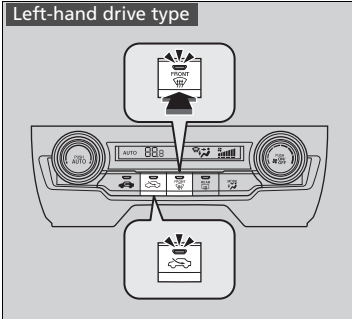
Press the  (recirculation) or  (fresh air) button to switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.


 Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.


 Fresh air mode (indicator on): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

## Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

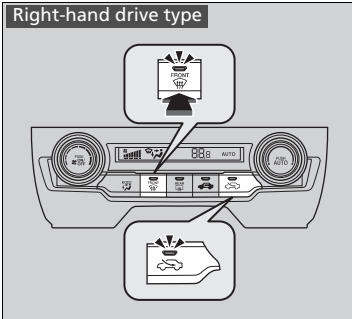
Left-hand drive type



Pressing the  (windscreen demister) button automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the  button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

Right-hand drive type



### Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows


**For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.**

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

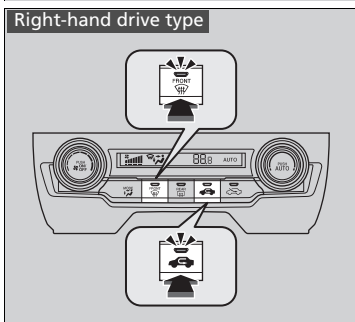
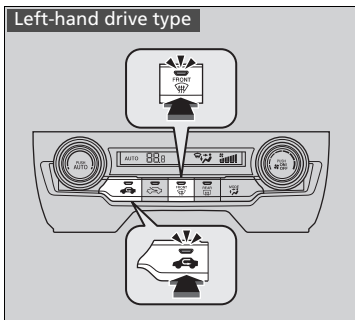
When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

To defog during the Auto Idle Stop, restart the engine as follows.

1. Make sure the shift lever is in **N**.
2. Depress the clutch pedal fully.
3. Press the  button.

### ■ To rapidly defrost the windows

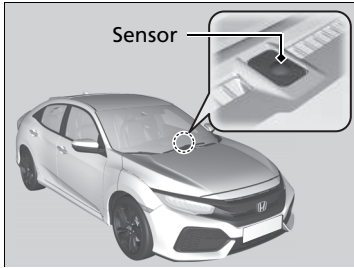


1. Press the  button.
2. Press the  button.

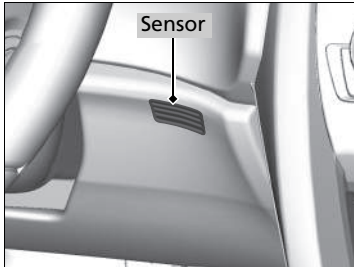
### ▶▶ To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

## Automatic Heating Sensors



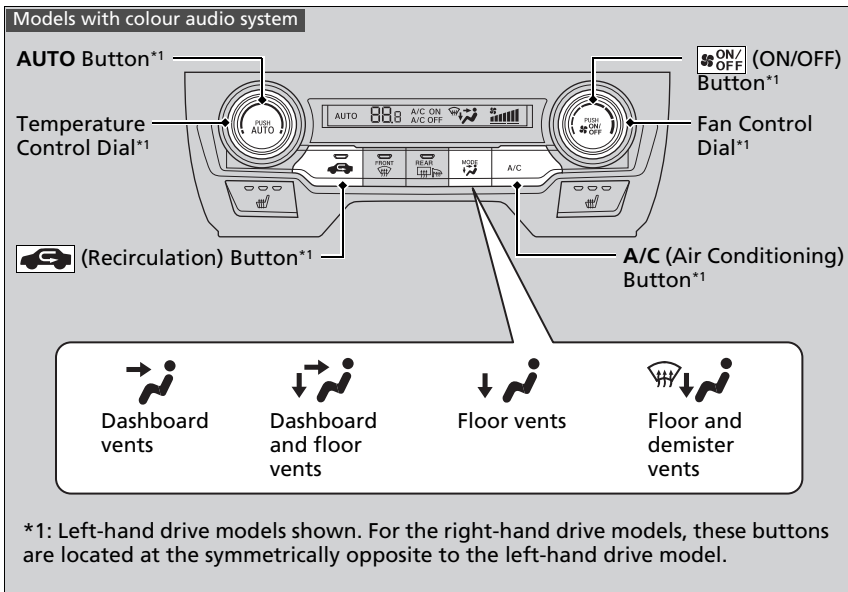
The automatic heating system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.





## Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
3. Press the **ON/OFF** (ON/OFF) button to cancel.

### Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons/icons\* are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button/icon\* that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button/icon\* that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

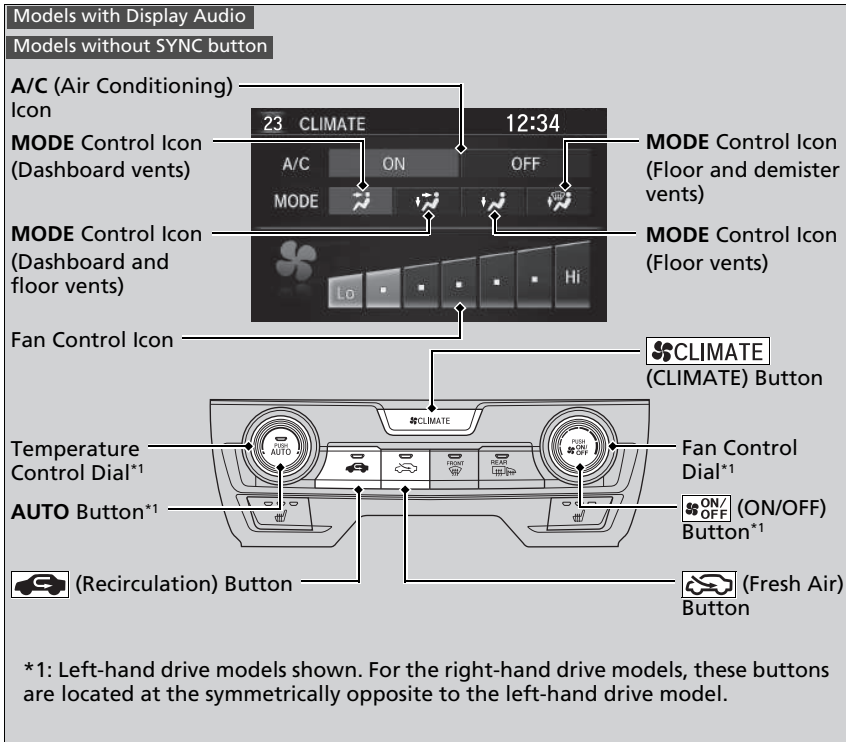
During idle-stops, air-conditioning is suspended, and only the blower remains active.

If you do not want air-conditioning suspended, press the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button to cancel idle-stop.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
3. Press the **ON/OFF** (ON/OFF) button to cancel.

Continued

▶▶ Using Automatic Climate Control

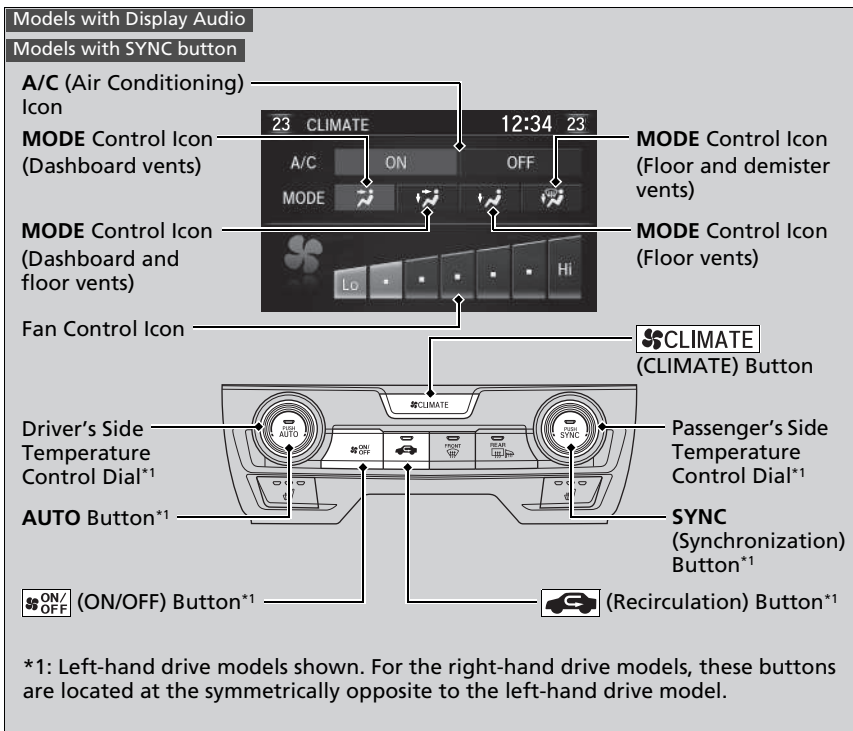
Pressing the **ON/OFF** button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

**Models with Display Audio**

Press the **CLIMATE** (CLIMATE) button to display **A/C**, **MODE**, fan control information on the audio/information screen to operate manually. Select icon to turn on or off **A/C**, change the vent mode, or change the fan speed.

**All models**

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.




Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side temperature control dial.
3. Press the **ON/OFF** (ON/OFF) button to cancel.

## ■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes



### Models without fresh air button


Press the  (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.


Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

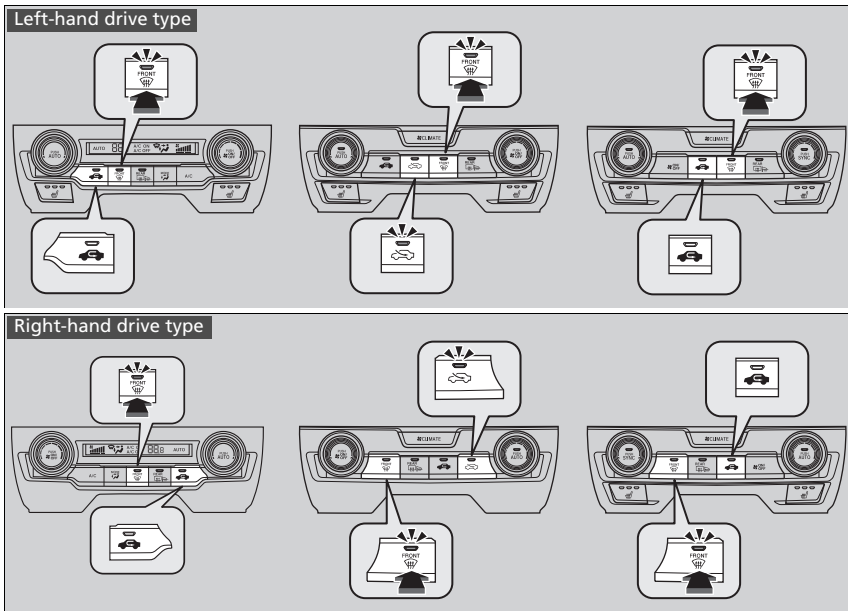
### Models with fresh air button


Press the  (recirculation) or  (fresh air) button to switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.


 Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

 Fresh air mode (indicator on): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

## Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows



Pressing the  (windscreen demister) button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the  button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

## Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows


**For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.**

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

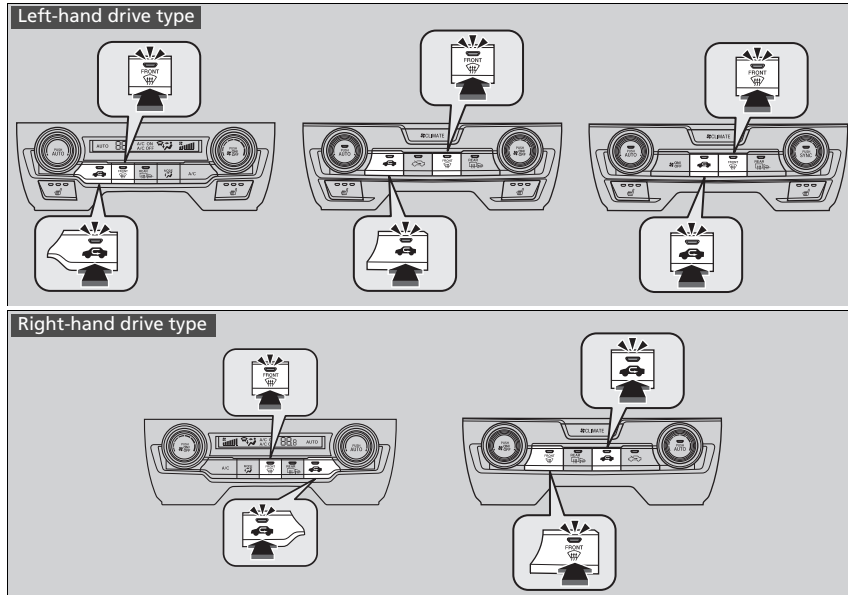
When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

To defog during the Auto Idle Stop, restart the engine as follows.

1. Make sure the shift lever is in **N**.
2. Depress the clutch pedal fully.
3. Press the  button.

■ To rapidly defrost the windows

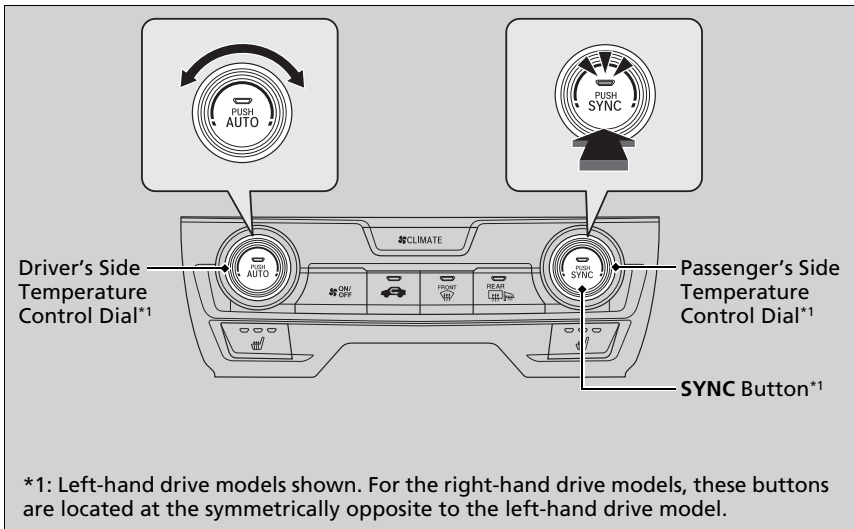


1. Press the  button.
2. Press the  button.

► To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

## ■ Synchronization Mode\*



You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
  - The system switches to synchronization mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

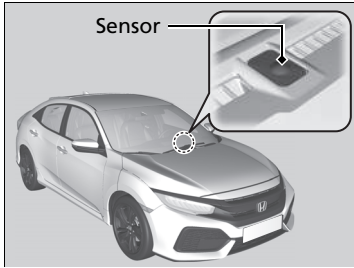
Press the **SYNC** button or change the passenger's side temperature setting to return to dual mode.

## ▣ Synchronization Mode\*

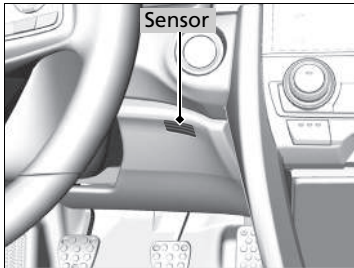
When you press the  button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

## Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.







# Features

This chapter describes how to operate the audio system and other technology features.

## Audio System\*

About Your Audio System .....	250
USB Port(s) .....	251
HDMI™ Port* .....	253
Audio System Theft Protection .....	253
Audio Remote Controls .....	254

### Models with colour audio system

## Audio System Basic Operation

Audio/Information Screen .....	257
Adjusting the Sound .....	261
Display Setup .....	262
Playing AM/FM Radio .....	263
Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)* .....	269

Playing an iPod .....	272
Playing a USB Flash Drive .....	275
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio .....	278

### Models with Display Audio

## Audio System Basic Operation

Audio/Information Screen .....	282
Adjusting the Sound .....	304
Display Setup .....	305
Voice Control Operation* <sup>1</sup> .....	307
Playing AM/FM Radio .....	311
Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)* ..	314
Playing an iPod .....	317
Song By Voice™ (SBV)* .....	320
Playing Aha™ .....	324

Playing a USB Flash Drive .....	325
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio .....	328
Playing a Video Using the HDMI™ .....	330
On Board Apps .....	332
Smartphone Connection .....	333
Wi-Fi Connection .....	337
Siri Eyes Free .....	339
Apple CarPlay .....	340
Android Auto .....	343
<b>Audio Error Messages</b> .....	347

## General Information on the Audio

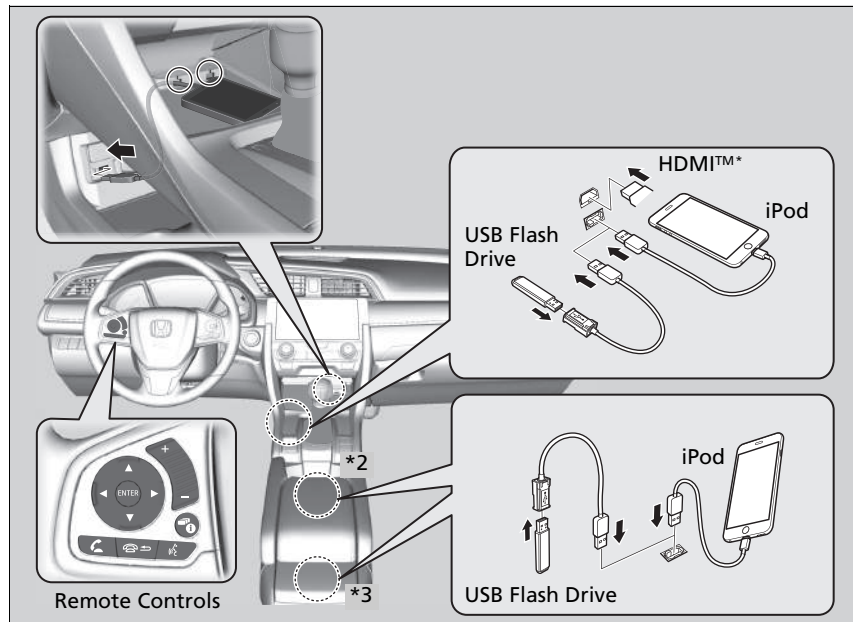
<b>System</b> .....	349
<b>Customized Features</b> .....	354
<b>Hands-Free Telephone System</b> .....	391, 412

\* Not available on all models

## About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio. It can also play USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone, *Bluetooth*®, and HDMI™\* devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface\*.



\*2: Left-hand drive type

\*3: Right-hand drive type

\* Not available on all models

### About Your Audio System

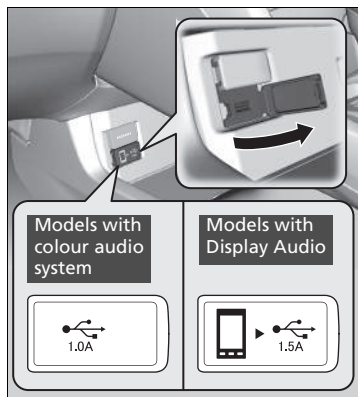
iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

#### Key Off Operation

After you turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]\*1, you can use the audio system for up to 30 minutes per driving cycle. However, whether you can continue using the audio system depends on the battery condition. Repeatedly using this feature may drain the battery.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## USB Port(s)



Install the device USB connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.

### Models with colour audio system

- ▶ The USB port (1.0A) is for playing audio files on a USB flash drive, connecting a mobile phone, and charging device.

### Models with Display Audio

- ▶ The USB port (1.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with smartphone connection, Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

### USB Port(s)

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

If the audio system does not recognise the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the iPod or visit [www.apple.com/ipod](http://www.apple.com/ipod).

### USB charge

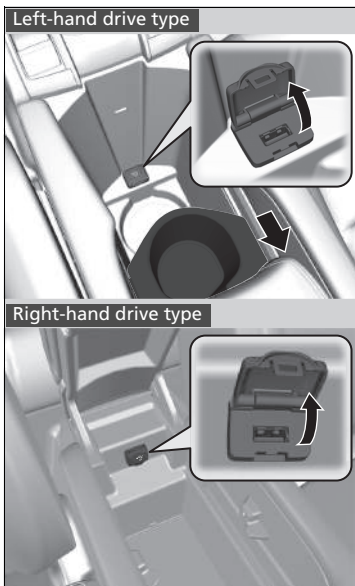
The USB port can supply up to 1.0A or 1.5A of power. It does not output 1.0A or 1.5A unless requested by the device.

For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II**\*1 first.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

\* 1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



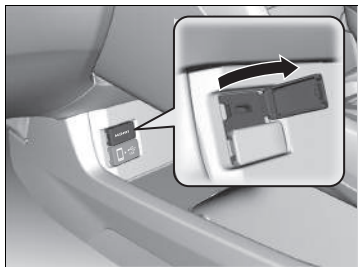
■ **In the console compartment\***

The USB port (1.0A) is for playing audio files on the USB flash drive, connecting a mobile phone, and charging device.

Left-hand drive type

- ▶ Move the removable beverage holder tray rearward.

## HDMI™ Port\*




1. Open the cover.
2. Install the HDMI™ cable to the HDMI™ port.

## Audio System Theft Protection

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

### ■ Reactivating the audio system

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the audio system power button for more than two seconds.
  - ▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognise the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

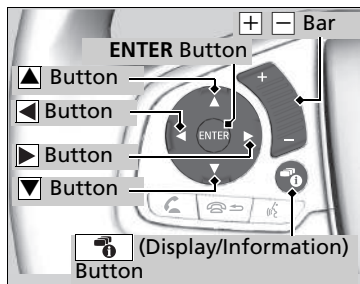
### ▶▶ HDMI™ Port\*

- Do not leave the HDMI™ connected device in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend keeping your data backed up before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

## Audio Remote Controls

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.



### ▲ ▼ Buttons

Press ▲ or ▼ to cycle through the audio mode as follows:

#### Models with Display Audio

FM→DAB\*→LW→MW→USB→iPod→  
Bluetooth® Audio→Apps→Audio Apps→  
AUX-HDMI™


#### Models with colour audio system


FM1→FM2→DAB1\*→DAB2\*→LW→MW→  
USB→iPod→Bluetooth® Audio

### ▶▶ Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Press the  (Hang-up/back) button\* to go back to the previous command or cancel a command.







Press the  (Display/information) button to switch the display.

▶▶ **Switching the Display** P. 282

#### Models with Display Audio

### ENTER Button

- When listening to the radio
  1. Press **ENTER** to switch the display to a preset list you stored in the preset buttons.
  2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a preset, then press **ENTER**.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  1. Press **ENTER** to display the folder list.
  2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a folder.
  3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of tracks in that folder.
  4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.
- When listening to an iPod
  1. Press **ENTER** to display the iPod music list.
  2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a category.
  3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of items in the category.









4. Press  or  to select an item, then press **ENTER**.
- ▶ Press **ENTER** and press  or  repeatedly until the desired mode you want to listen to is displayed.
  - When listening to *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> Audio
    1. Press **ENTER** to display the track list.
    2. Press  or  to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

#### (Volume) Bar

**Press** : To increase the volume.

**Press** : To decrease the volume.

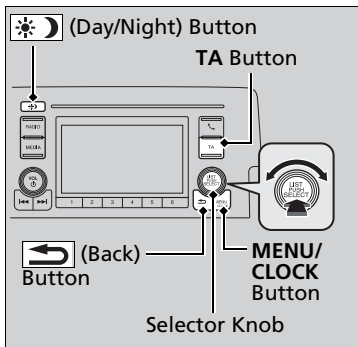
#### Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  - Press** : To select the next preset radio station.
  - Press** : To select the previous preset radio station.
  - Press and hold** : To select the next strong station.  
To select the next ensemble (DAB\*).
  - Press and hold** : To select the previous strong station.  
To select the previous ensemble (DAB\*).
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> Audio
  - Press** : To skip to the next song.
  - Press** : To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  - Press and hold** : To skip to the next folder.
  - Press and hold** : To go back to the previous folder.



## Models with colour audio system

To use the audio system, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II**.



Use the selector knob or **MENU/CLOCK** button to access some audio functions.

Press to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

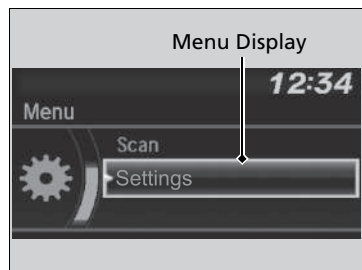
### Selector knob:

Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.

**MENU/CLOCK button:** Press to select any mode.

The available modes include the wallpaper, display, clock, language setup, and play modes. Play mode choices include scan, random, repeat, and so on.

**(Back) button:** Press to go back to the previous display.



**TA button:** Press to activate the TA station.

**(Day/Night) button:** Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Press , then adjust the brightness using .

- ▶ Each time you press , the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and **OFF** mode.

## Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.

### Menu Items

- ▶ **Adjust Clock** P. 156
- ▶ **Wallpaper Setup** P. 259
- ▶ **Display Setup** P. 262
- ▶ **Scan** P. 268, 270
- ▶ **Play Mode** P. 274, 277
- ▶ **RDS Settings** P. 264
- ▶ **DAB Settings** P. 270
- ▶ **Bluetooth** P. 278

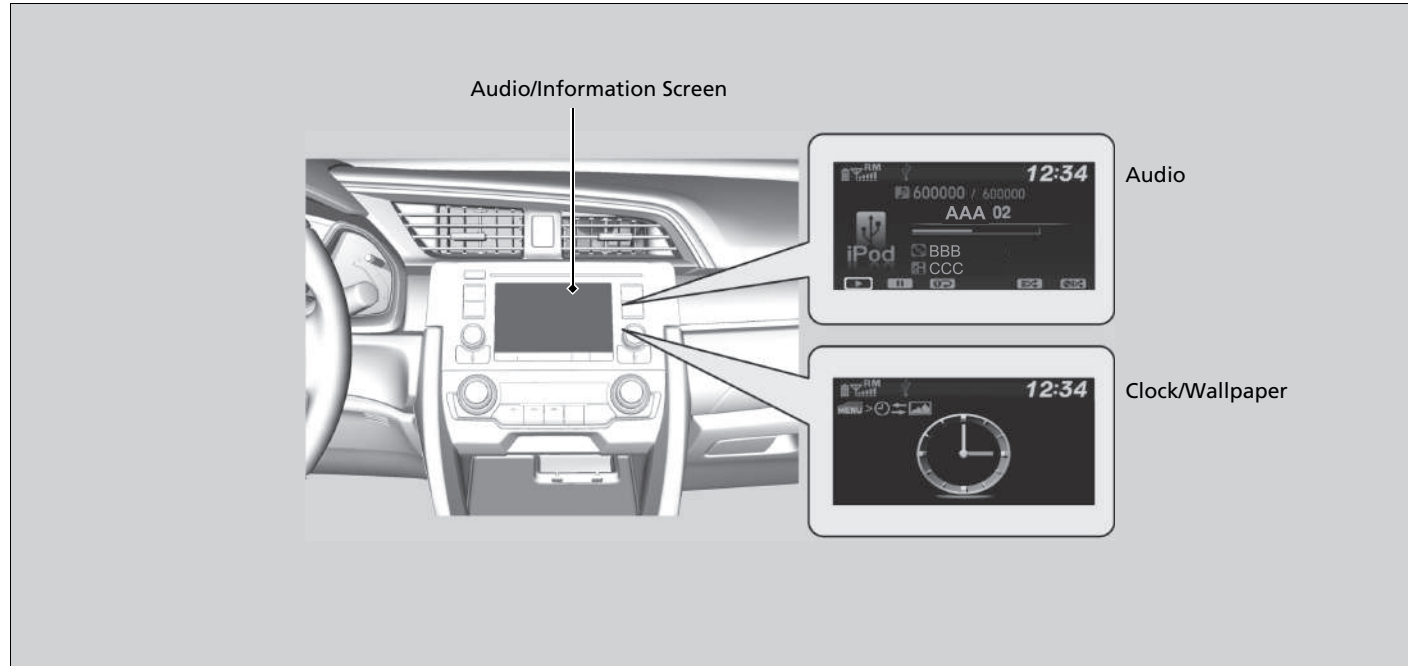
Press the button on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.

- ▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 254

## Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

### Switching the Display









### ■ **Audio**

Shows the current audio information.

### ■ **Clock/Wallpaper**

Shows a clock screen or an image you import.

### ■ **Change display**

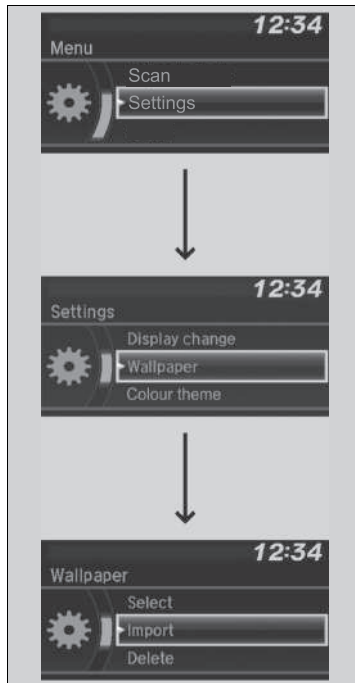
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Display change**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
  - ▶ If you want to return to the audio/information screen, select **Audio**.

## Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

### ■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.











1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.  
▶ **USB Port(s)** P. 251
2. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
3. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Import**, then press .  
▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Rotate to select a desired picture, then press .  
▶ The selected picture is displayed.
7. Press to save the picture.
8. Press to select **OK**.
9. Rotate to select a location to save the picture, then press .  
▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.











### ▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,920 × 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 480 × 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the error message appears.


### ■ Select wallpaper

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Select**, then press 
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate  to select a desired wallpaper, then press .

### ■ Delete wallpaper

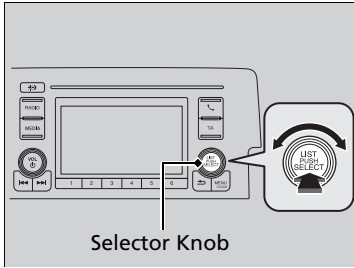
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Delete**, then press 
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate  to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press .
6. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press 
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

### ▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

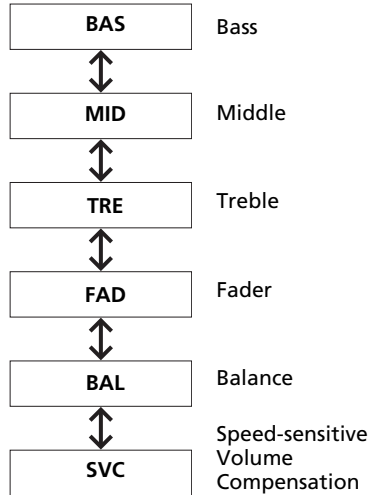
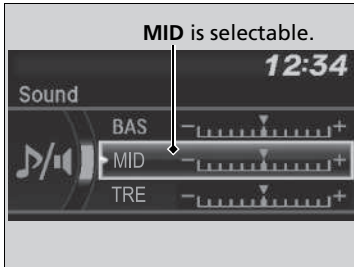
To go back to the previous screen, press the  (Back) button.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

## Adjusting the Sound



Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button and rotate to select **Sound**, then press . Rotate to scroll through the following choices:



Rotate to adjust the sound setting, then press .

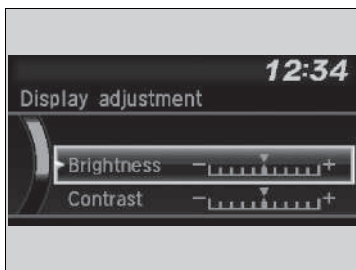
### ▶▶ Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

## Display Setup

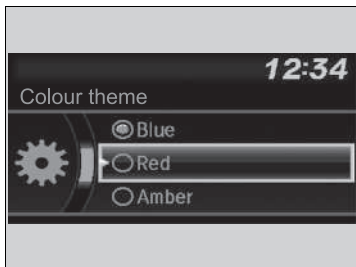
You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.

### Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Display adjustment**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Brightness**, then press .
5. Rotate to adjust the setting, then press .

### Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

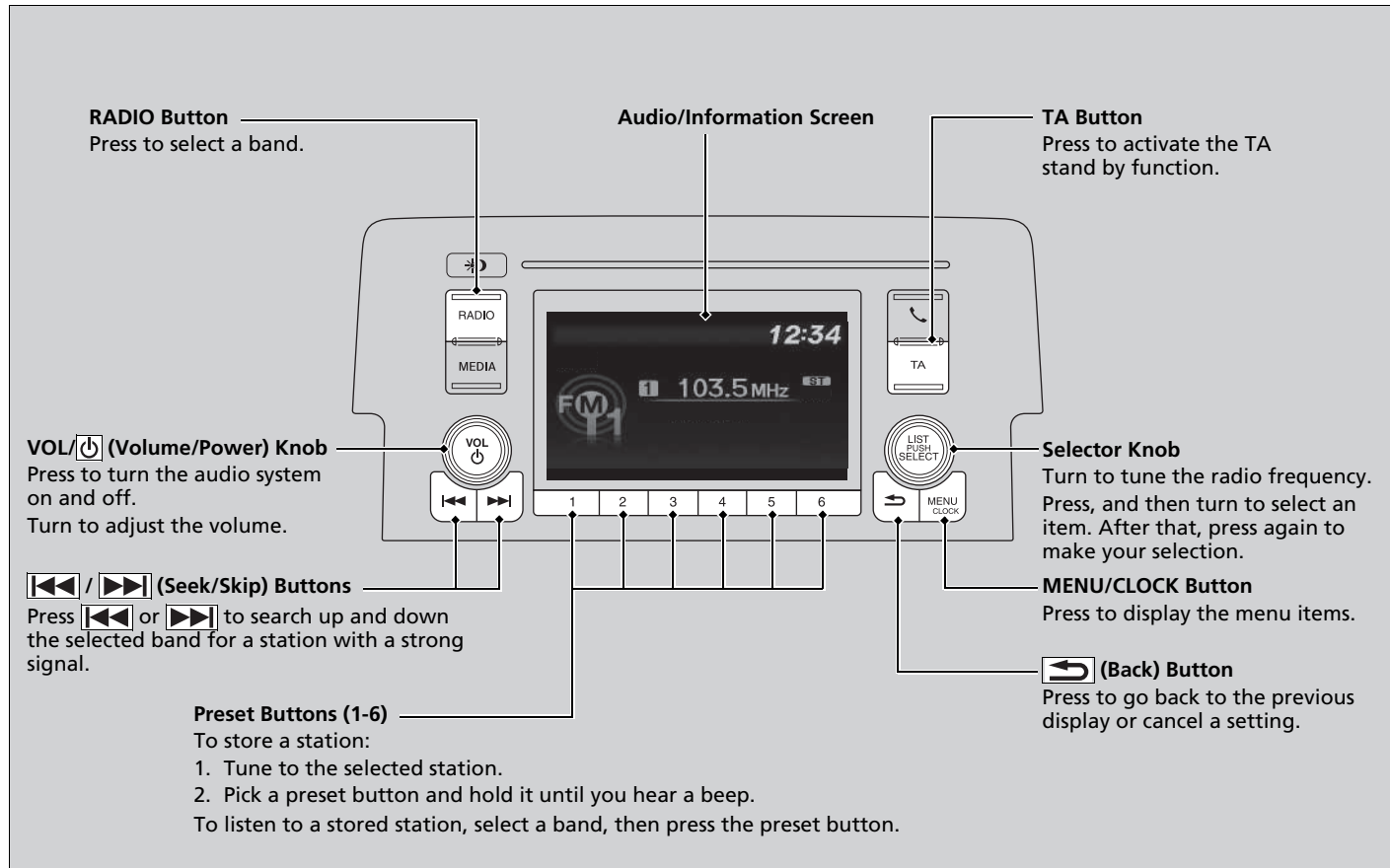


1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Colour theme**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the setting you want, then press .

### Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black level** settings in the same manner.

## Playing AM/FM Radio








FM mode

## Radio Data System (RDS)



Provides convenient automated services related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

### ■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Press  while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate  to select the station, then press .







### ■ Update List

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Press  while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate  to select **Update list**, then press .

### ■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **RDS settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Radio text**, then press 
  - ▶ Select **Radio text** again to turn it off.

### ▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts. Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

You can store 12 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset button memory. AM has two types of frequencies LW and MW, and each lets you store six stations. FM1 and FM2 let you store six stations each.

#### Switching the Audio Mode


Press the audio source selecting button on the steering wheel.

▶▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 254

### ▶▶ Radio Data System (RDS)







When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Turning the Alternative Frequency (AF) function on and off turns the RDS on and off.

Pressing  switches the function between on and off.







### ■ Alternative Frequency (AF)

Automatically changes the frequency of the same programme as you enter different regions.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **RDS settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **AF**, then press .
  - ▶ Select **AF** again to turn it off.

### ■ Regional Programme (REG)







Keeps the same frequency of the stations within that region even if the signal gets weak.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **RDS settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **REG**, then press .
  - ▶ Select **REG** again to turn it off.



Except AM/FM/DAB\* mode

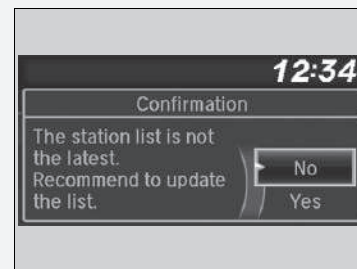
### ■ News Programme (News)

Automatically tunes to the news programme.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **RDS settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **News**, then press .
  - ▶ Select **News** again to turn it off.

### ▶▶ Radio Data System (RDS)

If the system cannot find any station on **Station list**, a confirmation message for updating the list appears. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press  to update the list.



### ■ Traffic announcement (TA) button

TA standby function allows the system to stand by for traffic announcements in any mode. The last tuned station must be an RDS-capable traffic programme station.

**To turn the function on:** Press the **TA** button. When a traffic announcement begins on your last tuned station, the system automatically switches to the FM mode. TA-INFO appears on the display. The system returns to your last selected mode after the traffic announcement is finished.

If you want to go back to your last selected mode during the traffic announcement, press the **TA** button again.

**To cancel the function:** Press the **TA** button.

### ☒ Radio Data System (RDS)

#### **TA**

When you press the **TA** button, the **TA** indicator appears on the display.

If you select **Scan** while the TA standby function is on, the system searches TP station only.

Pressing the **TA** button while the traffic announcement is on does not cancel the TA standby function.

Except AM/FM/DAB\* mode

### ■ Programme type (PTY)/News interrupt function

Allows the system to interrupt with a newscast in any mode. The last tuned station must be the NEWS PTY coded station.

**To activate the function:** Select **News** from **RDS settings** and display the NEWS PTY before changing to other modes. When a newscast begins on your last tuned station, the system automatically switches to the FM mode.

📖 **News Programme (News)** P. 265

The system returns to your last selected mode if changed to another programme, or signal gets weak.




### ■ PTY alarm

The PTY code, ALARM is used for emergency announcements, such as natural disasters. When this code is received, ALARM appears on the display and the system interrupts your audio operation.

AM (LW/MW) mode




## Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Press  while listening to an AM station.
2. Rotate  to select the station, then press .

## Update List

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Press  while listening to an AM station.
2. Rotate  to select **Update list**, then press .



## Scan

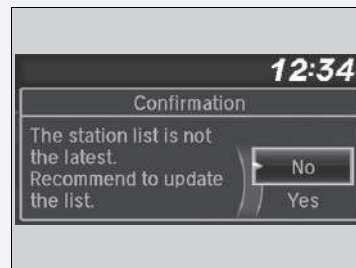
Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan**, then press .

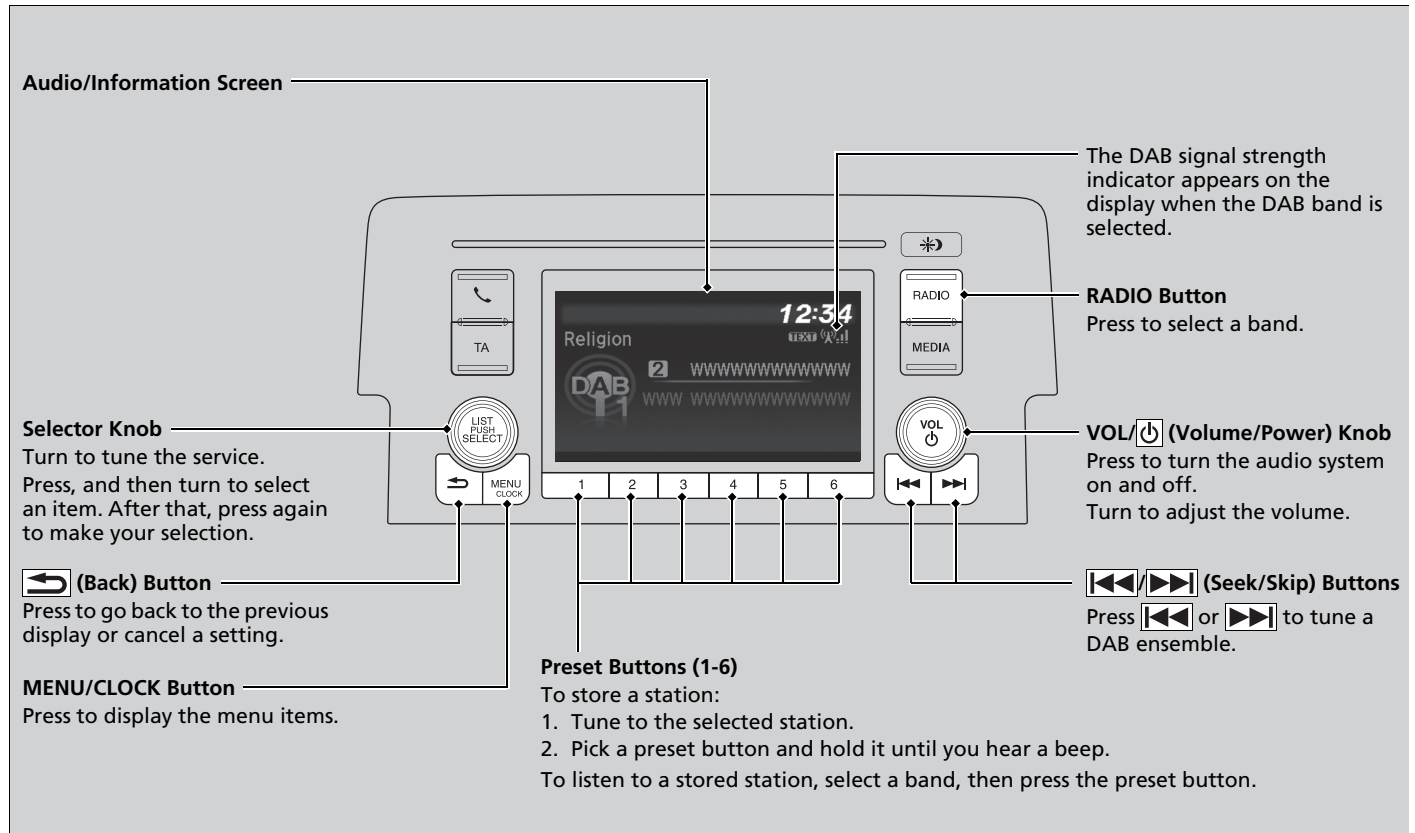
To turn off scan, press .

## Station List

If the system cannot find any station on **Station list**, a confirmation message for updating the list appears. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press  to update the list.






## Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)\*








## Service List and Ensemble List

### To find an DAB station from Service List or Ensemble List

To find a DAB station from the service list:

1. Press  while selecting the DAB mode.
2. Rotate  to select the station, then press .
  - ▶ If you select **Update list**, the system update the station list.

To find a DAB station from the ensemble list:

1. Press  while selecting the DAB mode.
2. Rotate  to select **Ensemble list**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select the ensemble, then press .
  - ▶ If you select **Update list**, the system update the ensemble list.

### Scan







Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

### Radio Text:

Displays the radio text information of the selected DAB station.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **DAB settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Radio text**, then press .
  - ▶ Select **Radio text** again to turn it off.



### Service List and Ensemble List

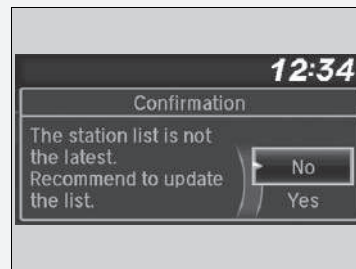
You can store 12 DAB stations into the preset button memory. DAB1 and DAB2 let you store 6 stations each.

#### Switching the Audio Mode

Press the audio source selecting button on the steering wheel.

▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 254

If the system cannot find a station, a confirmation message for updating the list appears. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press  to update the list.









### Radio Text:

The **TEXT** indicator appears on the display indicating radio text information.







### ■ DAB-Link:

Automatically searches for the same station from Ensembles, and switches to it.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **DAB settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **DAB-Link**, then press 
  - ▶ Select **DAB-Link** again to turn it off.









### ■ FM-Link:

If the system finds the same station from an FM band, it automatically switches the band.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **DAB settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **FM-Link**, then press 
  - ▶ Select **FM-Link** again to turn it off.

### ■ Band select:

You can select specific bands. This can reduce the time to update the lists, and search for a station.

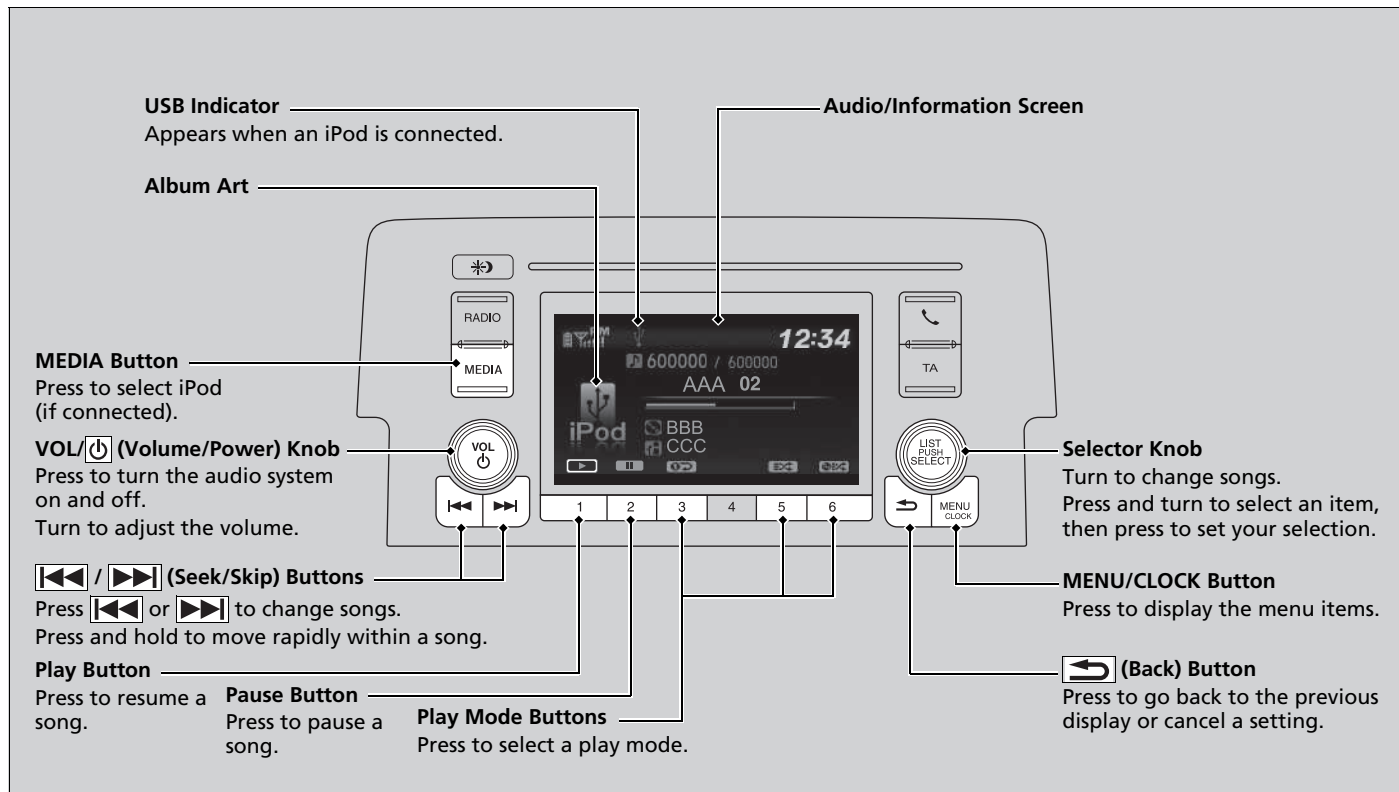
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **DAB settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Band select**, then press .
5. Rotate  to select **Both**, **BandIII** or **L-Band**, then press .



## Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

📄 **USB Port(s)** P. 251



## How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display the iPod music list.

2. Rotate to select a category.

3. Press to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate to select an item, then press .

- ▶ Press and rotate repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

### ▶▶ Playing an iPod

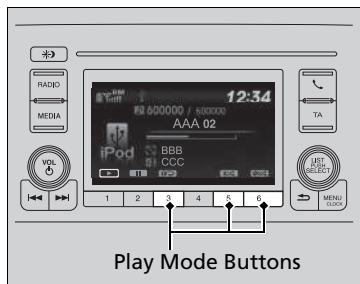
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 347

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

### To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

## How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

**Shuffle albums:** Plays all available albums in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

**Random all:** Plays all available songs in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

**Repeat one track:** Repeats the current song.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate to select **Play mode**, then press .

Rotate to select a mode, then press .

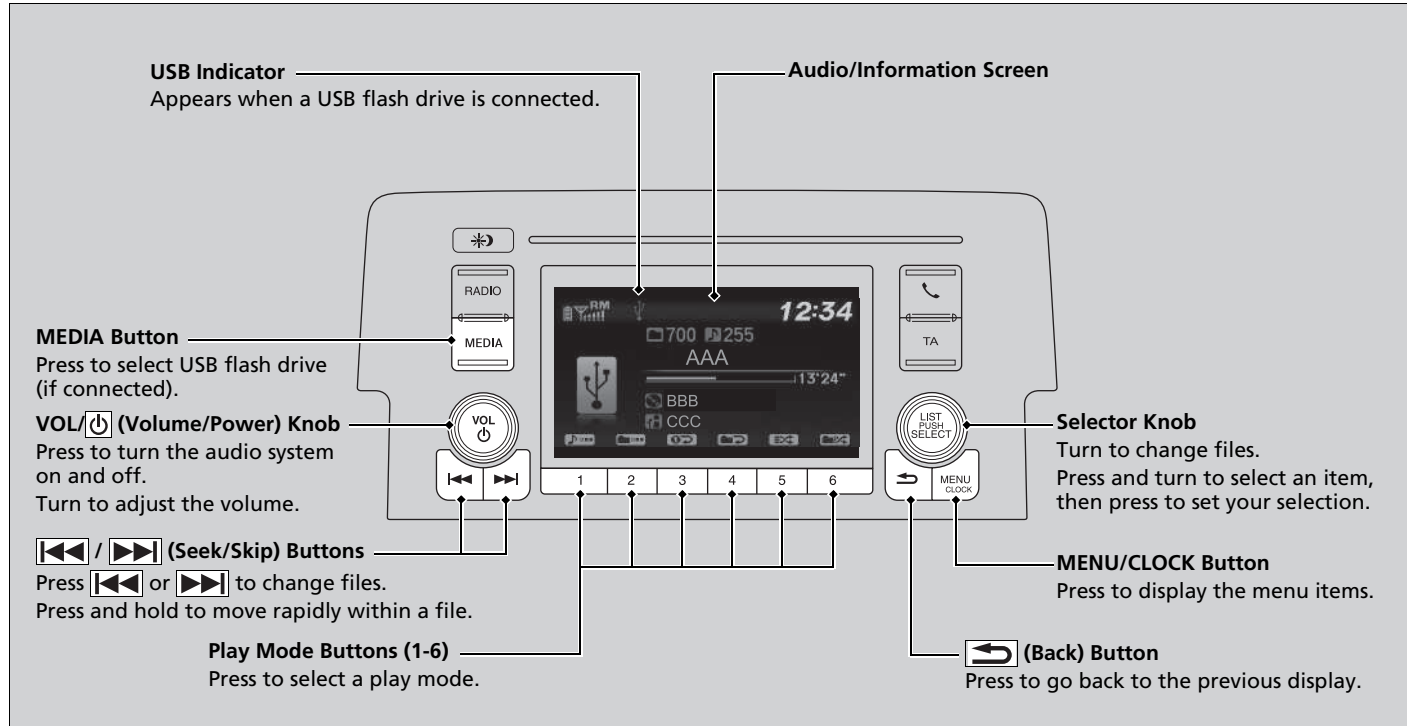
To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal play**, then press .

## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA or AAC\*1 format.

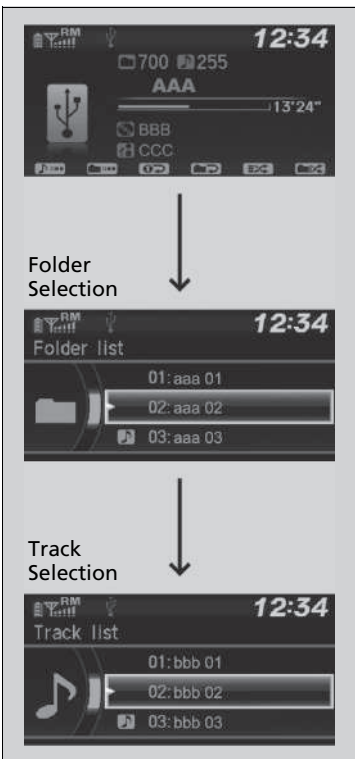
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

📌 **USB Port(s)** P. 251



\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

## How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display a folder list.
2. Rotate to select a folder.
3. Press to display a list of files in that folder.
4. Rotate to select a file, then press .

## ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

**General Information on the Audio System**  
P. 349

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

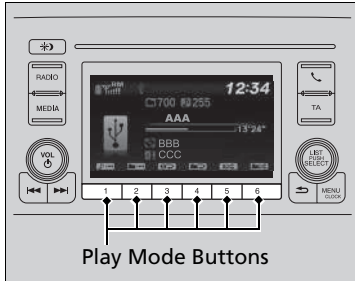
The audio system displays **Unplayable file**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

**iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 347

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a file.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.


### To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

## How to Select a Play Mode


Play Mode Menu Items


### Repeat

 **Repeat one folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.


 **Repeat one track:** Repeats the current file.


### Random

 **Random in folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

 **Random all:** Plays all files in random order.



### Scan



 **Scan folders:** Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

 **Scan tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate  to select **Play mode**, then press .

Rotate  to select a mode, then press .

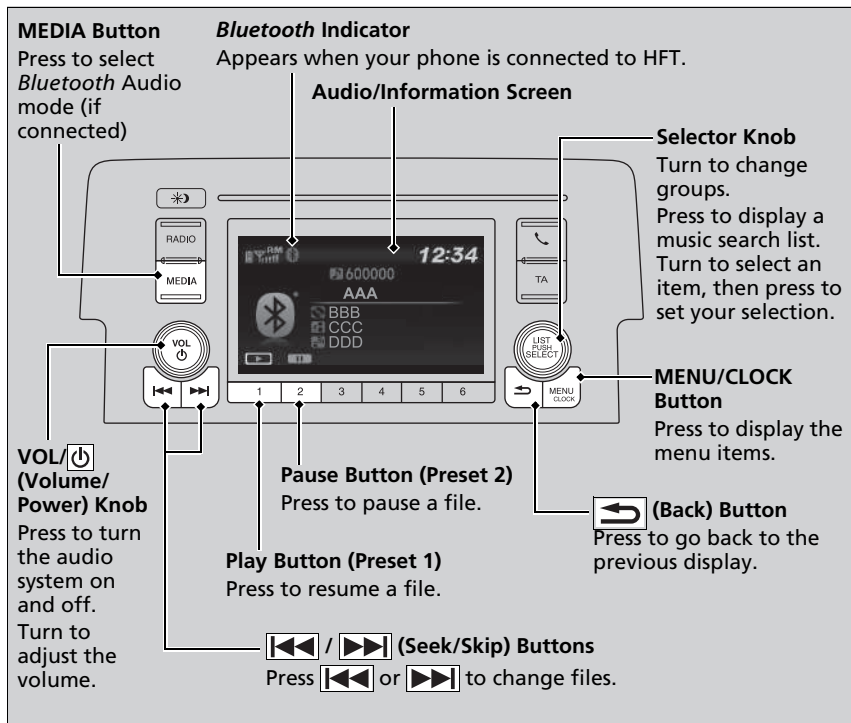
To turn it off, rotate  to select **Normal play**, then press .

## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

☒ **Phone Setup** P. 397



### ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. For a list of compatible phones, ask a dealer.

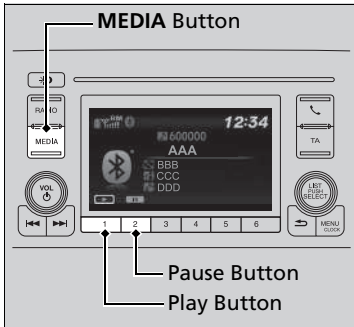
Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

## To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFT.
2. Press the **MEDIA** button until the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode is selected.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

### ■ To pause or resume a file

Press the **Play** or **Pause** button to select a mode.

## ▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

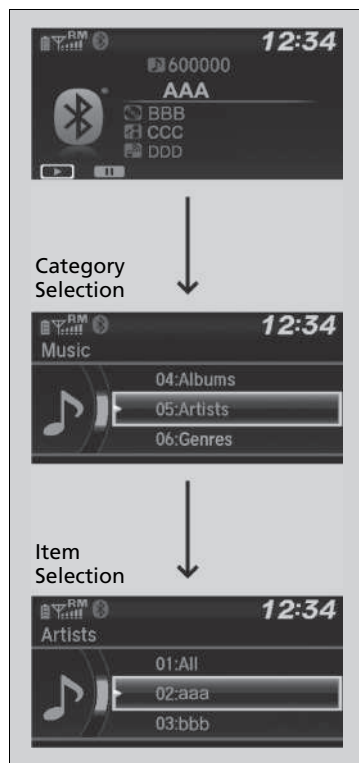
The pause function may not be available on some phones.


If any audio device is connected to the USB port, you may need to press the **MEDIA** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.


Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.








## How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob



1. Press  to display the music search list.

2. Rotate  to select a category.

3. Press  to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate  to select an item, then press .  
▶ Press  and rotate  repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

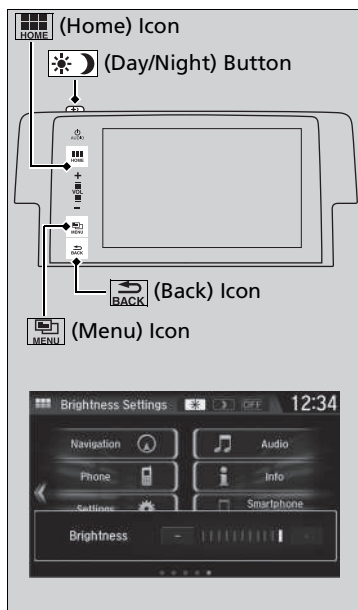
### How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the categories may not be displayed.

## Models with Display Audio

You can use the audio system for 30 minutes when the ignition switch is in LOCK [0]<sup>\*1</sup> position, the system will then turn off automatically.

If you want to keep using it, we recommend that you turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY [I] or ON [II]<sup>\*1</sup>.



: Select to go to the home screen.

**Switching the Display** P. 282

: Select to display available options including **Sound**, **View Radio Text**<sup>\*2</sup>, **Music Search**, and playback modes.

: Select to go back to the previous screen when the icon is illuminated.

(Day/Night) button: Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Press the button once and select or to make an adjustment.

▶ Each time you press the button, the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Displayed only when text information has been received.

## Audio System Basic Operation

### Audio Menu Items

- Station List** P. 312, 313
- Music Search List** P. 318, 326
- Scan** P. 313, 316, 327
- Play Mode** P. 319, 327

When the battery has been reconnected or replaced, the next start-up may take a few minutes for the audio system to start. Wait a few moments while the system is starting up.

Press and hold the /AUDIO (power/audio) icon for approximately 10 seconds to reset the system.

### Key Off Operation


- Key Off Operation** P. 250

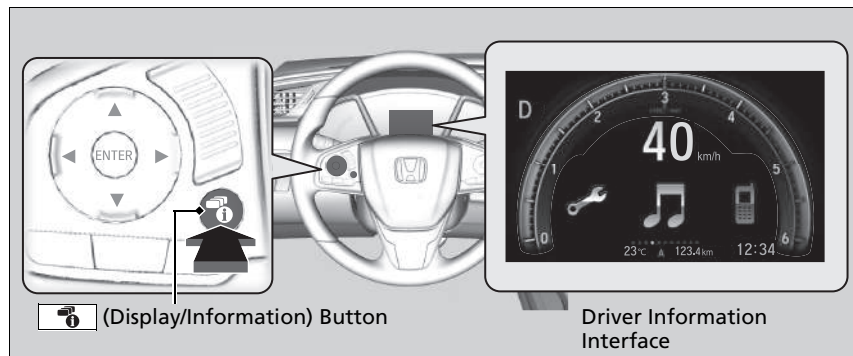
## Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this display, you can go to various setup options.

### Switching the Display

#### ■ Using the button

Press the  (display/information) button to change the display.

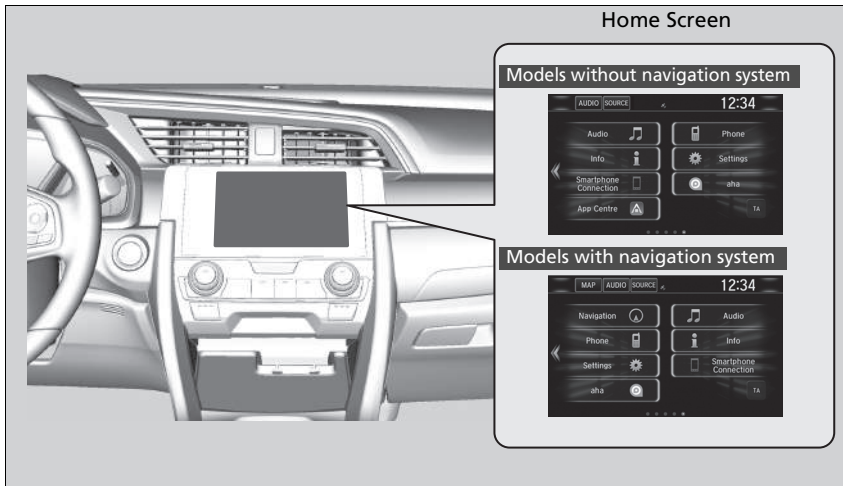



#### ▶ Using the button



You can edit, add, and delete the contents shown on the driver information interface.

▶ **Customizing the Meter** P. 287

## ■ Using the audio/information screen



Select  to go to the home screen.

Select **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation**\*, **Smartphone Connection** (**Apple CarPlay**, **Android Auto**), **aha**, **App Centre**, **TA**, **App List** , or  (instrument panel).


\* Not available on all models

## ■ Phone

Displays the HFT information.

- ▶ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 412

## ■ Info

Displays **Trip Computer** or **Clock/wallpaper**. Select  on the **Info Menu** screen to see all available options: **Trip Computer**, **Voice Info\***, **Clock/wallpaper** and **System/Device Information**.

### Trip Computer:

- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **History of Trip A** tab: Displays information for the three previous drives. The information is stored every time you reset Trip A.  
To delete the history manually, select **Delete history** on the **History of Trip A** tab. The confirmation message appears on the screen, then select **Yes**.

**Voice Info\***: Displays a list of all voice commands.

**Clock/wallpaper**: Displays the clock and wallpaper.

### System/Device Information:

- **System Info**: Displays the software version of the audio system.
- **USB info**: Displays the memory usage of the USB device.

## ▶▶ Audio/Information Screen

### Touchscreen operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be greyed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped or use voice commands\*.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

- ▶ **Customized Features** P. 354

## ■ Audio

Displays the current audio information.

## ■ Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 354

## ■ Navigation\*

Displays the navigation screen.

➤ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

## ■ Smartphone Connection

Connects with your smartphone\*1 and allows some apps on your smartphone to be used on the audio system.

➤ **Apple CarPlay** P. 340

➤ **Android Auto** P. 343

## ■ aha

Displays the Aha™ screen.

➤ **Playing Aha™** P. 324

## ■ App Centre

Displays Honda App Center.

➤ **On Board Apps** P. 332

## ■ TA

Turns on and off the traffic information.

\*1: Available on specific phones only. Ask a dealer for compatible phones for feature details.

\* Not available on all models

■ **App List** 

Adds or removes apps or widgets on the home screen.


➤ **Home Screen** P. 293

■  **(Instrument Panel)**

Selects from three customizable settings for the driver information interface.

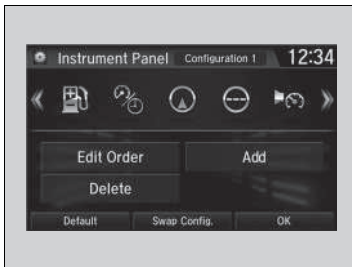
## Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout



1. Select .
2. Select and hold an icon.
  - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

## Customizing the Meter

You can edit, add, or delete the meter contents on the driver information interface.




1. .
2. **Settings**
3. **System**
4. **Configuration of Instrument Panel**

### ✕ Customizing the Meter

You can store up to three customized configurations. To select or customize a configuration, press **Swap Config.**

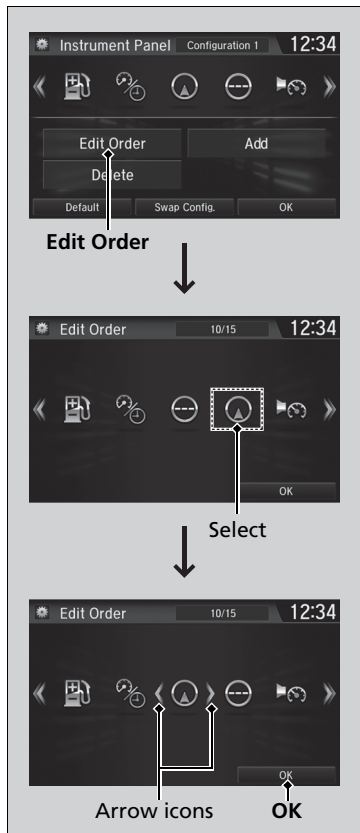
When you select **Swap Config.** during customization, the settings you changed will be saved.

When you select  during customization, the settings you changed will not be saved and you will be returned to the **Configuration of Instrument Panel** screen.



## ■ Editing order

To change the order of the icons on the driver information interface, first select:



### 1. Edit Order

### 2. Select the icon you want to move.

- ▶ You will see arrows on both sides of the selected icon.

### 3. Select the left or right arrow repeatedly to move the icon to your desired position.

### 4. Select **OK**.

- ▶ The screen will return to the **Configuration of Instrument Panel** screen.

### ▶▶ Editing order

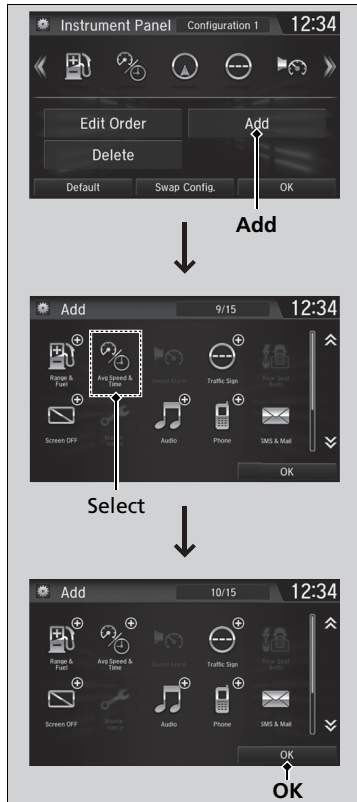
You can use an alternative method to change the order of the icons. First select:

#### 1. **Edit Order**

2. Select and hold the icon you want to move.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the **Configuration of Instrument Panel** screen.

## ■ Adding contents

You can add icons to the driver information interface. To add icons, first select:



### 1. Add

### 2. Select an icon you want to add.

- ▶ You will see a plus mark on the upper right hand corner of the selected icon.

### 3. Select **OK**.

- ▶ The screen will return to the **Configuration of Instrument Panel** screen.

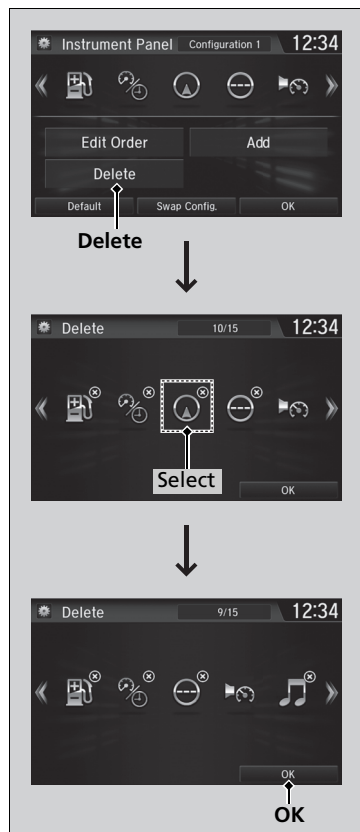
## ▶▶ Adding contents

Icons that are grayed out cannot be selected.

If an icon has a plus mark in the upper-right corner, it means that the icon has already been added.

## ■ Deleting contents

To delete contents on the driver information interface, first select:



### 1. Delete

### 2. Select an icon you want to delete.

- ▶ The icon with an **X** on the upper right hand corner can be deleted.

### 3. Select **OK**.

- ▶ The screen will return to the **Configuration of Instrument Panel** screen.

## ▶▶ Deleting contents

You can also delete contents by selecting:

### 1. **Delete** or **Edit Order**

2. Select and hold an icon you want to delete.
3. Drag and drop the icon to the trash icon.
4. Select **OK**.

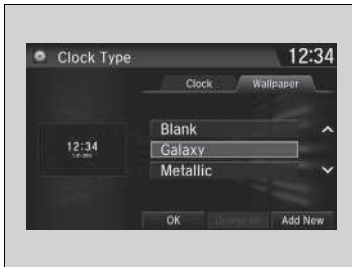
- ▶ The screen will return to the **Configuration of Instrument Panel** screen.

## Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

### ■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to five images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.




1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.  
▶ **USB Port(s)** P. 251
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
5. Select **Add New**.  
▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Select a desired picture.  
▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
7. Select **Start Import** to save the data.  
▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

### ▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

The wallpaper you set up on **Clock/Wallpaper Type** cannot be displayed on the driver information interface.

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 5 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 4,096 pixels. If the image size is less than 800 × 480 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected.** message appears.



After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

1. Select .
2. Select and hold empty space on the home screen. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Change wallpaper**.
4. Select **Gallery**, **Live wallpapers**, or **Wallpapers**.

### ■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
  - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Set**.
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

### ■ To view wallpaper once it is set

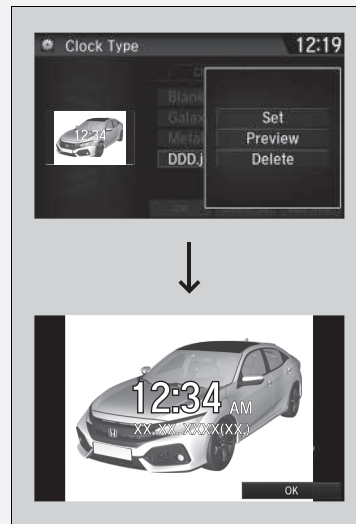
1. Select .
2. Select **Info**.
3. Select .
4. Select **Clock/wallpaper**.


### ■ Delete wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a wallpaper that you want to delete.
  - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Delete**.
  - ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes** to delete completely.
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

### ▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

From the pop-up menu, select **Preview** to see a preview at full-size screen.



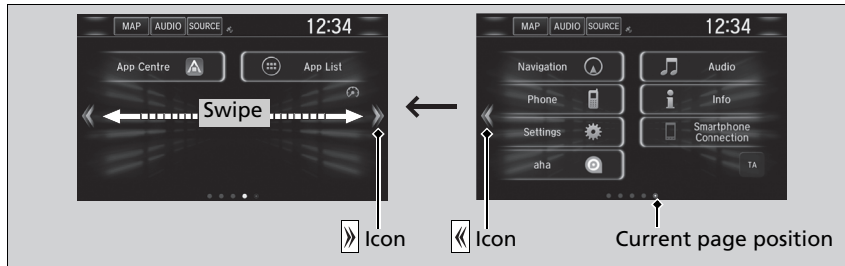
To go back to the previous screen, select **OK**, or select .



When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

To delete all wallpapers you add, select **Delete All**, then **Yes**.

## Home Screen


### To change to a next screen



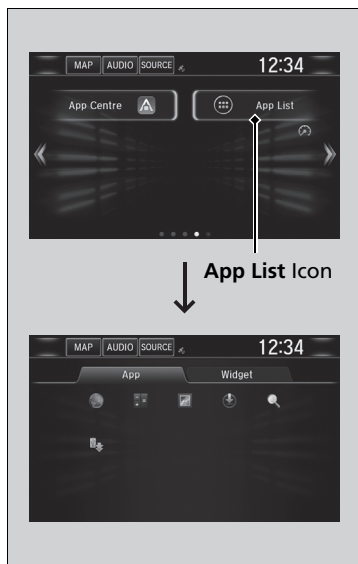
Selecting  or , or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.



### Home Screen

The home screen has 5 pages (fixed). You cannot add any more pages.







Select  to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

## ■ To use apps or widgets



1. Select .
2. Select **App List** .
  - ▶ The apps screen appears.
3. Select the app or widget you want to use.

### Preinstall app list:

-  (Browser): Displays the web browser utilized by smartphone and Wi-Fi connection.
-  (Calculator): Displays Calculator.
-  (Gallery): Displays images.
-  (Downloads): Displays the data downloaded from the web browser and so on.
-  (Search): Displays various retrieval screen.
-  (App installer): Check with a Honda dealer for apps that are available for installation.

## ▶▶ To use apps or widgets

Select and hold a selected app or widget to add that app's or widget's shortcut on the home screen.

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to reset the system.

### ▶▶ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 390

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.


### ▶▶ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 390

In case those apps still do not startup normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

There is a possibility that a browser is shut down in the situation of the use. In that situation, the screen will return to before the browser startup.

Do not install apps other than those confirmed by a Honda dealer. Installation of unauthorized apps may introduce data corruption risks to your vehicle's information and your privacy.

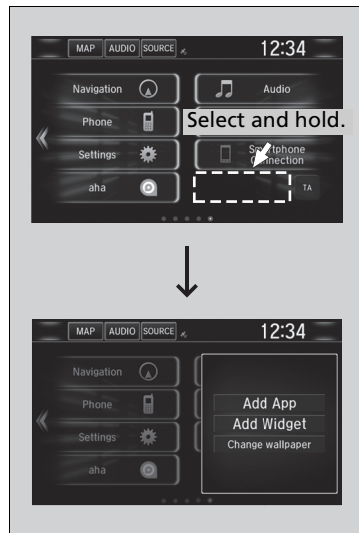
You can delete user installed apps by the following procedure.


1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Detailed Information**.
6. Select **Apps**.
7. Select an app that you want to delete.
8. Select **Delete**.

Pre-installed apps cannot be deleted.

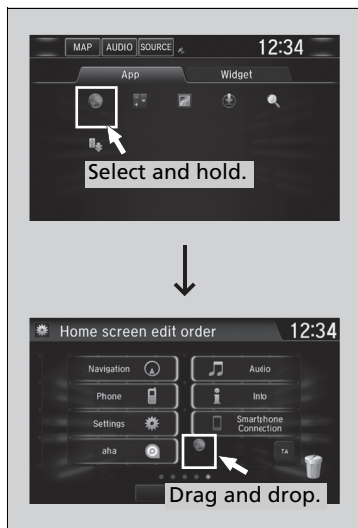
## ■ To add app or widget icons on the home screen

App or widget icons can be added on the home screen.



1. Select .
2. Select and hold empty space on the home screen.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Add App** or **Add Widget**.
  - ▶ The apps screen appears.

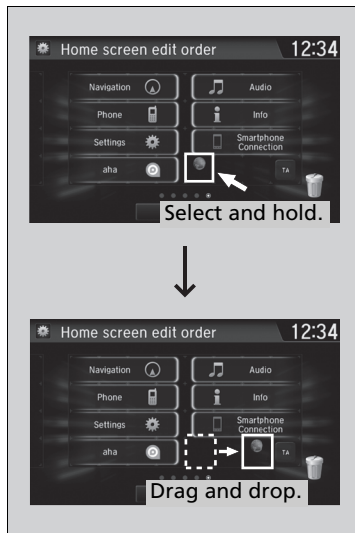




4. Select and hold an app or widget icon you want to add.
  - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
5. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
6. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

## ■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.
  - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
3. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

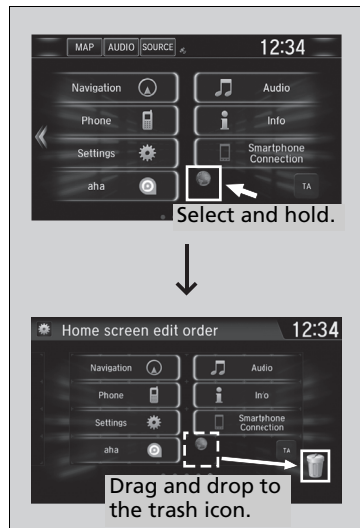
## ▶▶ To move icons on the home screen

You can also move the **Phone, Info, Audio, Settings, Navigation\***, **Smartphone Connection, aha, App Centre, TA, App List** (☺), and (🗑️) (instrument panel) icons in the same manner.

\* Not available on all models

### ■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.
  - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the trash icon.
  - ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
3. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

### ▶▶ To remove icons on the home screen

You cannot delete the **Phone, Info, Audio, Settings, Navigation\*, Smartphone Connection, aha, App Centre, TA, App List** (☰), and (🔄) (instrument panel) icons.

Apps or widgets will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

## ■ To change the home screen wallpaper

You can change a wallpaper of the home screen.

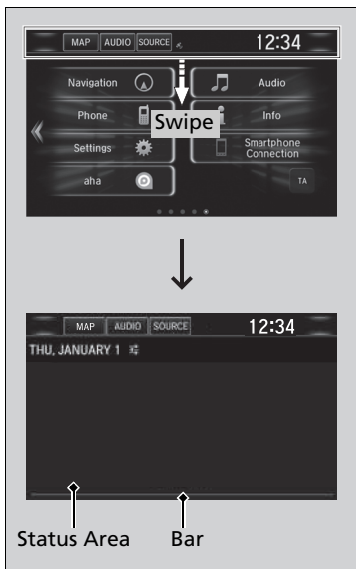



1. Select and hold empty space on the home screen.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
2. Select **Change wallpaper**.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.



3. Select an app for selecting wallpapers.
4. Select the wallpaper you want to change.
5. Select **Set wallpaper**.
  - ▶ The wallpaper is changed, then the screen will return to the home screen.

## Status Area




1. Swipe the upper area of the screen.  
▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Select  or swipe up the bottom bar to close the area.

## Changing the Screen Interface


You can change the screen interface design.



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Change Skin**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

## Changing the Screen Interface

After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

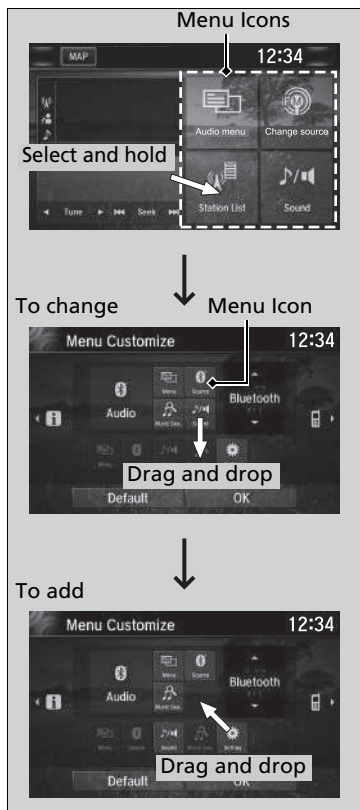
1. Select .
2. Select and hold empty space on the home screen. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Change wallpaper**.
4. Select **Gallery**, **Live wallpapers**, or **Wallpapers**.

If you change the screen interface, some of the setting items will change.

 **Customized Features** P. 354

## Menu Customize

You can change menu icons on the right side of the **Audio**, **Phone**, and **Info** screen.



1. Select and hold menu icon.

2. Select ◀ or ▶ icon, then **Audio**, **Phone**, or **Info** from **Menu Customize**.

3. Select and hold the menu icon you want to change, then drag and drop the icon to the bottom.

4. Select and hold the menu icon you want to add, then drag and drop the icon to above.

5. Select **OK**.

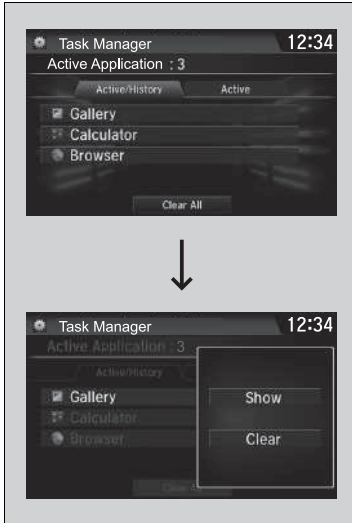
## Menu Customize


You can also use the method below to change menu icon:

Select **Settings**→**System**→**Home** tab→**Menu Icon Position**

## Closing Apps

You can close specific apps running in the background on the system.



1. Select and hold .
2. Select the **Active** tab.
  - ▶ If you select the **Active/History** tab, you can close the apps that are currently running and delete the app activity history simultaneously.
3. Select an app you want to close.
4. Select **Clear**.
  - ▶ The display will return to the app list.

## Closing Apps

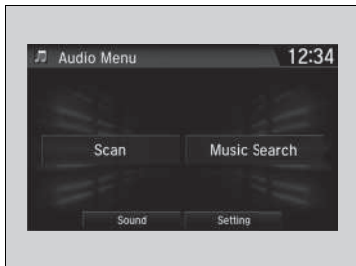
If you have a number of apps running in the background and something goes wrong with the audio system, some of those apps may not work properly. If this happens, close all the apps and re-launch the app/apps that you want to use.

To close all apps on the system, select **Clear All**, then **Yes**.

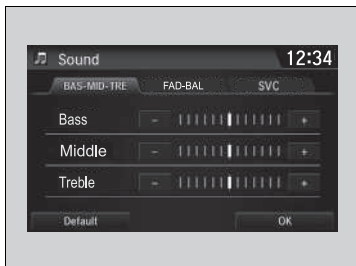
You cannot close the Aha™ and Garmin\* apps.



## Adjusting the Sound



1. Select .
2. Select **Audio**.
3. Select .
4. Select **Sound**.



Select a tab from the following choices:

- **BAS-MID-TRE:** Bass, Middle, Treble
- **FAD-BAL:** Fader, Balance
- **SVC:** Speed Volume Compensation

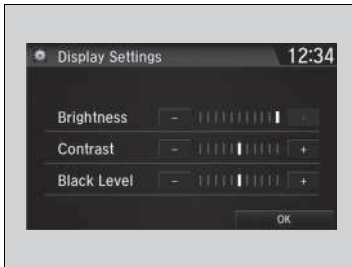
### Adjusting the Sound


The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

## Display Setup

You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.


### ■ Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Display Settings**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

### ■ Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

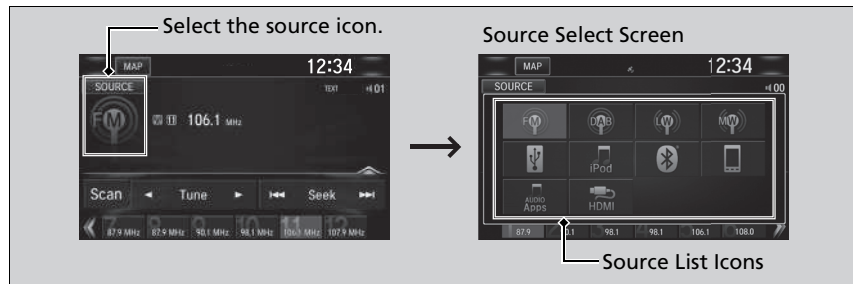


1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Background Colour**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

### ☒ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

## ■ Selecting an Audio Source



Select the current source icon, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.



## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

## Models with navigation system

## Voice Control Operation\*1

Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation.

The voice control system uses the  (Talk) and  (hang-up/back) buttons on the steering wheel and a microphone near the map lights in the ceiling.

### Voice Recognition

To achieve optimum voice recognition when using the voice control system:



- Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using.  
The system recognizes only certain commands.  
Available voice command P. 308
- Close the windows and sunroof\*.
- Adjust the dashboard and side vents so air does not blow onto the microphone in the ceiling.
- Speak clearly in a natural speaking voice without pausing between words.
- Reduce any background noise if possible. The system may misinterpret your command if more than one person is speaking at the same time.

\*1: Language that the voice control system recognizes are English, German, French, Spanish, and Italian.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*

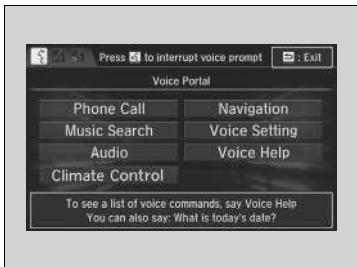
#### ▶▶ Voice Control Operation\*1


When you press the  button, a helpful prompt asks what you would like to do. Press and release the  button again to bypass this prompt and give a command.

#### ▶▶ Voice Recognition


The voice control system can only be used from the driver's seat because the microphone unit removes noises from the front passenger's side.

## ■ Voice Portal Screen\*



When the  (Talk) button is pressed, available voice commands appear on the screen.

For a complete list of commands, say "Voice Help" after the beep or select **Voice Help**.

You can see the list of commands in **Voice Info** on the **Info Menu** screen. Select **Info**, then select .

The system only recognizes the commands on the following pages, at certain screens. Free form voice commands are not recognized.

### ■ Phone Call

This can be only used when the phone is connected. When the system recognizes the *Phone call* command, the screen will change to the voice recognition screen for phone commands.

- *Dial by Number*
- *Call History*
- *Redial*
- *Call <Your contact Name>*
- *Call <Phone Number>*

Phone Call commands are not available if using Apple CarPlay.

### ■ Music Search

This can be only used when the iPod or USB device is connected.

### ■ Climate Control

When the system recognizes the *Climate Control* command, the screen will change the dedicated screen to the climate control voice recognition screen.

▶ **Climate Control Commands** P. 310

### ■ Audio

When the system recognizes the *Audio* command, the screen will change to the audio voice recognition screen.

- *Audio On*\*1
- *Audio Off*\*1
- *Radio FM*
- *Radio MW*
- *Radio LW*
- *iPod*
- *USB*
- *Other Sources*

### ■ Navigation

The screen changes to the navigation screen.

▶ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

### ■ Voice Setting

The screen changes to the **Voice Recog.** tab on the **System Settings** screen.

\*1: These commands toggle the function on and off, so the command may not match your intended action.

## ■ Voice Help

You can see a list of the available commands on the screen.

- *Useful Commands*
- *Phone Commands*
- *Audio Commands*
- *On Screen Commands*
- *Music Search Commands*
- *General Commands*
- *Climate Control Commands*

## ■ Useful Commands

The system accepts these commands on the voice portal top screen.

- *Call <Phone Number>*
- *Call <Your contact Name>*
- *What time is it?*
- *What is today's date?*

## ■ Phone Commands

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the phone.

- *Call by number*
- *Call by name*
- *Call <Phone Number>*
- *Call <Your contact Name>*

## ■ Audio Commands

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the audio.

### ■ Radio FM Commands

- *Radio tune to <87.5-108.0> FM*
- *Radio FM preset <1-12>*

### ■ Radio LW Commands

- *Radio tune to <153-279> LW*
- *Radio LW preset <1-6>*

### ■ Radio MW Commands

- *Radio tune to <531-1602> MW*
- *Radio MW preset <1-6>*

### ■ iPod Commands

- *iPod play*

- *iPod play track <1-30>*
- *Music Search*
- *What album is this?*
- *What am I listening to?*

### ■ USB Commands

- *USB play*
- *USB play track <1-30>*
- *Music Search*
- *What album is this?*
- *What am I listening to?*

### ■ DAB Commands\*

- *DAB preset <1-12>*

### ■ Bluetooth® audio Commands

- *Bluetooth® audio play*

#### NOTE:

*Bluetooth®* Audio commands may not work on some phones or *Bluetooth®* Audio devices.

### ■ HDMI™ Commands

- *HDMI Play*

\* Not available on all models

## ■ On Screen Commands

When **On Screen Commands** is selected, the explanation screen is displayed.

## ■ Music Search Commands

The system accepts these commands on the **Music Search** screen.

### ■ Using Song By Voice

Song By Voice™ is a feature that allows you to select music from your iPod or USB device using Voice Commands. To activate this mode, you must push the talk switch and say: "Music search".

### ■ Song By Voice Commands

- *What am I listening to?*
- *Who am I listening to?*
- *Who is this?*
- *What's playing?*
- *Who's playing?*
- *What album is this?*

## ■ Play Commands

- *Play artist <Name>*
- *Play track/song <Name>*
- *Play album <Name>*
- *Play genre/category <Name>*
- *Play playlist <Name>*
- *Play composer <Name>*

## ■ List Commands

- *List artist <Name>*
- *List album <Name>*
- *List genre/category <Name>*
- *List playlist <Name>*
- *List composer <Name>*

## ■ General Commands

- *What time is it?*
- *What is today's date?*

## ■ Climate Control Commands

- *Climate control on\*1*
- *Climate control off\*1*
- *Fan speed <1-7>*
- *Temperature max heat*
- *Temperature max cool*
- *Temperature <18-32> degrees*
- *Defrost On\*1*
- *Defrost Off\*1*
- *Air Conditioner On\*1*
- *Air Conditioner Off\*1*
- *More*
- *Vent*
- *Dash and floor*
- *Fan speed up*
- *Fan speed down*
- *Floor vents*
- *Floor and Defrost*
- *Temperature up*
- *Temperature down*

\*1: These commands toggle the function on and off, so the command may not match your intended action.

## Playing AM/FM Radio

**Driver Information Interface**

**Audio/Information Screen**

**Power/AUDIO (Power/Audio) Icon**  
Select to turn the audio system on and off.

**VOL (Volume) Icons**  
Select to adjust the volume.

**MENU (Menu) Icon**  
Select to display the menu items.

**BACK (Back) Icon**  
Select to go back to the previous display.

**Scan Icon**  
Select to scan each station with a strong signal.

**Tune Icons**  
Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the radio frequency.

**Open/Close Icon<sup>\*1</sup>**  
Displays/hides the detailed information.

**Seek Icons**  
Select ▶▶ or ◀◀ to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

**Preset Icons**  
Tune the preset radio frequency. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station. Select >> to display preset 7 onwards.

\* 1: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.



## ■ Preset Memory

To store a station:

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

You can also store a preset station by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

## ■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select the station.

## ■ Manual update



Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.

## ▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts. Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.


Switching the Audio Mode

Press the  or  button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.

 **Audio Remote Controls** P. 254

You can store 12 AM stations and 12 FM stations into preset memory. AM has two types of frequencies LW and MW, and each lets you store six stations.

## ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or .

## ■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

### ■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select the station.

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.

### ■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

1. Select .
2. Select **View Radio Text**.

### ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or .

### ☒ Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

## Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)\*

**Driver Information Interface**

**Audio/Information Screen**

**Power/Audio (Power/Audio) Icon**  
Select to turn the audio system on and off.

**VOL (Volume) Icons**  
Select to adjust the volume.

**Menu Icon**  
Select to display the menu items.

**Back Icon**  
Select to go back to the previous display.

**Scan Icon**  
Select to scan each receivable ensemble or service.

**Ensemble Icons**  
Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the ensemble.  
Select and hold ◀ or ▶ to search the selected service up to down for an ensemble until an receivable ensemble is found.

**Open/Close Icon\*<sup>1</sup>**  
Displays/hides the detailed information.

**Service Icons**  
Select ◀◀ or ▶▶ to tune the service component.

**Preset Icons**  
Tune the preset frequency. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station. Select >> to display preset 7 onwards.

\*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Preset Memory

To store a service:

1. Tune to the selected service.
2. Select and hold the preset number for the service you want to store.

You can also store a preset service by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected service.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number for the service you want to store.

## ■ Ensemble List

Lists the receivable ensembles on the selected service.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Ensemble List** tab.
3. Select the ensemble.

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available ensemble list at any time.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Ensemble List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.

## ▶▶ Preset Memory

Switching the Audio Mode

Press the ▲ or ▼ button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.


▶▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 254

You can store 12 DAB stations into preset memory.

## ■ Scan

Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for 10 seconds.

1. Select **Scan**.
2. Select **Scan Ensemble** or **Scan All Service**.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or .

## ■ Radio text

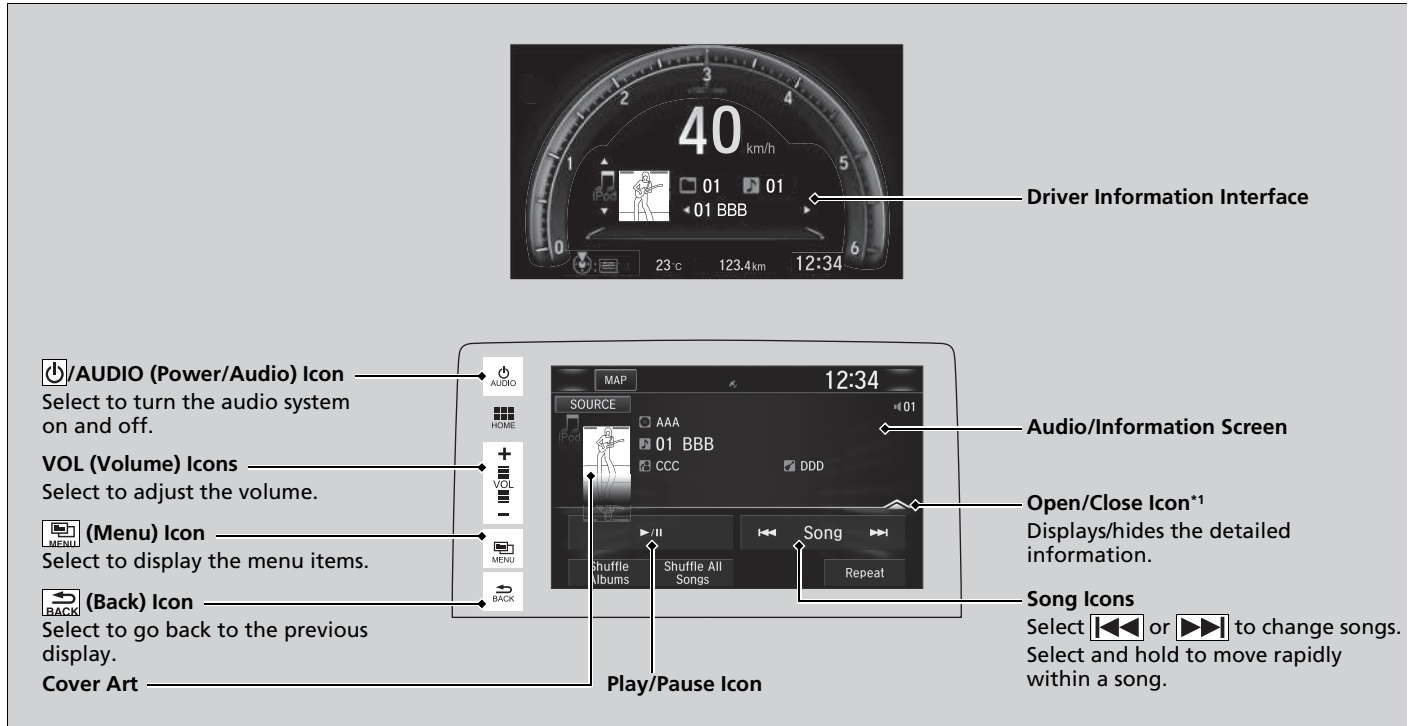
Displays the radio text information of the selected DAB station.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **View Radio Text**.

## Playing an iPod

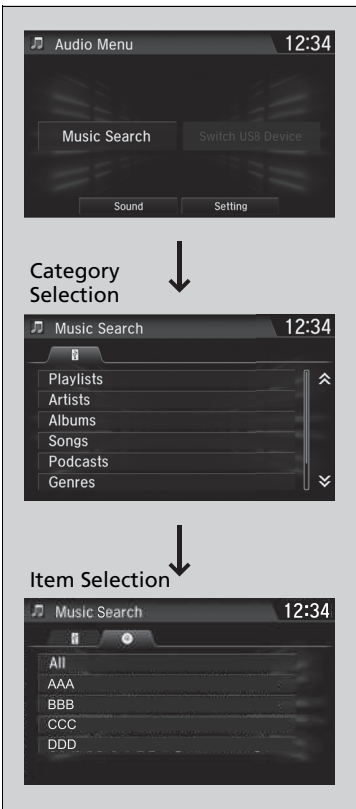
Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.


▶ **USB Port(s)** P. 251



\*1: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Select  and select **Music Search**.

2. Select the items on that menu.

## ▶▶ Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

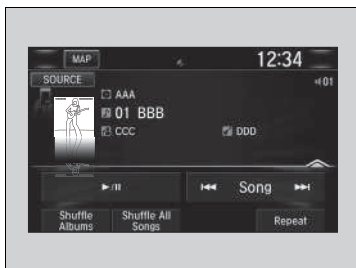
 **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 347

If you operate any music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen. Reconnect the device if necessary.

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.

Select a play mode.



### ■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

## How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

**Shuffle Albums:** Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

**Shuffle All Songs:** Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

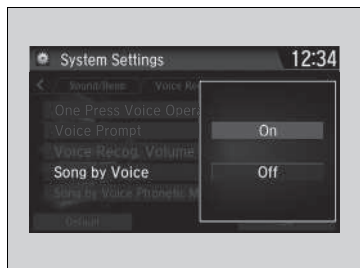
**Repeat:** Repeats the current track.




## Song By Voice™ (SBV)\*

Use SBV to search for and play music from your USB flash drive or iPod using voice commands.

### ■ To enable SBV



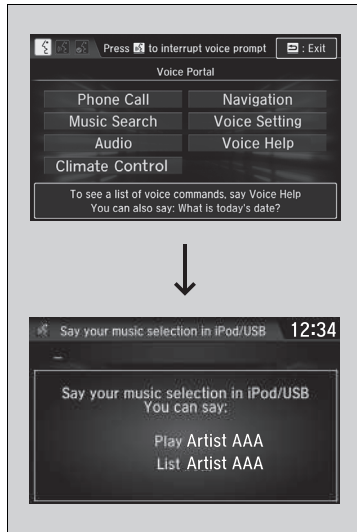
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Song by Voice**.
6. Select **On** or **Off**.



### ☒ Song By Voice™ (SBV)\*


Setting options:

- **On** (factory default): Song By Voice™ commands are available.
- **Off**: Disable the feature.

## ■ Searching for music using SBV



1. Set the **Song by Voice** setting to **On**.
2. Press the  (Talk) button and say "Music Search" to activate the SBV feature for the USB flash drive and iPod.
3. Then, say a next command.
  - ▶ Example 1: Say "(List) 'Artist A'" to view a list of songs by that artist. Select the desired song to start playing.
  - ▶ Example 2: Say "Play 'Artist A'" to start playing songs by that artist.
4. To cancel SBV, press the  (hang-up/back) button on the steering wheel. The selected song continues playing.

Once you have cancelled this mode, you need to press the  button and say "Music Search" again to re-activate this mode.

### ▶▶ Searching for music using SBV

Song By Voice™ Commands List

▶ **Song By Voice Commands** P. 310

NOTE:

Song By Voice™ commands are available for tracks stored on the USB flash drive or iPod.

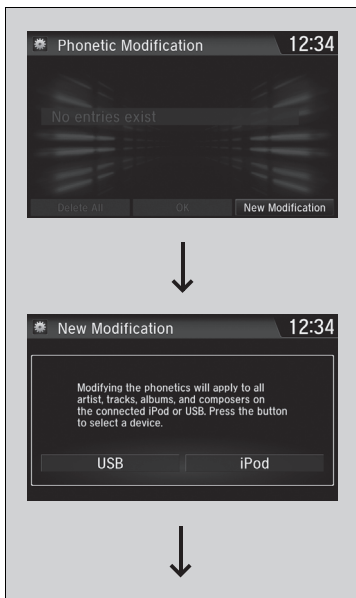
You can add phonetic modifications of difficult words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands.


▶ **Phonetic Modification** P. 322

SBV is not available when using Apple CarPlay. Use Siri Eyes Free instead.

## Phonetic Modification

Add phonetic modifications of difficult or foreign words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands when searching for music on the USB flash drive or iPod.

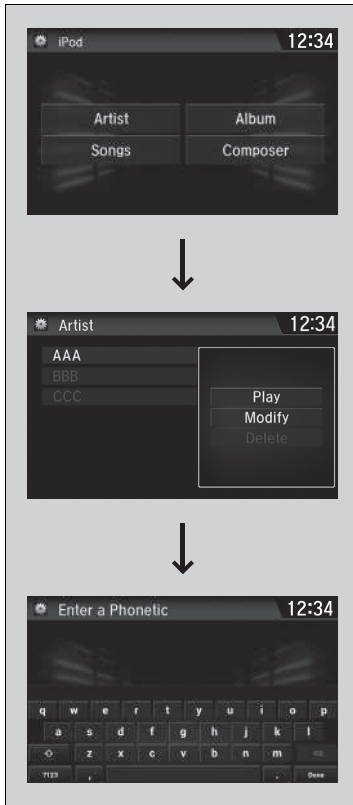



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Song by Voice Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select **New Modification**.
7. Select **USB** or **iPod**.

### Phonetic Modification

**Song by Voice Phonetic Modification** function is not available when **Song by Voice** is set to **Off**.

You can store up to 2,000 phonetic modification items.

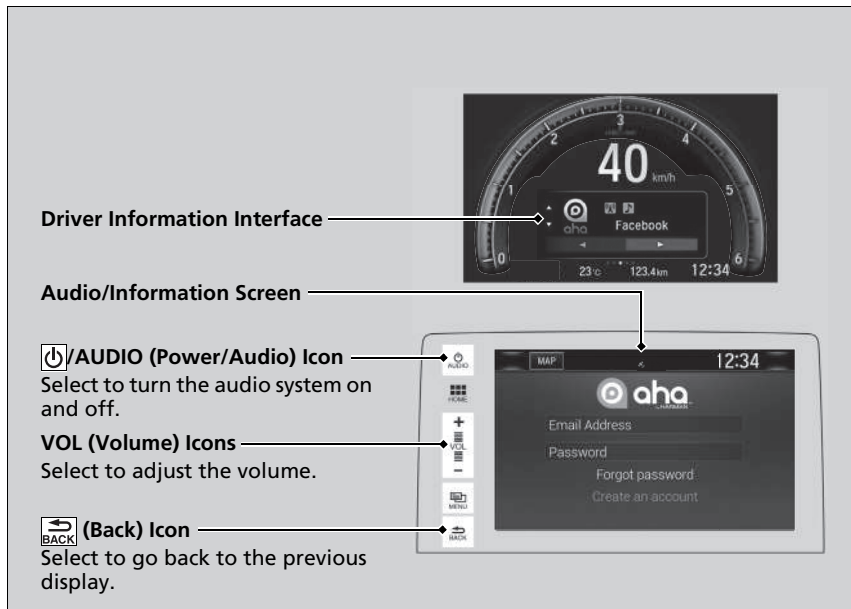


8. Select the item to modify (e.g., **Artist**).
  - ▶ The list of the selected item appears on the screen.
9. Select an entry to modify.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
  - ▶ To listen to the current phonetic modification, select **Play**.
  - ▶ To delete the current phonetic modification, select **Delete**.
10. Select **Modify**.
11. Select the phonetic spelling you want to use (e.g., "Artist A") when prompted.
12. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ The artist "No Name" is phonetically modified to "Artist A." When in the SBV mode, you can press the  (Talk) button and use the voice command "Play 'Artist A'" to play songs by the artist "No Name."

## Playing Aha™

Aha™ can be displayed and operated on the audio/information screen when your smartphone is connected to the audio system by Wi-Fi.

▶ **Wi-Fi Connection** P. 337



### ▶▶ Playing Aha™

Aha™ by Harman is a cloud-based service that organizes your favorite web content into live radio stations. You can access podcasts, internet radio, location-based services, and audio updates from social media sites.

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

The menu items vary depending on the station you selected.

You must have a previously set up Aha™ account prior to using the service in your vehicle. Visit [www.aharadio.com](http://www.aharadio.com) for more information.

You want to select another source, select **AUDIO** on the upper left of the screen. The source select screen will appear. Select the source you want.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, Aha™ can only be accessed when the phone is connected through Wi-Fi.

## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and videos files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC\*1, WAV, or MP4 format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

📄 **USB Port(s)** P. 251

**Driver Information Interface**

**Audio/Information Screen**

**Folder Icons**

**Track Icons**

**Open/Close Icon\*2**

**(Menu) Icon**

**(Back) Icon**

**VOL (Volume) Icons**

**🔌/AUDIO (Power/Audio) Icon**

Select to turn the audio system on and off.

Select to adjust the volume.

Select to display the menu items.

Select to go back to the previous display.

Select ▶ to skip to the next folder, and ◀ to skip to the beginning of the previous folder.

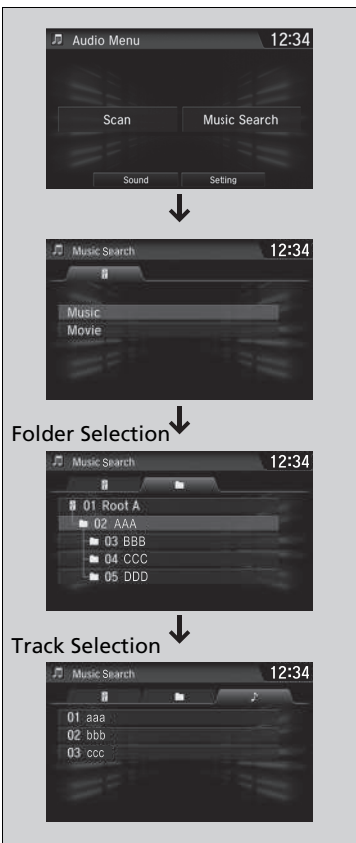
Displays/hides the detailed information.

Select ◀◀ or ▶▶ to change files. Select and hold to move rapidly within a track.

\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

\*2: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## How to Select a File from the Music Search List



1. Select  and select **Music Search**.


2. Select **Music** or **Movie**.

3. Select a folder.

4. Select a track.

## ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

 **General Information on the Audio System**  
P. 349

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

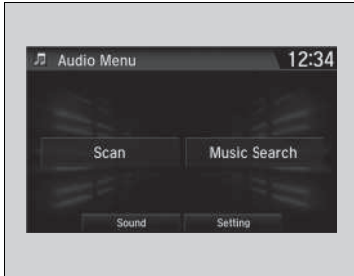
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

 **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 347

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.

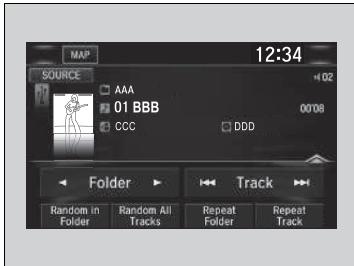


### ■ Scan


1. Select .
2. Select **Scan**.
3. Select a play mode.

### ■ Random/Repeat

Select a play mode.



### ■ To turn off a play mode

To turn off Scan, select  or **Cancel**.

To turn off random or repeat, select the mode again.

## How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

### Scan

**Scan Folders:** Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

### Random/Repeat

**Random in Folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All Tracks:** Plays all files in random order.

**Repeat Folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat Track:** Repeats the current file.

When playing a video file:

**Play/Pause:** Plays or pauses the file.

**Stop:** Stops the file.

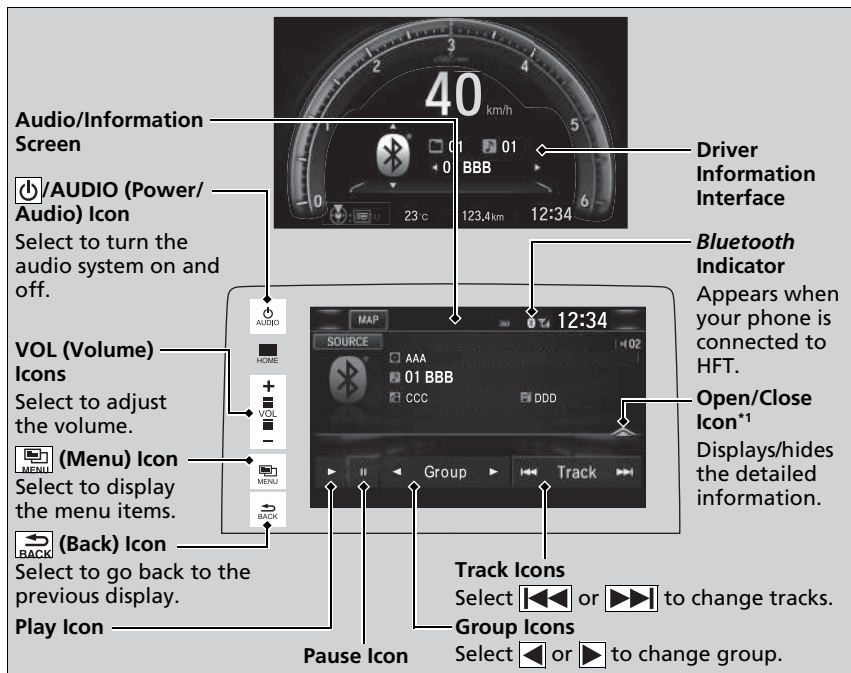


## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 420



\*1: Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

### ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

The connected phone for *Bluetooth*® Audio can be different.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

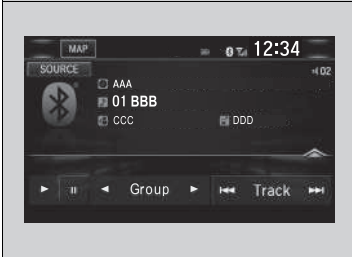
In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting **Connect**  from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 420

## To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



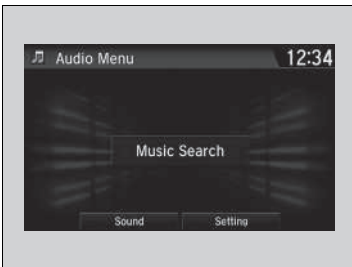
1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.  
▶ **Phone Setup** P. 420
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.


If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

### ■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play icon or pause icon.

## Searching for Music



1. Select .
2. Select **Music Search**.
3. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
4. Select an item.  
▶ The selection begins playing.

## ▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone in the *Bluetooth*® settings on the **Audio Menu** screen by the following procedure.

1. Select .
2. Select **Setting**.


## ▶▶ Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## Playing a a Video Using the HDMI™

Your audio system allows you to play videos from an HDMI-compatible device. Connect the device, using an HDMI™ cable, then select the HDMI™ mode.

▶ **HDMI™ Port**\* P. 253



The diagram illustrates the car's infotainment system. At the top, the **Driver Information Interface** is shown as a semi-circular gauge with a speedometer. The needle points to 40 km/h. Below the gauge, there is an **HDMI** icon and the text **HDMI IN**. At the bottom of the gauge, it displays **23°C**, **123.4km**, and **12:34**. Below the gauge is the **Audio/Information Screen**, which displays a 3D rendering of a silver car. To the left of the screen is a vertical control panel with icons for **AUDIO**, **HOME**, **VOL** (with plus and minus signs), **MENU**, and **BACK**. Lines connect these icons to their respective descriptions on the left side of the diagram.

**Driver Information Interface**

**Audio/Information Screen**

**Power/Audio Icon**  
Select to turn the audio system on and off.


**VOL (Volume) Icons**  
Select to adjust the volume.

**(Menu) Icon**  
Select to display the menu items.

**(Back) Icon**  
Select to go back to the previous display.

## Changing the Screen Aspect



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select the **Video** tab.
5. Select **Aspect Ratio Adjustment**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

## ▶▶ Playing a Video Using the HDMI™

This feature is limited while driving. To play videos, stop your vehicle and apply the parking brake.

## On Board Apps

Honda Connect has the capability of On Board Apps which may be created by Honda or by 3rd parties. Apps may be already installed or can be downloaded through Honda App Center. Some Apps require internet access which can be established by Wi-Fi Connection.

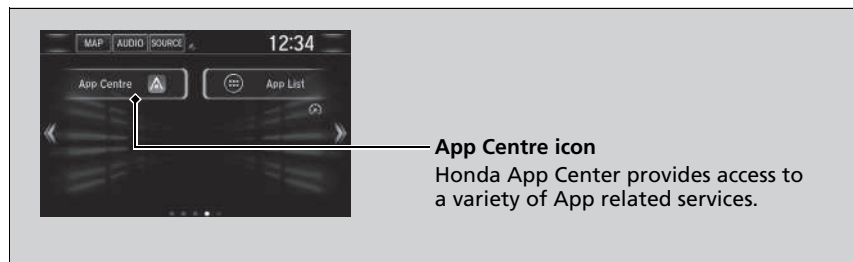
📶 **Wi-Fi Connection** P. 337

Please visit the below web address for further information:

<https://livhs.os.ixonos.com/honda/category/carApps.html>

### 📶 On Board Apps

Even if you change **Background Colour** on the **System Settings** screen, it will not be reflected on the Honda App Center screen.



- Using the Display Audio system while driving can take your attention away from the road, causing a crash in which you could be seriously injured or killed. Only operate system controls when the conditions permit you to safely do so. **Please always adhere to the laws of the territory when operating this device.**
- Applications on the head unit are subject to change at anytime. This may mean that they are not available or operate differently. Honda shall not be liable to you in such instances.
- Applications available on the device may be provided by parties other than Honda to which 3rd party software licences and charges may apply.
- Data usage and roaming charges may result in using applications on the device in conjunction with your mobile phone and Honda is not liable for any costs you might incur from such use. Honda recommends you consult your mobile phone network provider in advance.
- Downloading applications from the Honda App Center will be subject to Terms and Conditions which can be found at: <https://livhs.os.ixonos.com/honda/category/carApps.html>, and may also incur charges.

## Smartphone Connection

Some of your smartphone apps can be displayed and operated on the audio/information screen when the phone is connected to the audio system. You can connect your phone using a cable.

☒ **Phone Setup** P. 420

☒ **Connecting Your iPhone** P. 335

☒ **Connecting Your Smartphone** P. 336

### ☒ Smartphone Connection

Park in a safe place before connecting your phone and while operating the displayed apps.

Not all phones are compatible with the system. The system does not display all the available apps on your smartphone, and some apps need to be preinstalled. Ask a dealer for details.

You need to switch the *Bluetooth*® connection to your smartphone if another electronic device is connected.

☒ **To change the currently paired phone**  
P. 421

The following may vary by phone type:

- How to connect a smartphone to the system.
- Apps that can be operated on the screen.
- Display response time/update time

We do not support every app operation on the audio system.

Ask the app provider for any queries on the app's features.

Do not get drawn into the display while operating a vehicle.

To use smartphone connection, you need to first pair your smartphone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 420

**Driver Information Interface**

**Audio/Information Screen**

**Power/Audio (Power/Audio) Icon**  
Select to turn the audio system on and off.

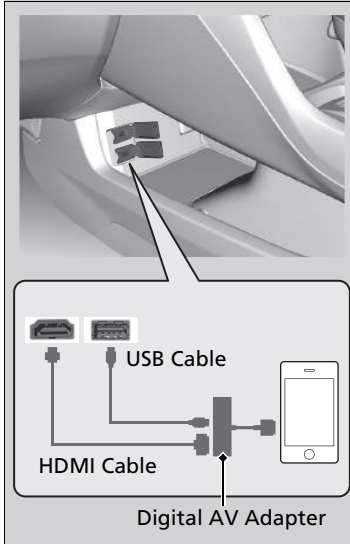
**VOL (Volume) Icons**  
Select to adjust the volume.


**(Menu) Icon**  
Select to display the menu items.  
(Not available on all apps.)

**(Back) Icon**  
Select to go back to the previous display.  
(Not available on all apps.)

**Arrow**  
Appears when the phone is connected to the system.  
Select to display available apps.

## Connecting Your iPhone



1. Connect your phone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.
  - ▶ **Phone Setup** P. 420
2. Plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI™ port.
3. Connect the digital AV adapter to your iPhone.
  - ▶ Wait until an arrow appears on the home screen.
4. Select the arrow to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ You may need to operate from the phone.
5. Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ To go back to the previous screen, select .

## Connecting Your iPhone

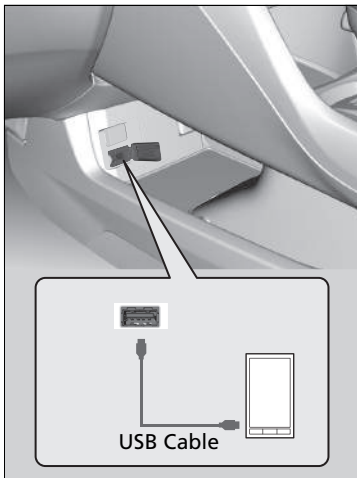
Make sure to plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI™ port first. If not, smartphone connection may not work properly.

To recharge your phone, connect it to the USB port, too.

Contact a dealer for the digital AV adapter or HDMI™ purchasing information.



## ■ Connecting Your Smartphone



1. Connect your phone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.
  - **Phone Setup** P. 420
2. Plug in your phone to the USB port.
  - ▶ You may need to operate from the phone.
  - ▶ Wait until an arrow appears on the home screen.
3. Select the arrow to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information screen.
4. Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ To go back to the previous screen, select



## ☒ Connecting Your Smartphone




The phone is rechargeable while being connected to the USB port. However, if the phone is overloaded with many operational tasks, the battery level may get lowered.

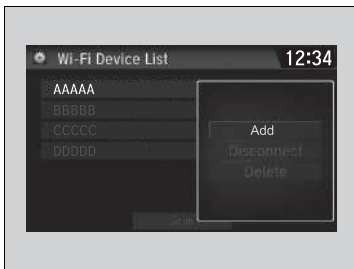
## Wi-Fi Connection

You can connect the Display Audio to the Internet using Wi-Fi and browse websites or use online services on the audio/information screen. If your phone has wireless hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

### Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Wi-Fi** tab.
5. Select **Wi-Fi On/Off Status**, then **On**.
6. Select **Wi-Fi Device List**.
  - ▶ Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.
  - ▶ Select the phone you want to connect to the system.
  - ▶ If you do not find the phone you want to connect in the list, select **Scan**.
7. Select **Add**.
  - ▶ If needed, enter a password for your phone and select **OK**.
  - ▶ When the connection is successful, the  icon is displayed on the top of the screen.
8. Select  to go back to the home screen.




### Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to setup the Wi-Fi connection.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the  icon on the **Wi-Fi Device List** screen. Network speed will not be displayed on this screen.

*Continued*

## ■ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)


Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

## ☞ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

### iPhone users

You may need to go through an initial setup for Wi-Fi connection again after you boot your phone.

## Siri Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

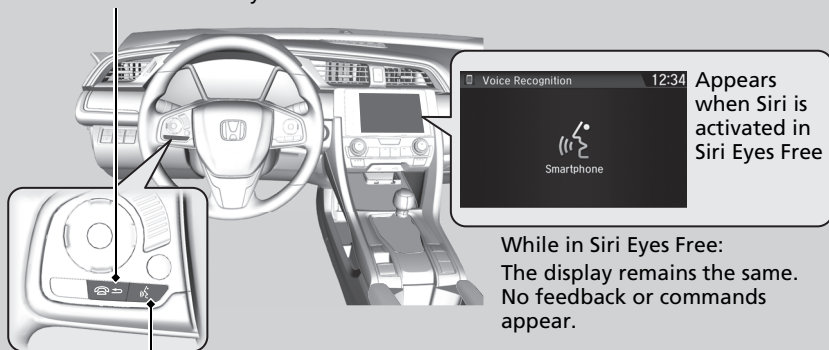
 **Phone Setup** P. 420

### Using Siri Eyes Free



**(Hang-up/back) Button**

Press to deactivate Siri Eyes Free.



**(Talk) Button**

Press and hold until the display changes as shown.

#### ▶ Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri Eyes Free while operating a vehicle.

#### ▶ Using Siri Eyes Free

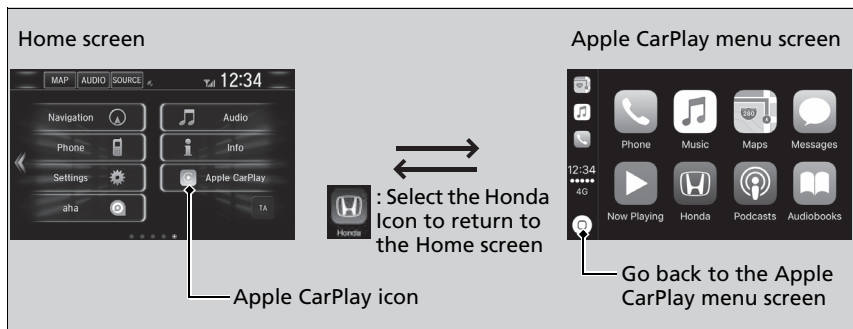
Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

## Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

📄 **USB Port(s)** P. 251

### Apple CarPlay Menu



#### ■ Phone

Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

#### ■ Messages

Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

#### ■ Music

Play music stored on your iPhone.

### Apple CarPlay

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Apple CarPlay, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. The USB port located in the centre console storage will not enable Apple CarPlay operation.

📄 **USB Port(s)** P. 251

To directly access the Apple CarPlay phone function, select **Phone** on the home screen. While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone system, turn Apple CarPlay OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone.

📄 **Setting Up Apple CarPlay** P. 341

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or the Hands-Free Telephone system. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

📄 **Phone Setup** P. 420

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

## ■ Maps

Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

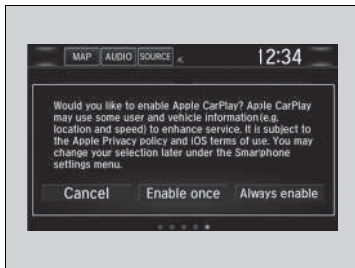
### Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple CarPlay) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

## ■ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the Display Audio Screen.

## ■ Enabling Apple CarPlay



**Enable once:** Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)

**Always enable:** Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)

**Cancel:** Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

### ▶▶ Apple CarPlay

#### Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations


Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

### ▶▶ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:

Select  → **Settings** → **Smartphone** → **Apple CarPlay**

#### Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

*Continued*

## ■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the  (talk) button to activate Siri.



## ▣ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri.

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit [www.apple.com/ios/siri](http://www.apple.com/ios/siri).

## Android Auto

When you connect an Android phone to the Display Audio system via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.

We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

➤ **USB Port(s)** P. 251

➤ **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 345

### NOTE:

Android Auto may not be available in your country or region. For details about Android Auto, please refer to the Google support site.

### ▶▶ Android Auto

To use Android Auto, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Only Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or later versions are compatible with Android Auto. Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used with Android Auto phone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. The USB port in the centre console storage will not enable Android Auto operation.

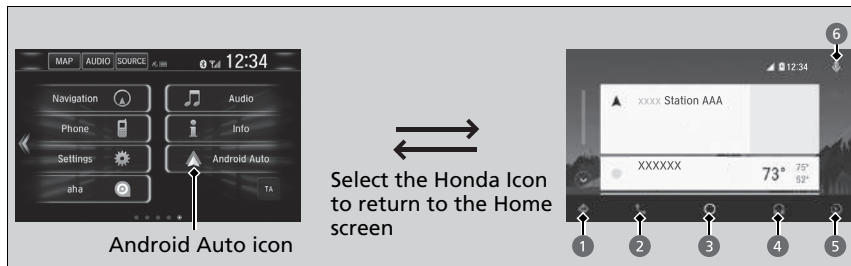
➤ **USB Port(s)** P. 251

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 420



## Android Auto Menu



### 1 Maps (Navigation)

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

#### Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Android Auto) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

The audio/Information screen shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination.

### 2 Phone (Communication)

Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

### 3 Google Now (Home screen)

Display useful information organized by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

## Android Auto

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

### Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

**4 Music and audio**

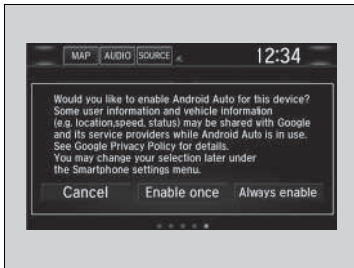
Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto. To switch between music apps, press this icon.

**5 Go back to the Home Screen.****6 Voice**

Operate Android Auto with your voice.

**Auto Pairing Connection**

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

**Enabling Android Auto**

**Enable once:** Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)

**Always enable:** Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)


**Cancel:** Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

**Enabling Android Auto**

Only initialize Android Auto when you safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.


You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:

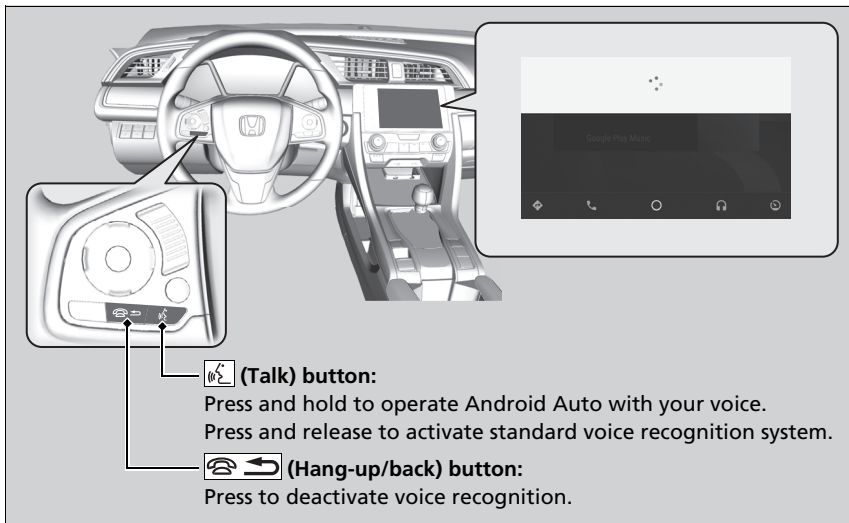
Select  → **Settings** → **Smartphone** → **Android Auto**

**Use of user and vehicle information**

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

## ■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the  (talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.




## ▣ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by pressing the  icon in the upper-right corner of the screen.

## iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
<b>USB error</b> <sup>*1</sup> <b>USB Error</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Appears when there is a problem with the audio system. Check if the device is compatible with the audio system.
<b>Incompatible USB device</b> <b>Please check owners manual.</b> <sup>*1</sup> <b>A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
<b>Unsupported ver</b> <sup>*1</sup> <b>Unsupported Version</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
<b>Retry connection</b> <sup>*1</sup> <b>Connect Retry</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
<b>Unplayable file</b> <sup>*1</sup> <b>Unplayable File</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about three seconds, then plays the next song.
<b>No song</b> <sup>*1</sup> <b>No Data</b> <sup>*2</sup>	<b>iPod</b> Appears when the iPod is empty.
	<b>USB flash drive</b> Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, or WAV <sup>*2</sup> files in the USB flash drive.
	<b>iPod and USB flash drive</b> Check that compatible files are stored on the device.

\*1:Models with colour audio system

\*2:Models with Display Audio

Error Message	Solution
<b>Unsupported</b> *1, *2	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.


\*1:Models with colour audio system

\*2:Models with Display Audio

Models with Display Audio

## Android/Apps

If an error occurs while using the audio system or apps, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message*1	Solution
<b>Unfortunately, **** has stopped.</b>	Error has occurred within app, select <b>OK</b> on the screen to close the app.
<b>**** is not responding. Would you like to close it?</b>	App is not responding. Select <b>Wait</b> if you can wait for a response from app a little longer. If it does not respond even if you keep waiting, select <b>OK</b> to close the app and restart it. If the error message continues, perform <b>Factory Data Reset</b> .  <b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> P. 390

\*1:\*\*\*\*part is variable characters, and will change depending upon where an error occurs.

## Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

### iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)
iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008)
iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009)
iPod nano (1st to 7th generation) released between 2005 and 2012
iPod touch (1st to 5th generation) released between 2007 and 2012
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4S/iPhone 5/iPhone 5c <sup>*1</sup> /iPhone 5s <sup>*1</sup> / iPhone 6 <sup>*1</sup> /iPhone 6 Plus <sup>*1</sup>

\*1: Models with Display Audio

### USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, or WAV\* formats may be unsupported.

\* Not available on all models

### iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

### USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

Continued

Models with Display Audio

**Recommended Devices**

Media	USB Flash Drive	
<b>Profile (MP4 version)</b>	Baseline Level 3 (MPEG4-AVC), Simple Level 5 (MPEG4)	
<b>File extension (MP4 version)</b>	.mp4/.m4v	
<b>Compatible audio codec</b>	AAC	MP3
<b>Compatible video codec</b>	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)
<b>Bit rate</b>	10 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)
<b>Maximum image</b>	720 x 576 pixels	

Models with Display Audio

## Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

### OWNER'S MANUAL LICENCE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.



## ■ **DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY**





YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO (“THE APPLICATIONS”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE,” WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.


## About Open Source Licences

To see the open source licences information, follow these steps.

### Models with colour audio system

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **OSS Licenses**, then press .

### Models with Display Audio

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Detailed Information**.
6. Select **About device**.
7. Select **Legal information**.
8. Select **Open-source licences**.

### ▶▶ About Open Source Licences

#### Models with colour audio system

LICENCE: Copyright © 2001 Bob Trower, Trantor Standard Systems Inc.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:



The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

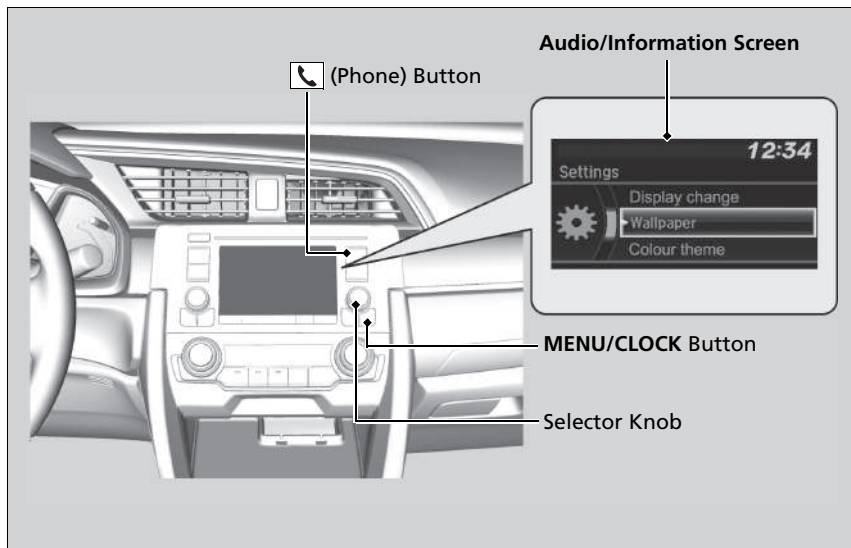
THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

Models with colour audio system

## How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the ignition switch in ON , press the **MENU/CLOCK** button, then select **Settings**. To customize the phone settings, press the  button, then select **Phone setup**.



## Customized Features

When you customize settings:



- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Set the parking brake.


## How to customize

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate  to select.

Press  to enter.

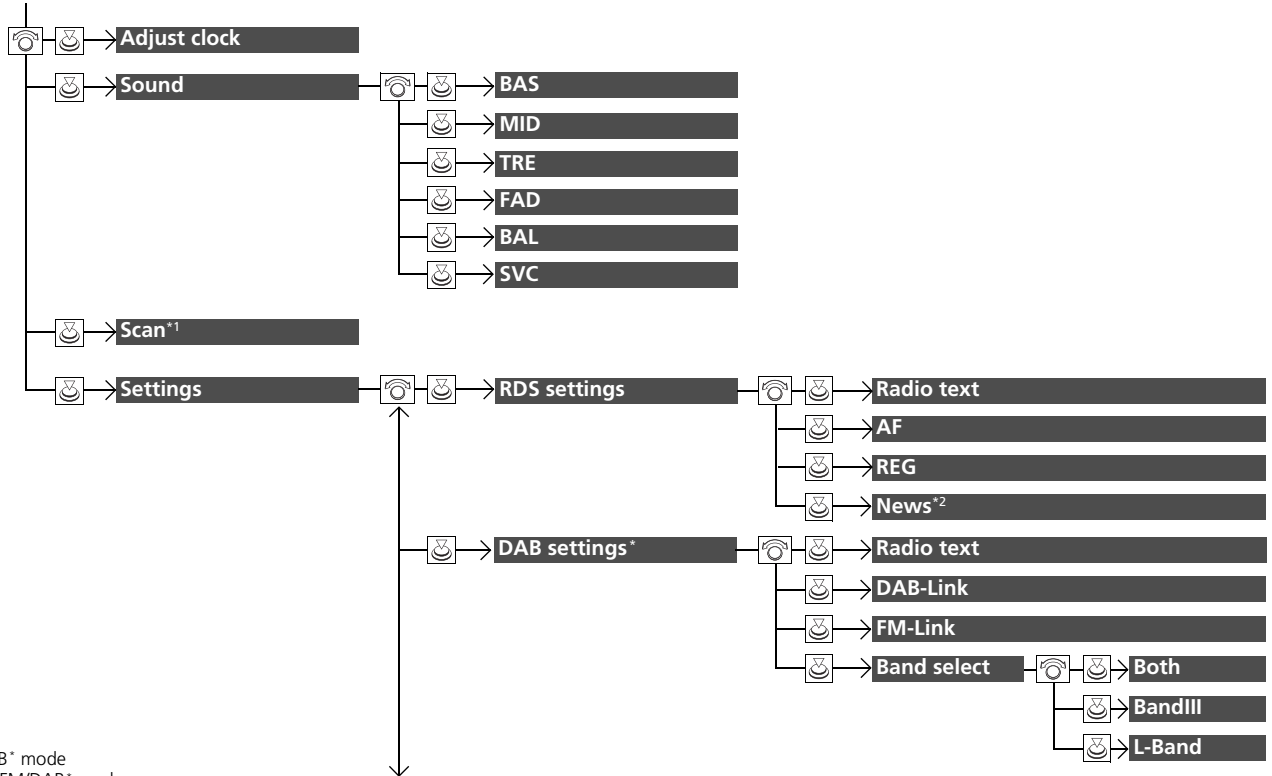
To customize other features, select **Settings**, rotate , then press .

 **List of customizable options** P. 358

Models with colour audio system

### ■ Customization Flow

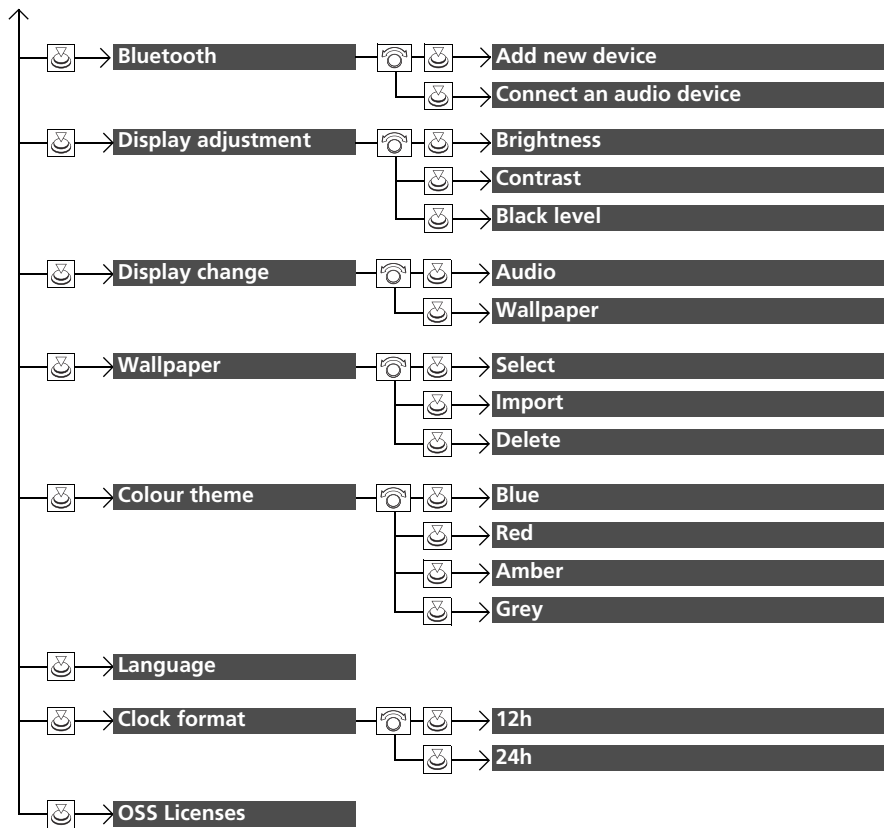
Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.



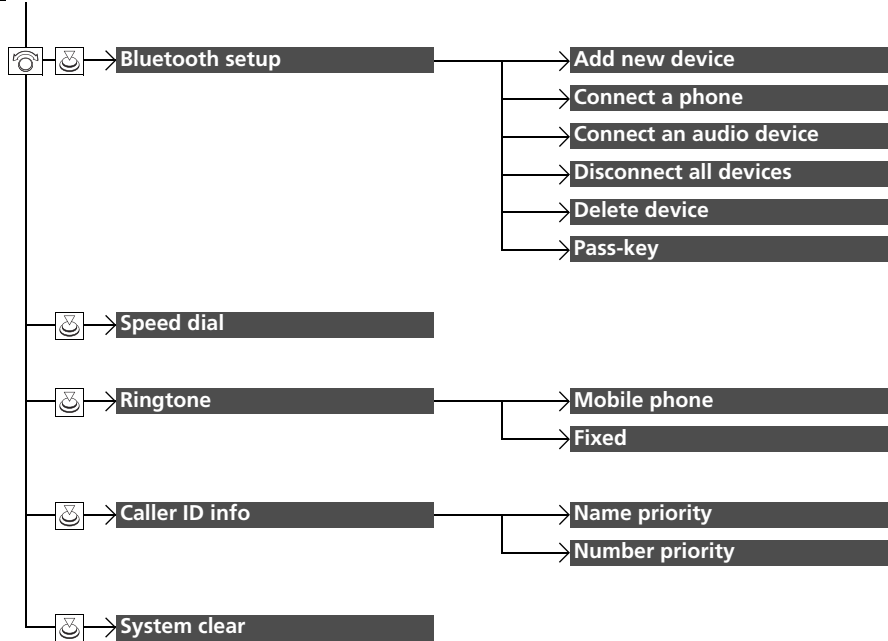
\*1: AM/FM/DAB\* mode

\*2: Except AM/FM/DAB\* mode

\* Not available on all models



Press the  button and rotate  to select **Phone setup**, then press .



Models with colour audio system

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Settings	<b>Adjust clock</b>	Adjusts clock. ➤ <b>Clock</b> P. 156	—	
	<b>Sound</b>	<b>BAS</b>		
		<b>MID</b>		
		<b>TRE</b>	Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker's sound. ➤ <b>Adjusting the Sound</b> P. 261	—
		<b>FAD</b>		
		<b>BAL</b>		
	<b>SVC</b>			
	<b>Scan</b>	AM/FM/DAB* mode Selects the scan mode. ➤ <b>Scan</b> P. 268, 270	—	
	<b>RDS settings</b>	<b>Radio text</b>	Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.	On/Off*1
		<b>AF</b>	Automatically changes the frequency of the same programme as you enter different region.	On*/Off
<b>REG</b>		Keeps the same frequency of the stations within that region even if the signal gets weak.	On*/Off	
<b>News</b>		Except AM/FM/DAB* mode Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news programme.	On/Off*1	

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Settings	DAB settings*	<b>Radio text</b>	Displays the radio text information of the selected DAB station.	On/Off* <sup>1</sup>
		<b>DAB-Link</b>	Selects whether the system automatically searches for the same station from Ensembles, and switches to it.	On* <sup>1</sup> /Off
		<b>FM-Link</b>	Selects whether the system finds the same station from an FM band, and automatically switches the band.	On* <sup>1</sup> /Off
		<b>Band select</b>	Selects specific bands to reduce the time to update the lists, and search for a station.	<b>Both*<sup>1</sup>/BandIII/ L-Band</b>
	Bluetooth	<b>Add new device</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits and deletes a paired phone, and create a code for a paired phone. ☞ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 397	—
		<b>Connect an audio device</b>	Connects, disconnects or pairs a <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio device to HFT.	—
	Display adjustment	<b>Brightness</b>	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
		<b>Contrast</b>	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
		<b>Black level</b>	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—

\* 1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Settings	<b>Display change</b>	Changes the display type.	<b>Audio<sup>*1</sup>/Wallpaper</b>	
	<b>Select</b>	Changes the wallpaper type.	<b>Clock<sup>*1</sup>/Image 1/ Image 2/Image 3</b>	
	<b>Wallpaper</b>	<b>Import</b>	Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. 📁 <b>Wallpaper Setup</b> P. 259	—
		<b>Delete</b>	Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.	<b>Image 1<sup>*1</sup>/Image 2/ Image 3</b>
	<b>Colour theme</b>	Changes the background colour of the audio/ information screen.	<b>Blue<sup>*1</sup>/Red/Amber/ Grey</b>	
	<b>Language</b>	Changes the display language.	<b>English<sup>*1</sup> or Türkçe<sup>*1</sup>:</b> See other selectable languages on the screen.	
	<b>Clock format</b>	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	<b>12h<sup>*1</sup>/24h</b>	
	<b>OSS licenses</b>	Shows the legal information.	—	



\*1:Default Setting

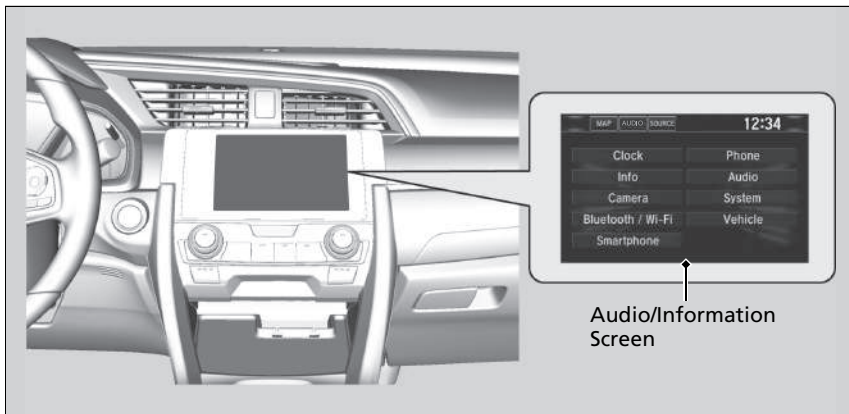
Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Phone setup	<b>Add new device</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT. ▶ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 397	—
	<b>Connect a phone</b>	Pairs a new phone or connects a paired phone to HFT. ▶ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 397	—
	<b>Connect an audio device</b>	Connects a <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio device to HFT.	—
	<b>Disconnect all devices</b>	Disconnects a paired phone from HFT.	—
	<b>Delete device</b>	Deletes a paired phone.	—
	<b>Pass-key</b>	Inputs and changes a code for a paired phone.	—
	<b>Speed dial</b>	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ▶ <b>Speed Dial</b> P. 406	—
	<b>Ringtone</b>	Selects the ring tone.	<b>Mobile phone</b> *1/ <b>Fixed</b>
	<b>Caller ID info</b>	Prioritizes the caller's name or phone number as the caller ID.	<b>Name priority</b> *1/ <b>Number priority</b>
	<b>System clear</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Phone setup</b> group as default.	—

\*1:Default Setting

Models with Display Audio

■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the ignition switch in ON <sup>\*1</sup>, select  and **Settings**, then select a setting item.



▶ Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Set the parking brake.

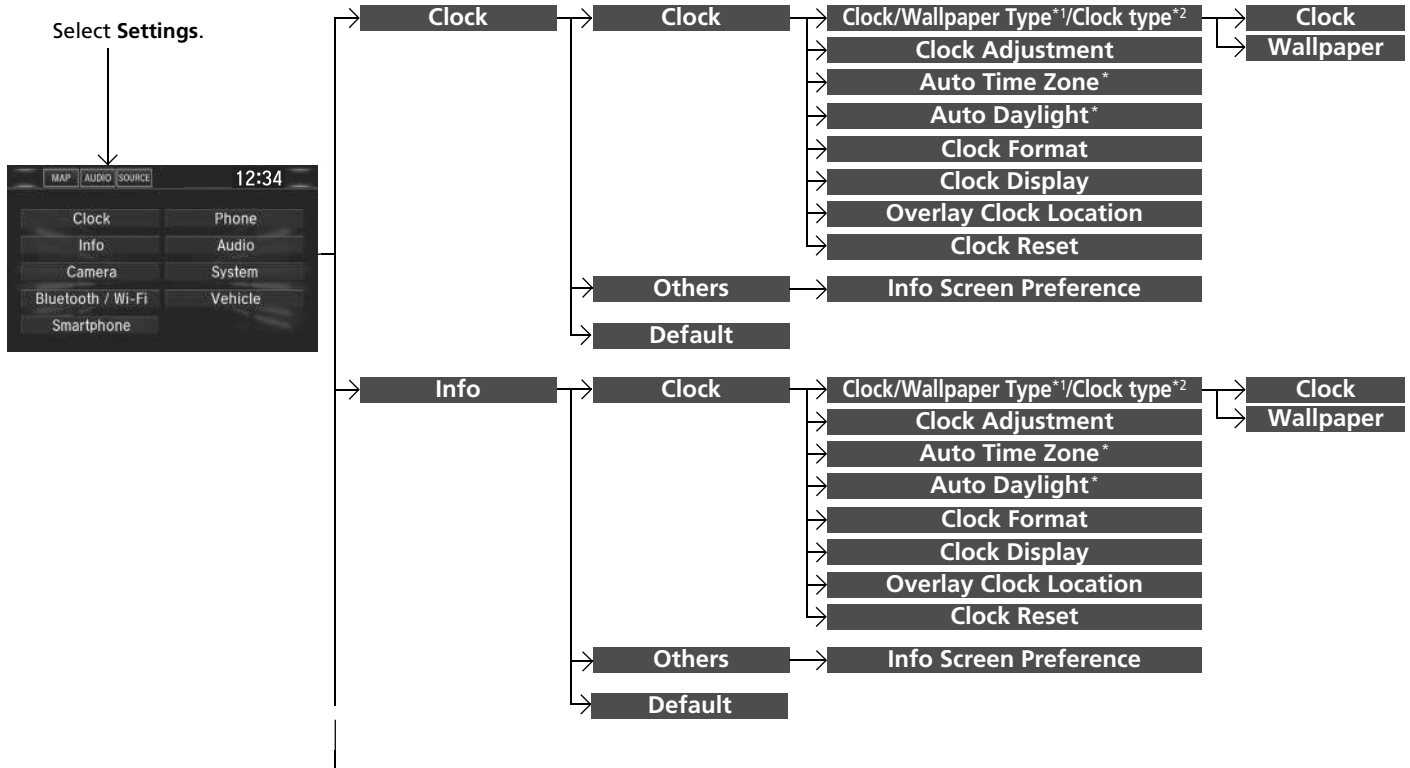
To customize other features, select **Settings**.

▶ **List of customizable options** P. 371

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Models with Display Audio

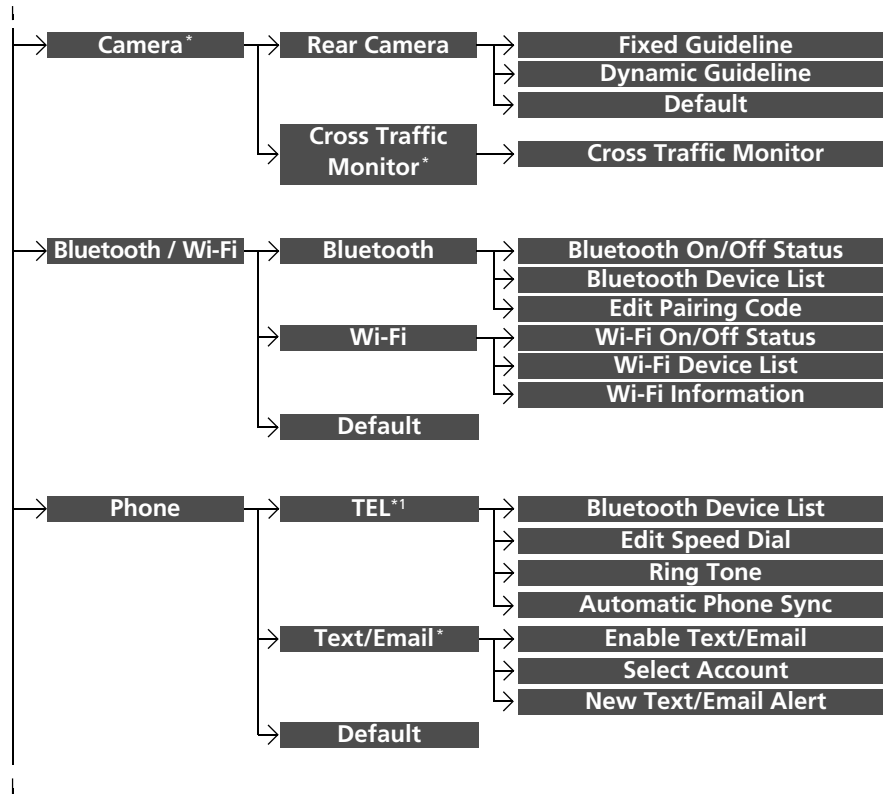
■ Customization flow



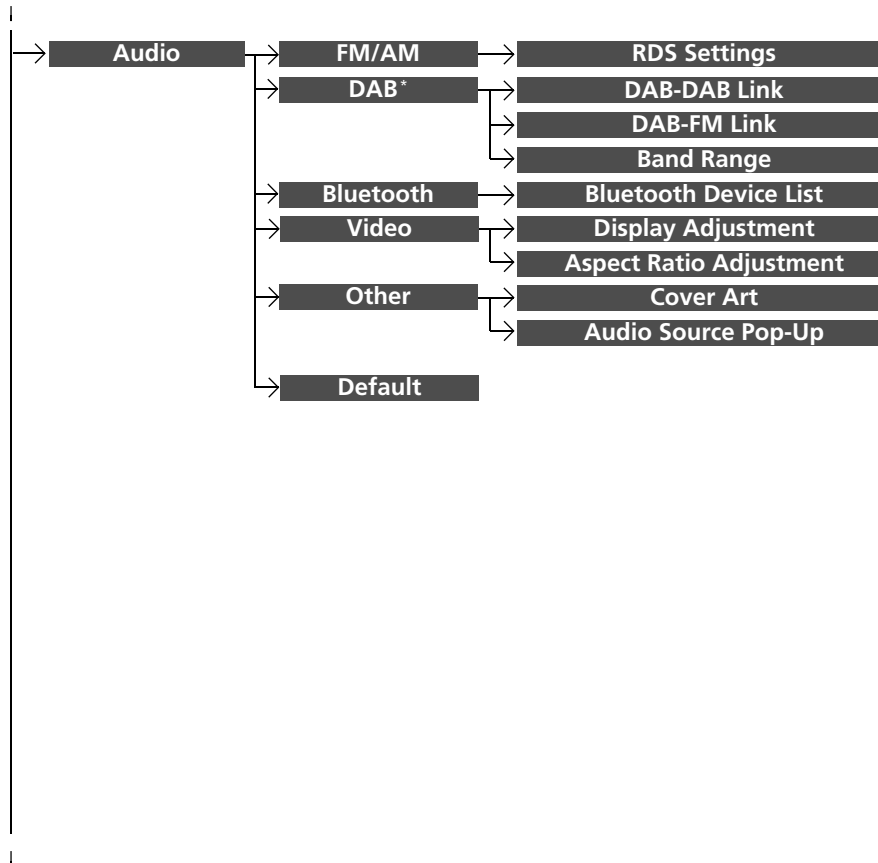
\*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

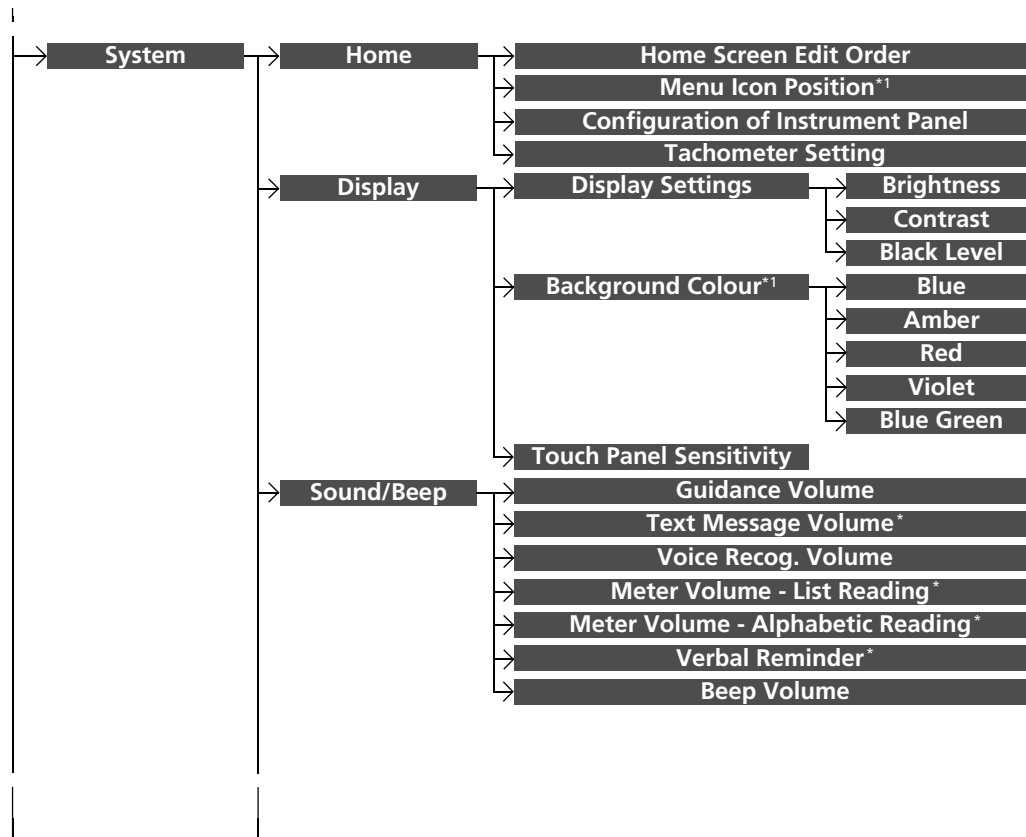
\*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

\* Not available on all models



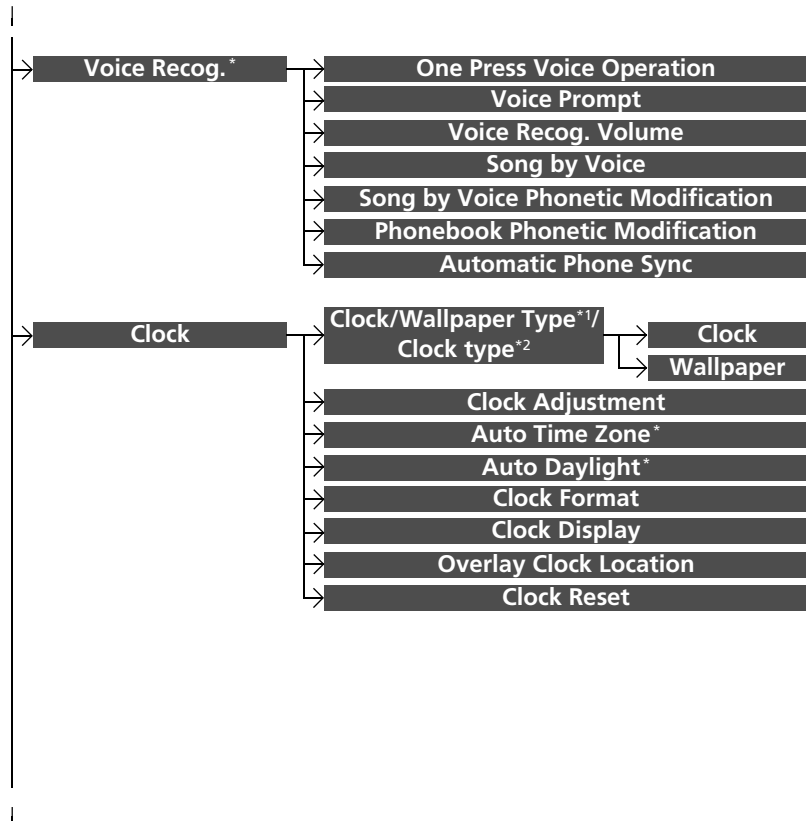
\*1: TEL tab is displayed depending on models.





\*1: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

\* Not available on all models

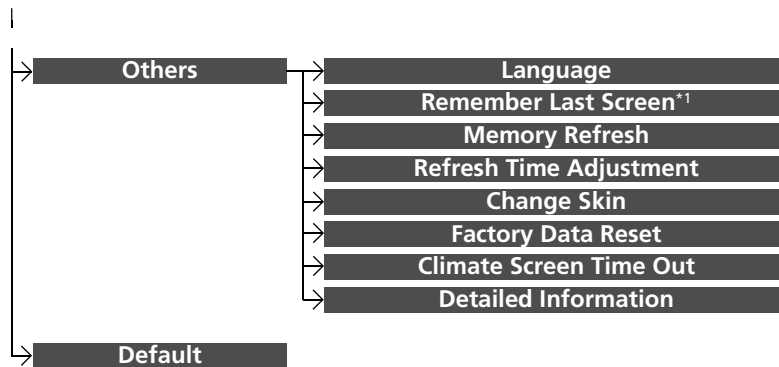


\*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

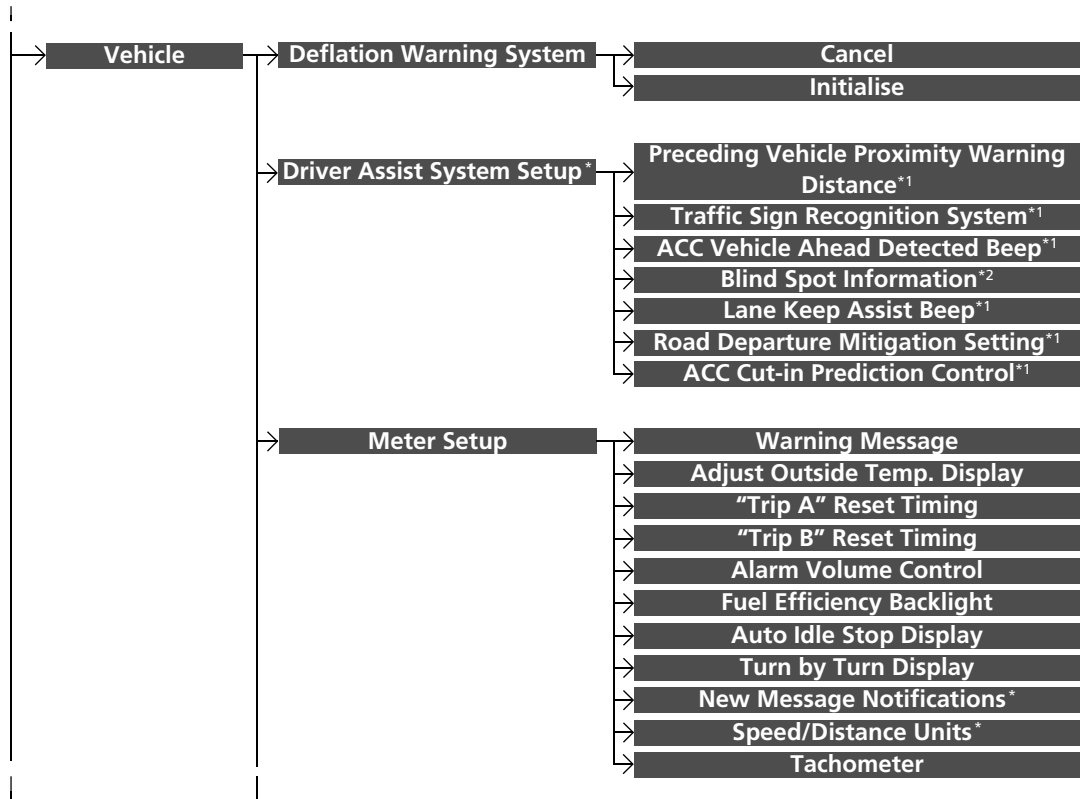
\*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

\* Not available on all models





\*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

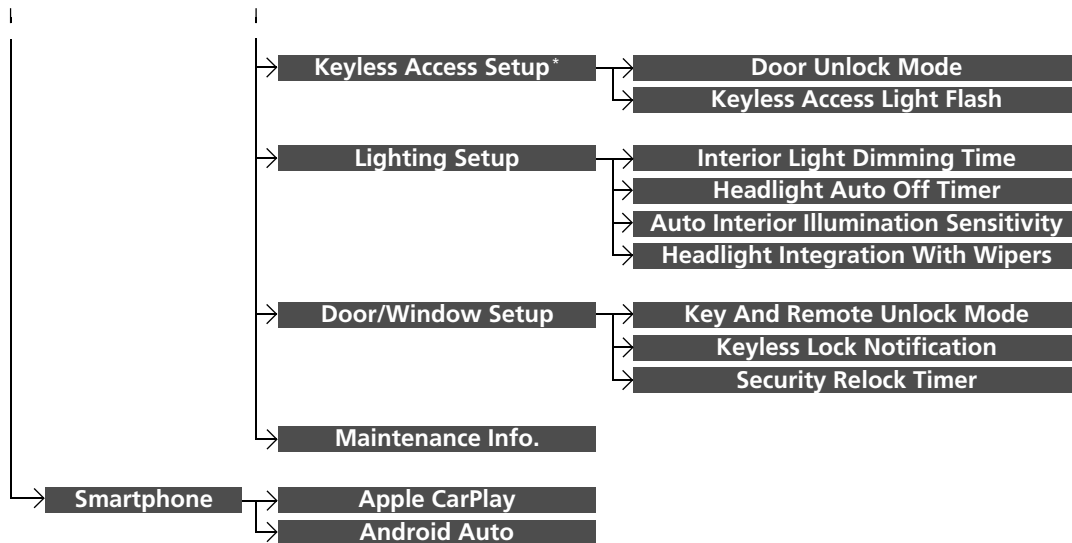


Features

\*1: Models with CMBS

\*2: Models with blind spot information system

\* Not available on all models



Models with Display Audio

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Clock	Clock/ Wallpaper Type <sup>*1</sup> / Clock type <sup>*2</sup>	Clock Wallpaper		
	Clock Adjustment			
	Auto Time Zone <sup>*</sup>			
	Auto Daylight <sup>*</sup>		See <b>Info</b> on P. 372	
	Clock Format			
	Clock Display			
	Overlay Clock Location			
	Clock Reset			
	Others	Info Screen Preference		
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Clock</b> settings group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

\* 1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

\* 2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings								
Info	Clock	<table border="1"> <tr> <td><b>Clock/ Wallpaper Type<sup>*2/</sup></b></td> <td><b>Clock</b></td> <td>Changes the clock display type.</td> <td><b>Analog/Digital<sup>*1/</sup></b> <b>Small Digital/Off</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Clock type<sup>*3</sup></b></td> <td><b>Wallpaper</b></td> <td> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changes the wallpaper type.</li> <li>Imports an image file for a new wallpaper.</li> <li>Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.</li> </ul> </td> <td><b>Blank/Galaxy<sup>*1/</sup></b> <b>Metallic</b></td> </tr> </table>	<b>Clock/ Wallpaper Type<sup>*2/</sup></b>	<b>Clock</b>	Changes the clock display type.	<b>Analog/Digital<sup>*1/</sup></b> <b>Small Digital/Off</b>	<b>Clock type<sup>*3</sup></b>	<b>Wallpaper</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changes the wallpaper type.</li> <li>Imports an image file for a new wallpaper.</li> <li>Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.</li> </ul>	<b>Blank/Galaxy<sup>*1/</sup></b> <b>Metallic</b>	
		<b>Clock/ Wallpaper Type<sup>*2/</sup></b>	<b>Clock</b>	Changes the clock display type.	<b>Analog/Digital<sup>*1/</sup></b> <b>Small Digital/Off</b>						
		<b>Clock type<sup>*3</sup></b>	<b>Wallpaper</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changes the wallpaper type.</li> <li>Imports an image file for a new wallpaper.</li> <li>Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.</li> </ul>	<b>Blank/Galaxy<sup>*1/</sup></b> <b>Metallic</b>						
		<b>Clock Adjustment</b>	Adjusts Clock.	—							
		<b>Auto Time Zone<sup>*</sup></b>	Automatically adjusts the clock when driving through different time zones.	<b>On<sup>*1/</sup>Off</b>							
		<b>Auto Daylight<sup>*</sup></b>	Select <b>On</b> to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock to daylight savings time. Select <b>Off</b> to cancel this function.	<b>On<sup>*1/</sup>Off</b>							
		<b>Clock Format</b>	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	<b>12H<sup>*1/</sup>24H</b>							
		<b>Clock Display</b>	Selects whether the clock display comes on.	<b>On<sup>*1/</sup>Off</b>							
		<b>Overlay Clock Location</b>	Changes the clock display layout.	<b>Right Upper<sup>*1/</sup>Left Upper/Right Lower/Left Lower/Off</b>							
<b>Clock Reset</b>	Resets the clock settings to the factory default.	<b>Yes/No</b>									

\*1:Default Setting

\*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

\*3:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Info</b>	<b>Others</b>	<b>Info Screen Preference</b> Selects the top menu when the <b>Info</b> is selected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Info Top</b>- A brief menu pops up.</li> <li>• <b>Info Menu</b>- A full menu pops up.</li> <li>• <b>Off</b>- A menu does not pop up.</li> </ul>	<b>Info Top/Info Menu*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Info</b> settings group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>
<b>Camera*</b>	<b>Rear Camera</b>	<b>Fixed Guideline</b> Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Multi-View Rear Camera*</b> P. 563	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Dynamic Guideline</b> Selects whether the guidelines adjust to the movement of the steering wheel. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Multi-View Rear Camera*</b> P. 563	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Rear Camera</b> setting group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>
	<b>Cross Traffic Monitor*</b>	<b>Cross Traffic Monitor</b> Turns the cross traffic monitor feature on and off.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>

\* 1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Bluetooth / Wi-Fi	<b>Bluetooth On/Off Status</b>	Changes the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® status.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>	
	<b>Bluetooth</b>	<b>Bluetooth Device List</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone. ➤ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 420	—
		<b>Edit Pairing Code</b>	Edits a pairing code. ➤ <b>To change the pairing code setting</b> P. 421	<b>Random/Fixed*<sup>1</sup></b>
		<b>Wi-Fi On/Off Status</b>	Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	<b>On/Off*<sup>1</sup></b>
	<b>Wi-Fi</b>	<b>Wi-Fi Device List</b>	Connects, disconnects, or deletes the Wi-Fi device.	—
		<b>Wi-Fi Information</b>	Shows the Wi-Fi information of the head unit.	—
	<b>Default</b>		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Bluetooth / Wi-Fi</b> group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Phone	<b>Bluetooth Device List</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT, connects or disconnects a paired phone. ▶ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 420	—
	<b>Edit Speed Dial</b>	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ▶ <b>Speed Dial</b> P. 426	—
	<b>Ring Tone</b>	Selects the ring tone.	<b>Fixed/Mobile Phone</b> <sup>*1</sup>
	<b>Automatic Phone Sync</b>	Sets a phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.	<b>On</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
	<b>Enable Text/Email</b>	Turns the text/e-mail message function on and off.	<b>On</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
	<b>Select Account</b>	Selects a text or e-mail message account.	—
	<b>New Text/Email Alert</b>	Selects whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFT receives a new text/e-mail message.	<b>On/Off</b>
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Phone</b> settings group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

\* 1:Default Setting

\*2:TEL tab is displayed depending on models.

\* Not available on all models



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Audio	<b>FM/AM mode</b> <b>FM/AM</b> <b>RDS Settings</b>	<b>TA Information</b>	Turns on and off the traffic information.	<b>On/Off</b> <sup>*1</sup>
		<b>AF</b>	Turns on and off to automatically change the frequency of the same programme as you enter different regions.	<b>On</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
		<b>REG</b>	Turns on and off to keep the same stations within that region even if the signal gets weak.	<b>On</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
		<b>News</b>	Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news programme.	<b>On/Off</b> <sup>*1</sup>
	<b>DAB mode</b> <b>DAB*</b>	<b>DAB-DAB Link</b>	Selects whether the system automatically searches for the same station from Ensembles, and switches to it.	<b>On</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
		<b>DAB-FM Link</b>	Selects whether the system finds the same station from an FM band, and automatically switches the band.	<b>On</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
		<b>Band Range</b>	Selects specific bands to reduce the time to update the lists, and search for a station.	<b>BOTH</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>BAND III/L-BAND</b>
	<b>Bluetooth® mode</b> <b>Bluetooth</b>	<b>Bluetooth Device List</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone. ➤ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 420	—

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
<b>Audio</b>	<b>Display Adjustment</b> USB, HDMI™, Apple CarPlay or Android Auto mode <b>Video</b>	<b>Display</b> Brightness Contrast Black Level	See <b>System</b> on P. 378	
		<b>Colour</b>	<b>Colour</b>	Changes the colour of the audio/information screen. —
			<b>Tint</b>	Changes the tint of the audio/information screen. —
		<b>Other</b>	<b>Aspect Ratio Adjustment</b> USB, HDMI™ mode	Selects a display mode with a different aspect ratio: <b>Original</b> (only USB), <b>Normal</b> , <b>Full</b> or <b>Zoom</b> .
	<b>Cover Art</b> iPod or USB mode [Your selected media]		Turns the cover art display on and off.	<b>On</b> *1/ <b>Off</b>
	<b>Audio Source Pop-Up</b>		Selects whether the list of selectable audio source comes on when <b>Audio</b> is selected on the home screen.	<b>On</b> / <b>Off</b> *1
	<b>Default</b>		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Audio</b> settings group as default.	<b>Yes</b> / <b>No</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings		
System	Home	<b>Home Screen Edit Order</b>	Changes the home screen icon layout.	—	
		<b>Menu Icon Position</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Changes the position of the menu icons on the <b>Audio, Phone, and Info</b> screen.	—	
		<b>Configuration of Instrument Panel</b>	Changes the <b>Instrument Panel</b> screen icon layout.	—	
		<b>Tachometer Setting</b>	Turns on and off the tachometer display.	<b>On</b> <sup>*1</sup> / <b>Off</b>	
	Display	Display Settings	<b>Brightness</b>	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
			<b>Contrast</b>	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
			<b>Black Level</b>	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
		<b>Background Colour</b> <sup>*3</sup>	Changes the background colour of the audio/information screen.	<b>Blue/Amber/Red/Violet/Blue Green</b> <sup>*1</sup>	
		<b>Touch Panel Sensitivity</b>	Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	<b>High/Low</b> <sup>*1</sup>	


\*1: Default Setting

\*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

\*3: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
<b>System</b>	<b>Sound/ Beep</b>	<b>Guidance Volume</b>	Changes the sound volume. Adjusts the guidance volume of the navigation system.	<b>00~06*1~11</b>
		<b>Text Message Volume*</b>	Changes the text/e-mail message reading volume.	<b>01~06*1~11</b>
		<b>Voice Recog. Volume</b>	Changes the volume of the voice prompt	<b>01~06*1~11</b>
		<b>Meter Volume - List Reading*</b>	Changes the list reading volume.	<b>00~06*1~11</b>
		<b>Meter Volume - Alphabetic Reading*</b>	Changes the alphabetic reading volume.	<b>00~06*1~11</b>
		<b>Verbal Reminder*</b>	Turns the verbal reminders on and off.	<b>On*1/Off</b>
		<b>Beep Volume</b>	Changes the beep volume.	<b>Off/1/2*1/3</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
System	Voice Recog.*	<b>One Press Voice Operation</b>	Changes the setting of the  (Talk) button operation when using the voice operation.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
		<b>Voice Prompt</b>	Turns the voice prompt on and off.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
		<b>Voice Recog. Volume</b>	Changes the volume of the voice prompt.	01~06 <sup>*1</sup> ~11
		<b>Song by Voice</b>	Turns the Song By Voice™ on and off.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
		<b>Song by Voice Phonetic Modification</b>	Modifies a voice command for music stored in the system or an iPod/iPhone. ➤ <b>Phonetic Modification</b> P. 322	—
		<b>Phonebook Phonetic Modification</b>	Modifies a voice command for the phonebook. ➤ <b>Phonebook Phonetic Modification</b> * P. 429	—
		<b>Automatic Phone Sync</b>	Sets phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.	On/Off

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>System</b>	<b>Clock/ Wallpaper Type<sup>*1/</sup> Clock type<sup>*2</sup></b>	See <b>Info</b> on P. 372	<b>Clock</b>
			<b>Wallpaper</b>
	<b>Clock Adjustment</b>		
	<b>Auto Time Zone<sup>*</sup></b>		
	<b>Auto Daylight<sup>*</sup></b>		
	<b>Clock Format</b>		
	<b>Clock Display</b>		
	<b>Overlay Clock Location</b>		
	<b>Clock Reset</b>		

\* 1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

\* 2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
<b>System</b>	<b>Others</b>	<b>Language</b>	Change the display language.	<b>English (United Kingdom)<sup>*1</sup></b> or <b>Türkçe<sup>*1</sup></b> : See other selectable languages on the screen.
		<b>Remember Last Screen<sup>*3</sup></b>	Selects whether the device remembers the last screen.	<b>On/Off<sup>*1</sup></b>
		<b>Memory Refresh</b>	Turns on the audio system automatically and restores the fragmentation of a memory when the ignition switch is LOCK [0] <sup>*2</sup> .	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Refresh Time Adjustment</b>	Sets the time for <b>Memory Refresh</b> .	—

\*1:Default Setting

\*2:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*3:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System	<b>Change Skin</b>	Changes the screen interface design.	<b>Yes/No</b>
	<b>Factory Data Reset</b>	Resets all the settings to their factory default. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> P. 390	<b>Yes/No</b>
	<b>Others</b>		
	<b>Climate Screen Time Out</b>	Changes the length of time the climate control display stays on when you press the <b>CLIMATE</b> button.	<b>Never/5 seconds/10 seconds*<sup>1</sup>/20 seconds</b>
	<b>Detailed Information</b>	Displays the details of the head unit and operating system information.	—
<b>Default</b>		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>System</b> group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

\* 1:Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	<b>Deflation Warning System</b>	Initialises the deflation warning system.	<b>Cancel</b> * <sup>1</sup> / <b>Initialise</b>
	<b>Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning Distance</b> * <sup>2</sup>	Changes Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alert distance.	<b>Far/Normal</b> * <sup>1</sup> / <b>Near</b>
	<b>Traffic Sign Recognition System</b> * <sup>2</sup>	Selects whether the traffic sign small icons come on.	<b>Small Icons ON</b> * <sup>1</sup> / <b>Small Icons OFF</b>
	<b>ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep</b> * <sup>2</sup>	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC range.	<b>On/Off</b> * <sup>1</sup>
	<b>Blind Spot Information</b> * <sup>3</sup>	Changes the setting for the blind spot information.	<b>Audible And Visual Alert</b> * <sup>1</sup> / <b>Visual Alert Only/Off</b>
	<b>Lane Keep Assist Beep</b> * <sup>2</sup>	Causes the system to beep when Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is suspended.	<b>On/Off</b> * <sup>1</sup>
	<b>Road Departure Mitigation Setting</b> * <sup>2</sup>	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	<b>Normal</b> * <sup>1</sup> / <b>Delayed/Warning Only/Early</b>
	<b>ACC Cut-in Prediction Control</b> * <sup>2</sup>	Turns the ACC cut-in prediction control feature on and off.	<b>On</b> * <sup>1</sup> / <b>Off</b>

\*1:Default Setting

\*2:Models with CMBS

\*3:Models with blind spot information system

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Vehicle	Meter Setup	<b>Warning Message</b>	Switches warning message to be displayed or not.	<b>On/Off<sup>*1</sup></b>
		<b>Adjust Outside Temp. Display</b>	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	<b>-3°C ~ ±0°C<sup>*1</sup> ~ +3°C</b>
		<b>“Trip A” Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	<b>When Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset<sup>*1</sup></b>
		<b>“Trip B” Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	<b>When Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset<sup>*1</sup></b>
		<b>Alarm Volume Control</b>	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	<b>Max/Mid<sup>*1</sup>/Min</b>
		<b>Fuel Efficiency Backlight</b>	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
<b>Vehicle</b>	<b>Meter Setup</b>	<b>Auto Idle Stop Display</b>	Selects whether the Auto Idle Stop guidance screens comes on.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Turn by Turn Display</b>	Used to select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>New Message Notifications<sup>*</sup></b>	Used to select whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFT receives a new text/e-mail message.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Speed/Distance Units<sup>*</sup></b>	Selects the trip computer units.	<b>mph-miles<sup>*1</sup>/ km/h-km</b>
		<b>Tachometer</b>	Selects whether the tachometer comes on the driver information interface.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Vehicle	Keyless Access Setup*	<b>Door Unlock Mode</b>	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	<b>Driver Door Only*<sup>1</sup>/ All Doors</b>
		<b>Keyless Access Light Flash</b>	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
	Lighting Setup	<b>Interior Light Dimming Time</b>	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	<b>60sec/30sec*<sup>1</sup>/15sec</b>
		<b>Headlight Auto Off Timer</b>	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	<b>60sec/30sec/ 15sec*<sup>1</sup>/0sec</b>
		<b>Auto Interior Illumination Sensitivity</b>	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in <b>AUTO</b> .	<b>Min/Low/Mid*<sup>1</sup>/ High/Max</b>
		<b>Headlight Integration With Wipers</b>	Used to automatically come on the headlights when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch is in <b>AUTO</b> .	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	<b>Key And Remote Unlock Mode</b>	Sets up the driver's door or all the doors to unlock on the first push of the remote.	<b>Driver Door Only*<sup>1</sup>/ All Doors</b>
	<b>Keyless Lock Notification</b>	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Security Relock Timer</b>	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	<b>90sec/60sec/30sec*<sup>1</sup></b>
	<b>Maintenance Info.</b>	Used to reset the service reminder system information display when the maintenance service has been performed.	—

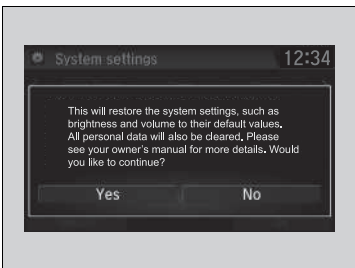
\*1:Default Setting


Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Smartphone	<b>Apple CarPlay</b>	Sets up the Apple CarPlay connection.	—
	<b>Android Auto</b>	Sets up the Android Auto connection.	—
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Smartphone</b> group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

Models with Display Audio

## Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
  - A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes** to reset the settings.
7. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
  - A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **OK**.
  - After selecting **OK**, the system will reboot.

### Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

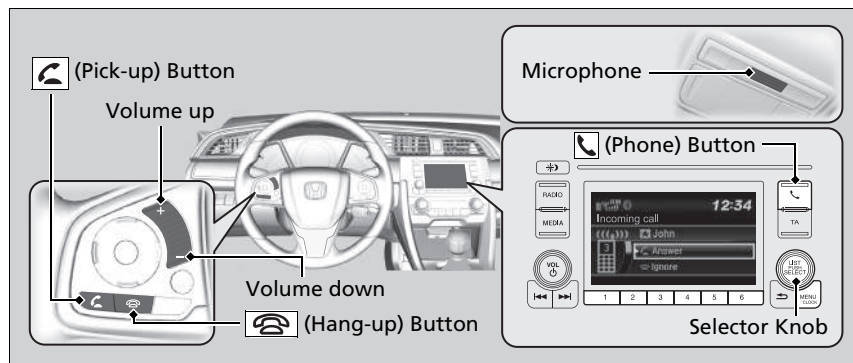
# Hands-Free Telephone System

## Models with colour audio system

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

## Using HFT



### HFT Buttons



**(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen or to answer an incoming call.

**(Hang-up) button:** Press to end a call or to cancel a command.

**(Phone) button:** Press to go directly to the **Phone** screen.

**Selector Knob:** Rotate  to select an item on the screen, then press .

## Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer.

If you receive a call while using the audio system, the system resumes its operation after ending the call.

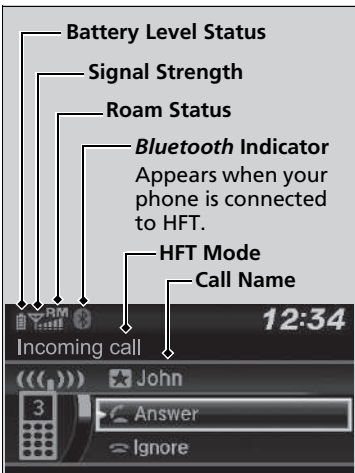
Up to 20 speed dial entries can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

**Speed Dial** P. 406

Up to 20 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.



## HFT Status Display



The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.

## Hands-Free Telephone System

### Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

### HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

## HFT Status Display

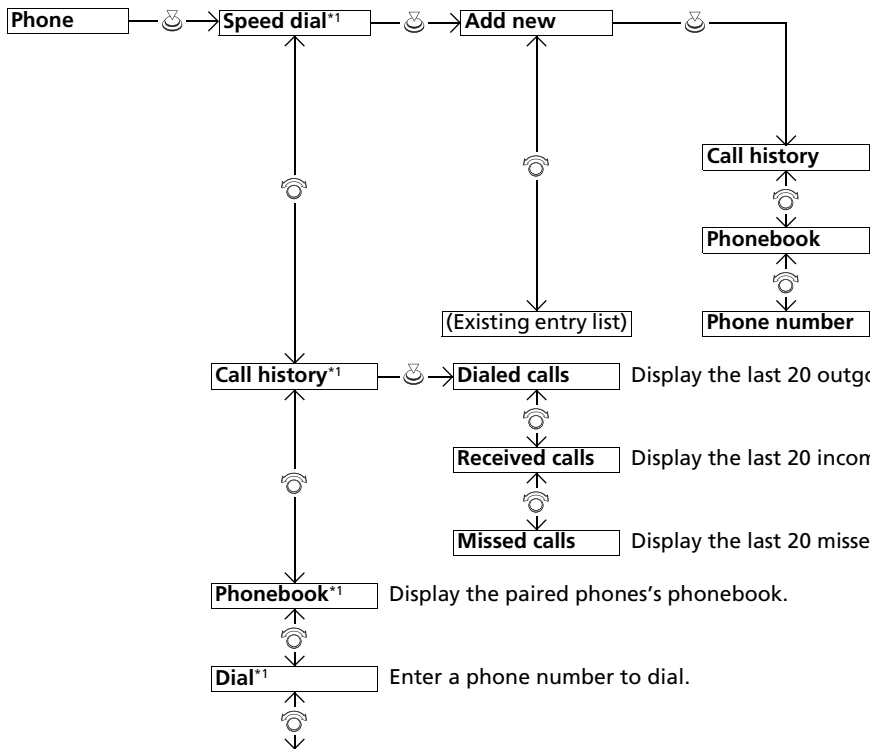
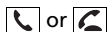
The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 354

## HFT Menu

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II** to use HFT.



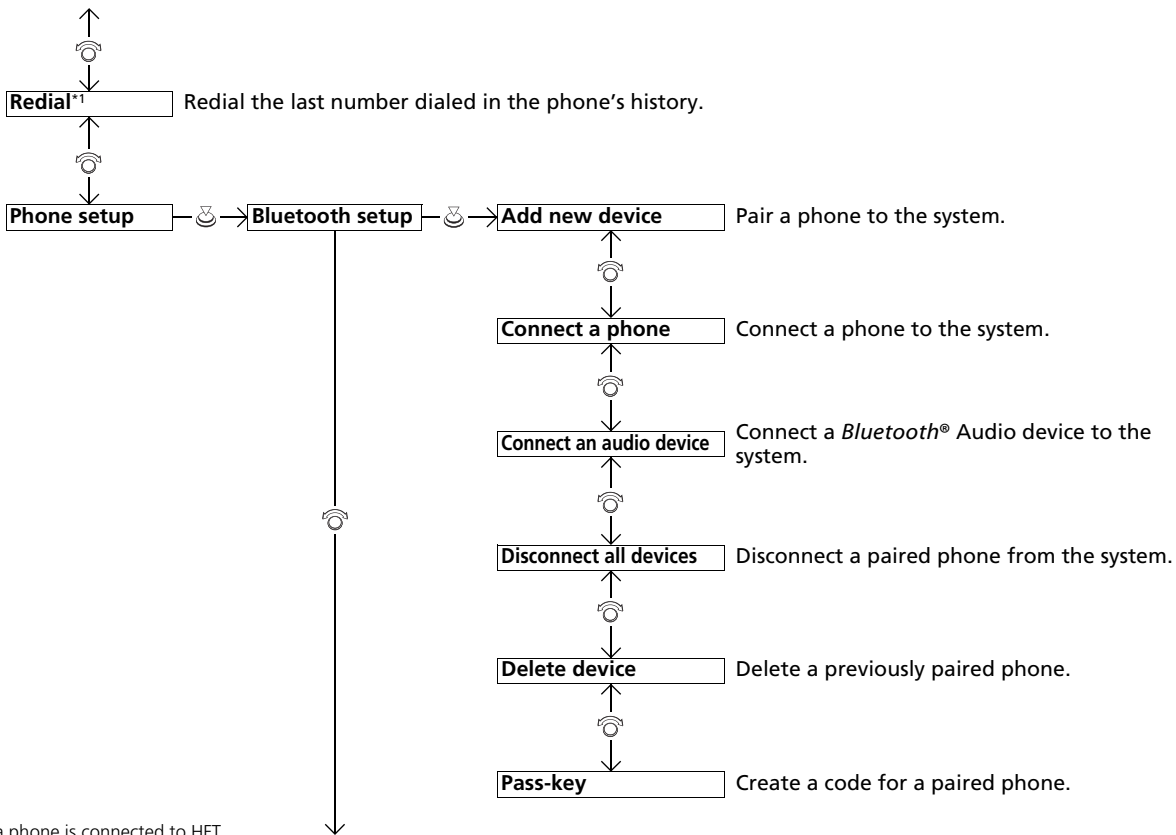
**HFT Menu**  
 To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

- Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
- Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.
- Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.

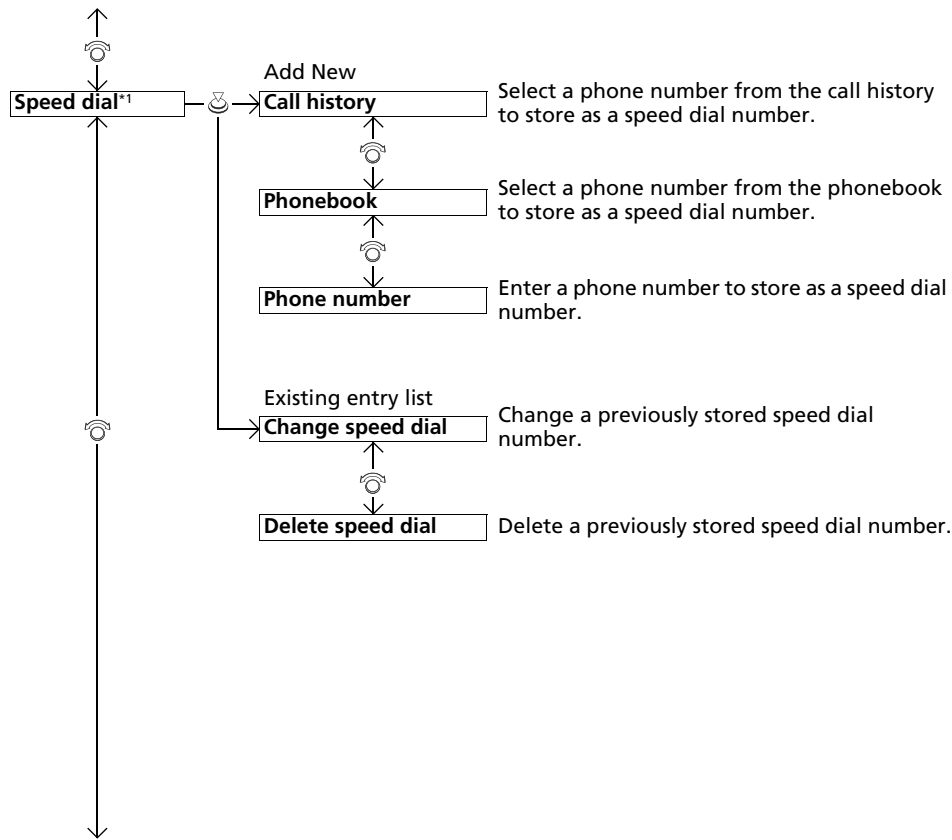
- Dialed calls** Display the last 20 outgoing calls.
- Received calls** Display the last 20 incoming calls.
- Missed calls** Display the last 20 missed calls.

- Phonebook\*1** Display the paired phones's phonebook.
- Dial\*1** Enter a phone number to dial.

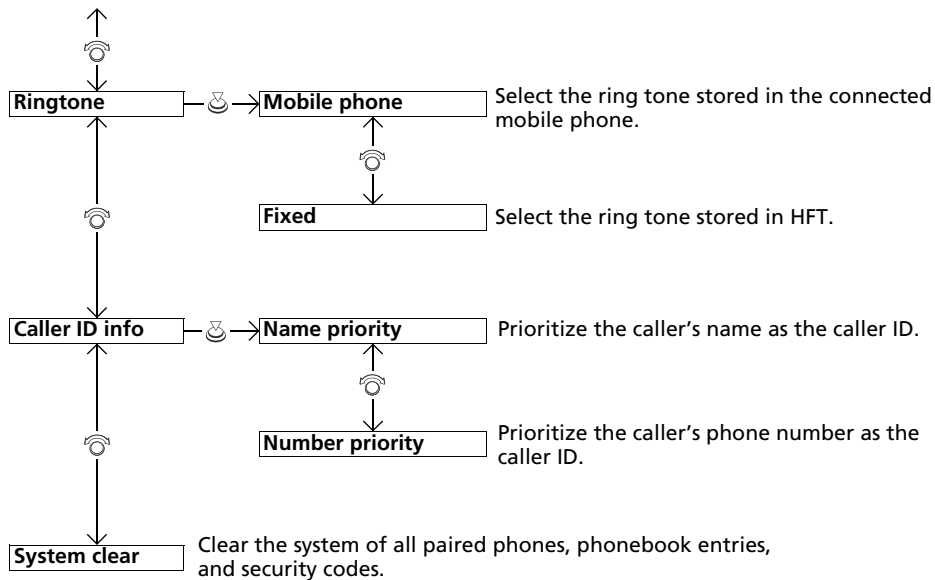
\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.



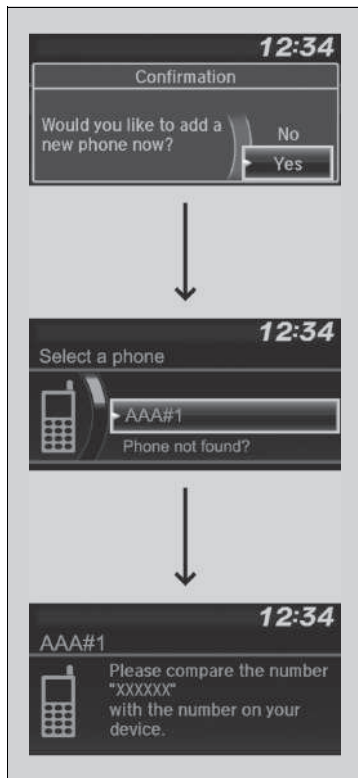
\*1 : Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.



\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.



## Phone Setup



### ■ To pair a mobile phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
  - ▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
4. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
  - ▶ If your phone doesn't appear, select **Phone not found?** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, select **Honda HFT**.

5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

Continued

## ☒ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFT before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

### Phone Pairing Tips:

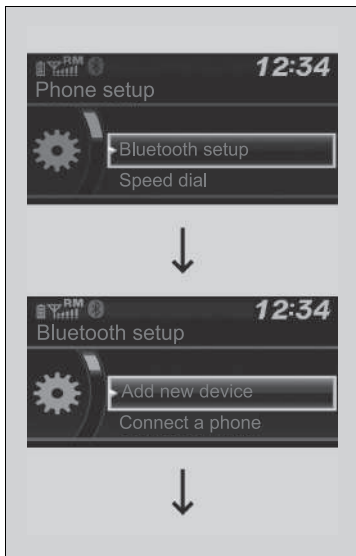
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFT.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

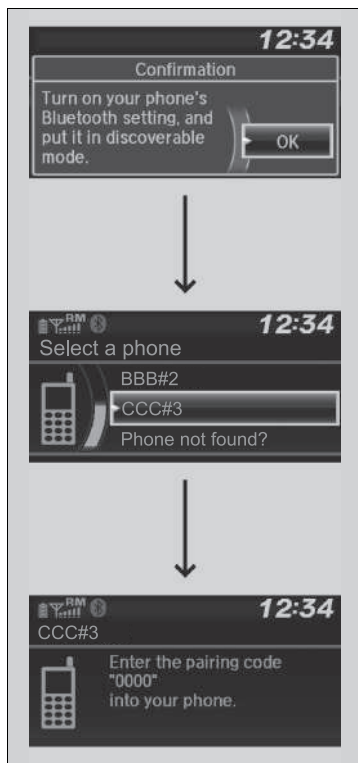
These icons indicate the following:

- : The phone can be used with HFT.
- : The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

■ **To pair a mobile phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)**

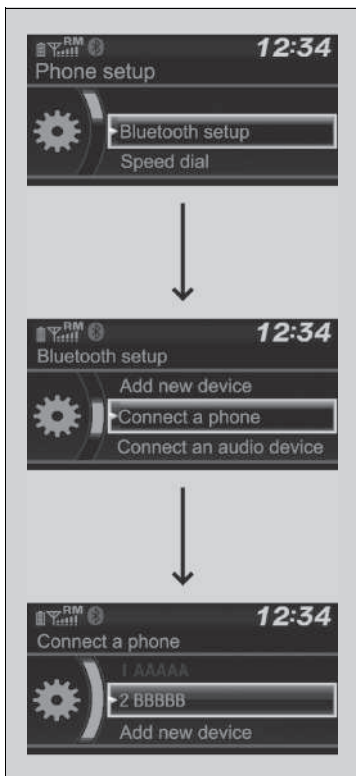


1. Press the button or the button.
    - ▶ If a prompt appears asking to connect to a phone, select **No** and proceed with step 2.
  2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
  3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press .
  4. Rotate to select **Add new device**, then press .
- ▶ The screen changes to device list.



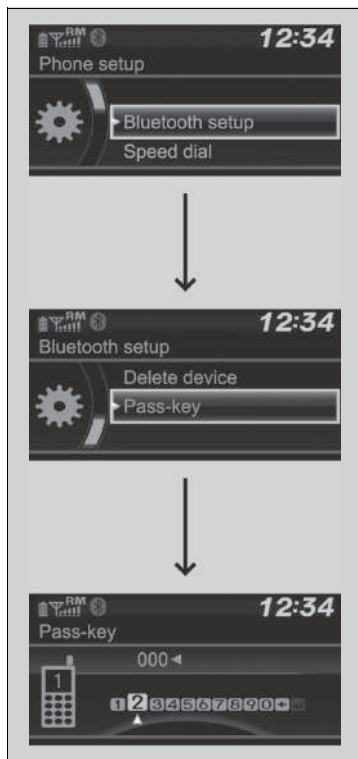
5. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
  - ▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> device.
  
6. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
  - ▶ If your phone does not appear, select **Phone not found?** and search for *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> devices using your phone. From your phone, select **Honda HFT**.
  
7. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by a phone.





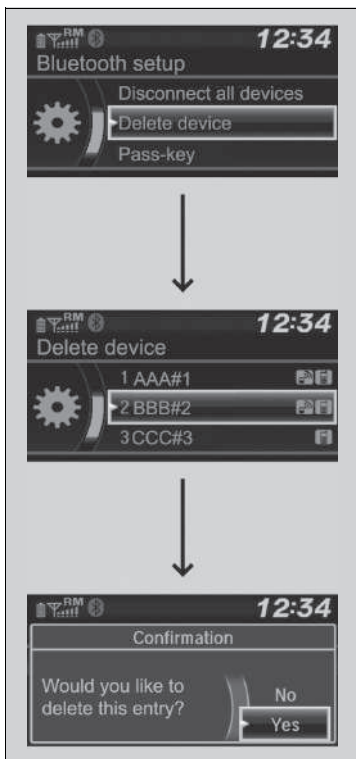
■ **To change the currently paired phone**

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Connect a phone**, then press .
  - ▶ The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a desired device name, then press .
  - ▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.



### ■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Pass-key**, then press .
5. Input a new pairing code, then press .



■ **To delete a paired phone**

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete device**, then press .
  - ▶ The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a phone you want to delete, then press .
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

## Ring Tone

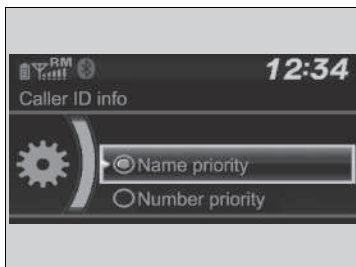
You can change the ring tone setting.



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Ringtone**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Fixed** or **Mobile phone**, then press .

## Caller's ID Information

You can select a caller's information to be displayed when you have an incoming call.



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Caller ID info**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a mode you want, then press .

### Ring Tone

**Fixed:** The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

**Mobile phone:** For certain connected phones, the ring tone stored in the phone sounds from the speakers.

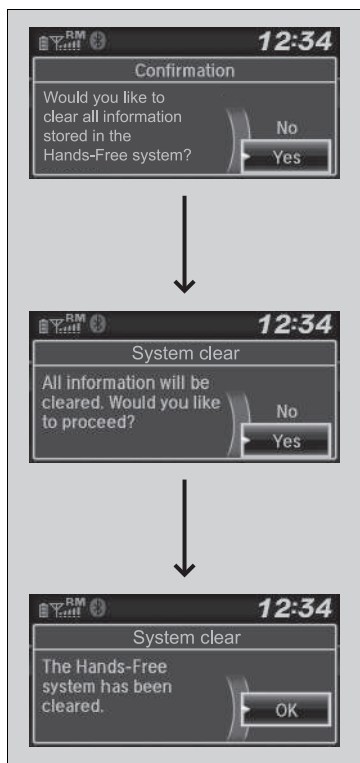
### Caller's ID Information

**Name priority:** A caller's name is displayed if it is stored in the phonebook.

**Number priority:** A caller's phone number is displayed.

## ■ To Clear the System

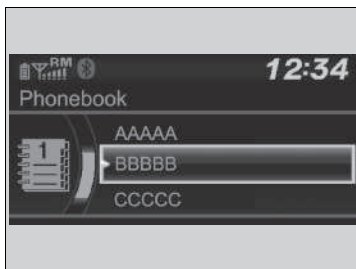
Pairing codes, paired phones, all speed dial entries, all call history data, and all imported phonebook data are erased.



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **System clear**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
  
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
  
6. A notification appears on the screen. Press .

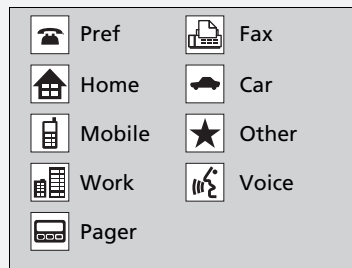
## Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFT.



### Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



If a name has four or more numbers, ... appears instead of category icons.

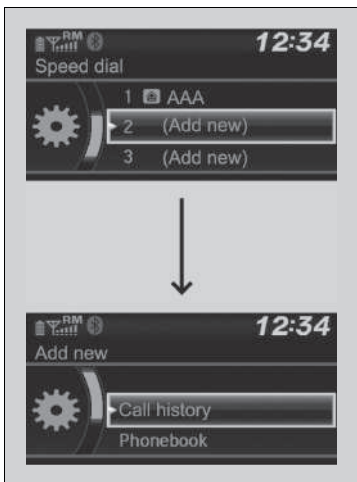
On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFT.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

*Continued*

## Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Add new**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a place to choose a number from, then press .

From **Call history**:

- ▶ Select a number from the call history.

From **Phonebook**:

- ▶ Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.

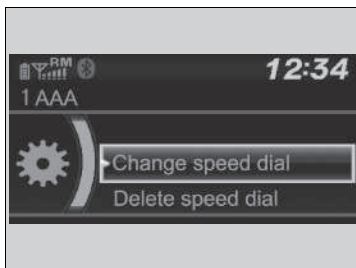
From **Phone number**:

- ▶ Input the number manually.

## Speed Dial

You can use the audio preset buttons during a call to store a speed dial number:

1. Press and hold the desired audio preset button during a call.
2. The contact information for the active call will be stored for the corresponding speed dial.

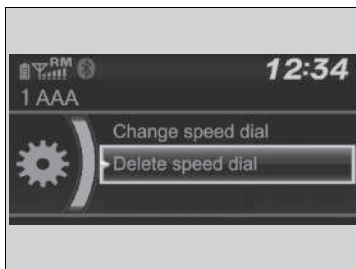


### ■ To edit a speed dial

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Change speed dial**, then press .
6. Select a new speed dial number, then press .

### ■ To delete a speed dial number

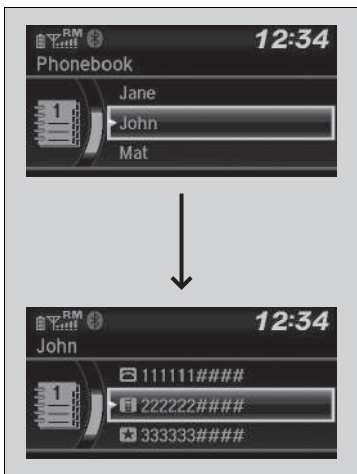
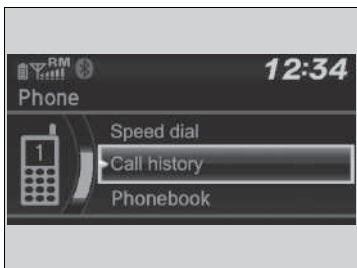
1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Delete speed dial**, then press .
  - ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .





## ■ Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.



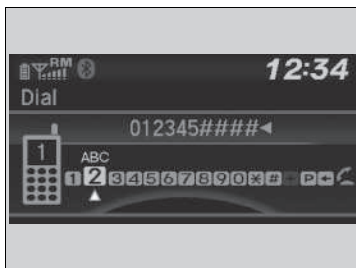
### ■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are automatically imported to HFT.

1. Press the button or the button.
  2. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
  3. The phonebook is stored alphabetically. Rotate to select the initial, then press .
  4. Rotate to select a name, then press .
  5. Rotate to select a number, then press .
- ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

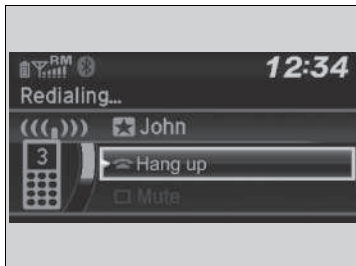
### ▶ Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.



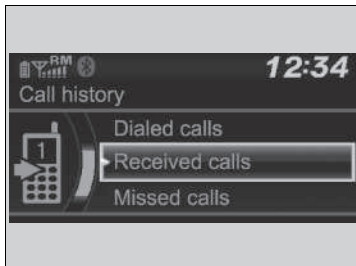
### ■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
4. Rotate to select , then press .
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



### ■ To make a call using redial

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Redial**, then press .
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



### ■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **Dialed calls**, **Received calls**, and **Missed calls**.

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Call history**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Dialed calls**, **Received calls**, or **Missed calls**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

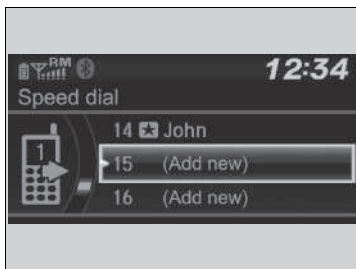
### ☒ To make a call using redial

Press and hold the button to redial the last number dialed in your phone's call history.

### ☒ To make a call using the call history

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to HFT, and displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.

*Continued*



■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

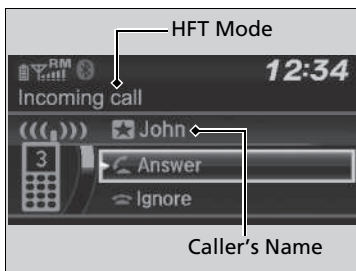
1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

▶▶ To make a call using a speed dial entry

On the **Phone** screen, the first six speed dials on the list can be directly selected by pressing the corresponding audio preset buttons (1-6).

Select **Others** to view another paired phone's speed dial list.

■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

- Press the button to answer the call.  
 Press the button to decline or end the call.

▶▶ Receiving a Call

**Call Waiting**  
 Press the button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.  
 Press the button again to return to the current call.  
 Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.  
 Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the and buttons. Rotate to select the icon, then press .

## Options During a Call

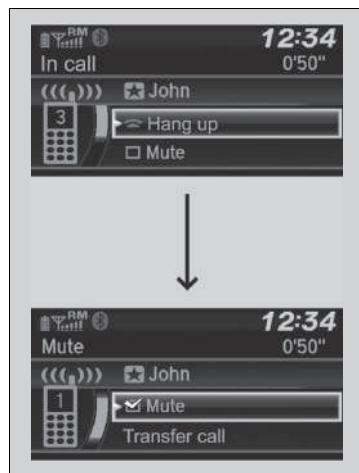
The following options are available during a call.




**Swap call:** Put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

**Mute:** Mute your voice.

**Transfer call:** Transfer a call from HFT to your phone.

**Dial tones:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



1. To view the available options, press the  button.
2. Rotate  to select the option, then press .
  - ▶ The check box is checked when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

## Options During a Call

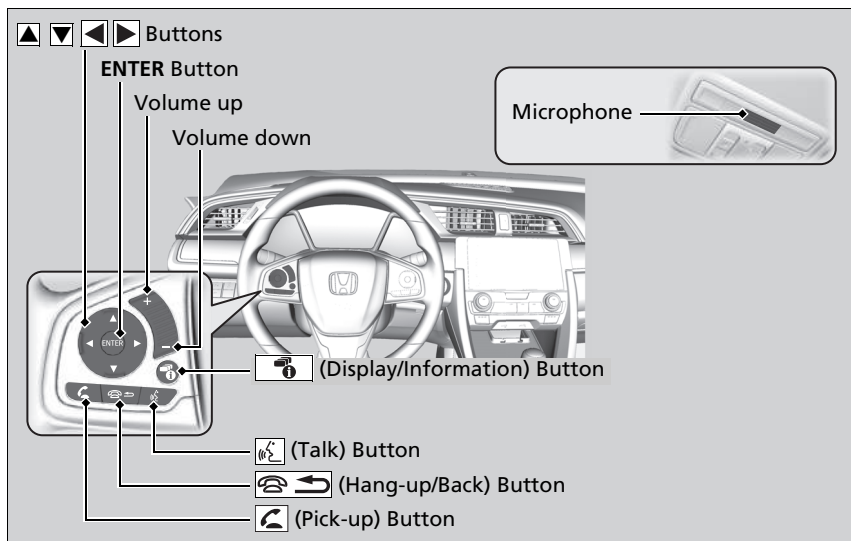
**Dial tones:** Available on some phones.

## Models with Display Audio

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

## Using HFT

### HFT Buttons



### Hands-Free Telephone System


Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth On/Off Status** setting must be **On**. If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay, HFT is unavailable.

➤ **How to customize** P. 362


Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press the  button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.


Up to five speed dial entries can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered.


➤ **Speed Dial** P. 426

Up to five previous calls can be displayed at a time among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.



 **(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the phone menu on the driver information interface, or to answer an incoming call.

 **(Hang-up/back) button:** Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel a command.



 **(Talk) button:** Press to access Voice Portal.

 **buttons:** Press to select an item displayed on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

**ENTER button:** Press to call a number listed in the selected item on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

 **(Display/information) button:** Select  and press **ENTER** to display **Speed Dial**, **Call History**, or **Phonebook** on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

To go to the **Phone Menu** screen:

1. Select .
2. Select **Phone** to switch the display to the phone screen.
3. Select .

## ▶▶ Hands-Free Telephone System

### *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> Wireless Technology

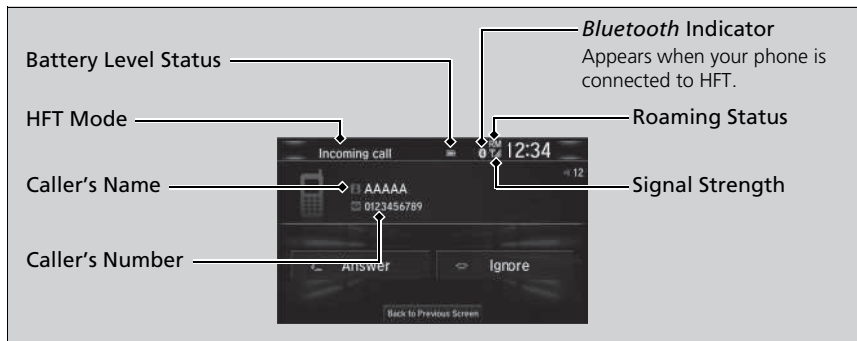
The *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

### HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

## ■ HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 426

## ▶ HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

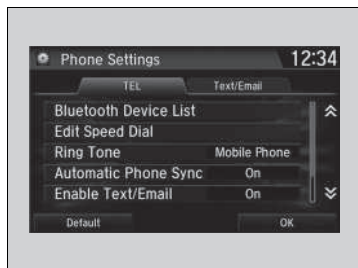
You can change the system language.

▶ **How to customize** P. 362

# HFT Menu

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II**\*1 to use HFT.

## ■ Phone Settings screen

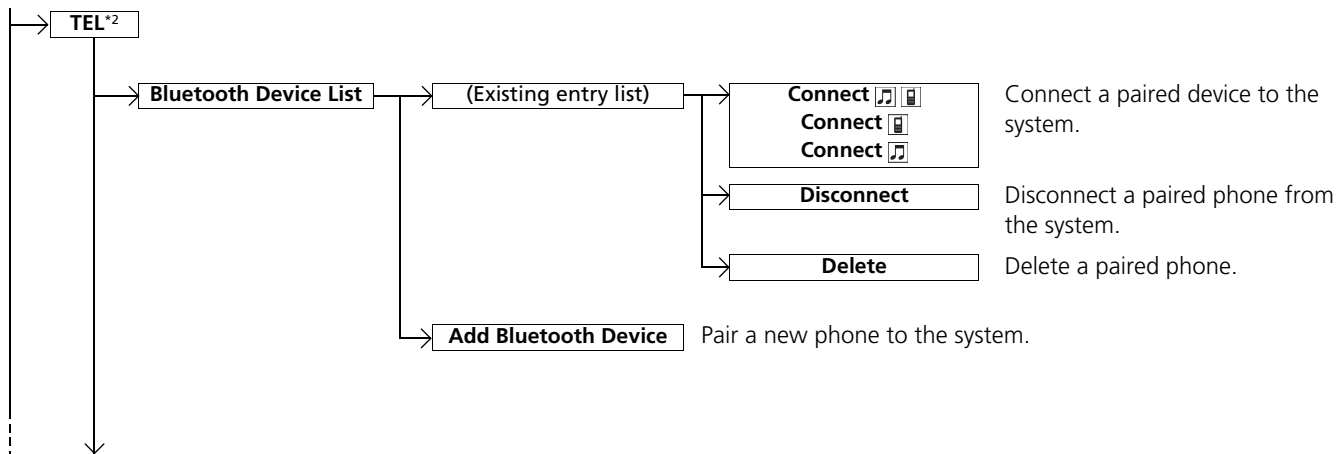


1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Phone**.

### ▶ HFT Menu

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

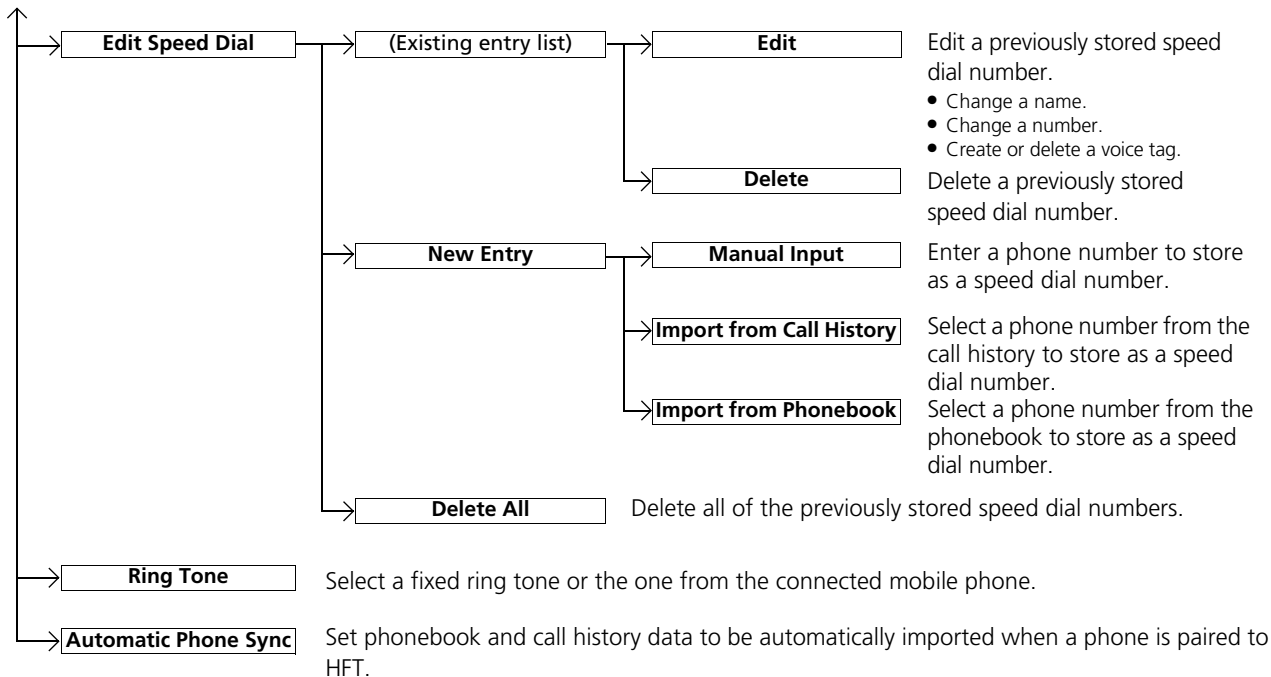
Some functions are limited while driving.

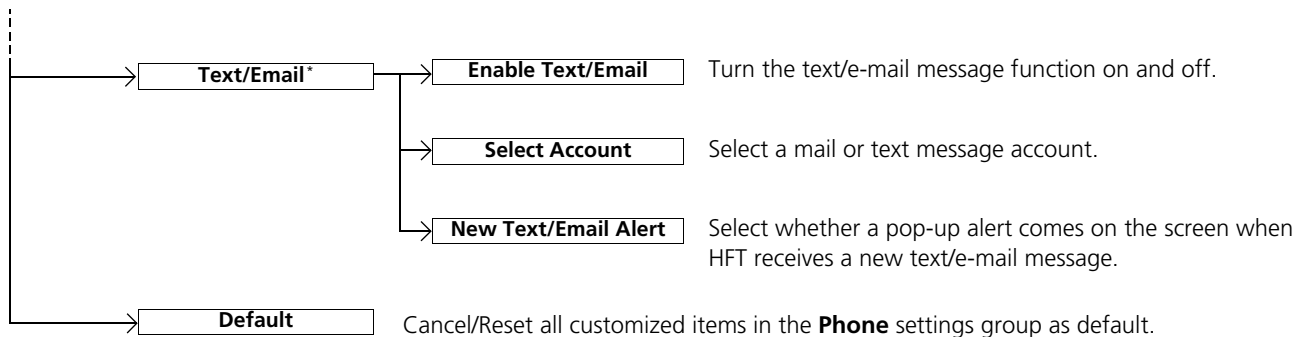


\*1 : Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2 : **TEL** tab is displayed depending on models.







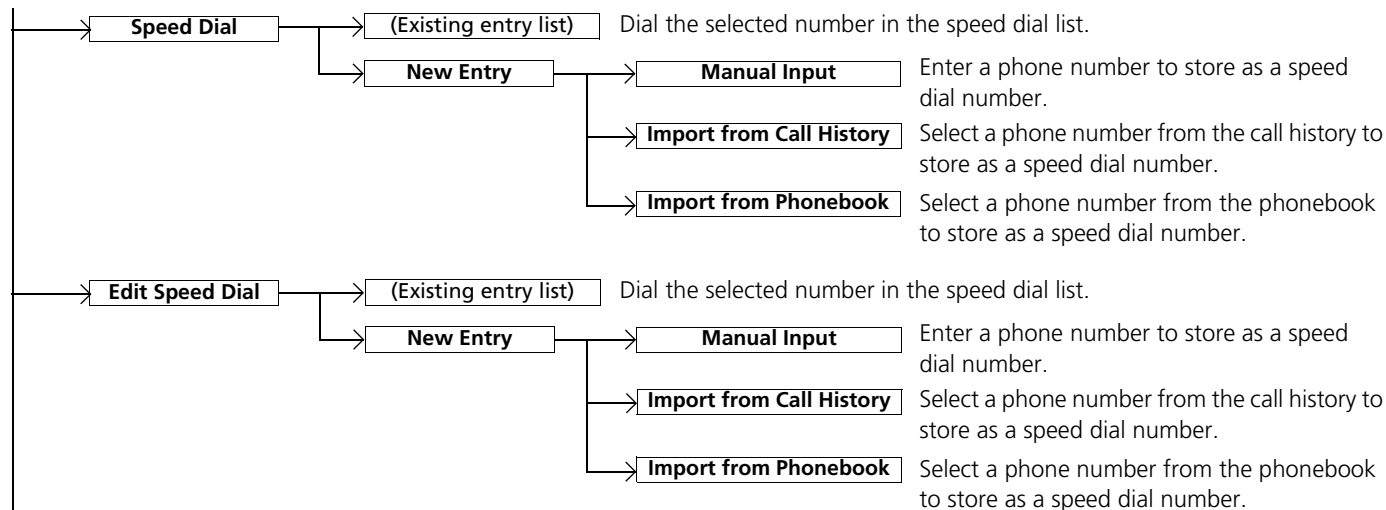
\* Not available on all models

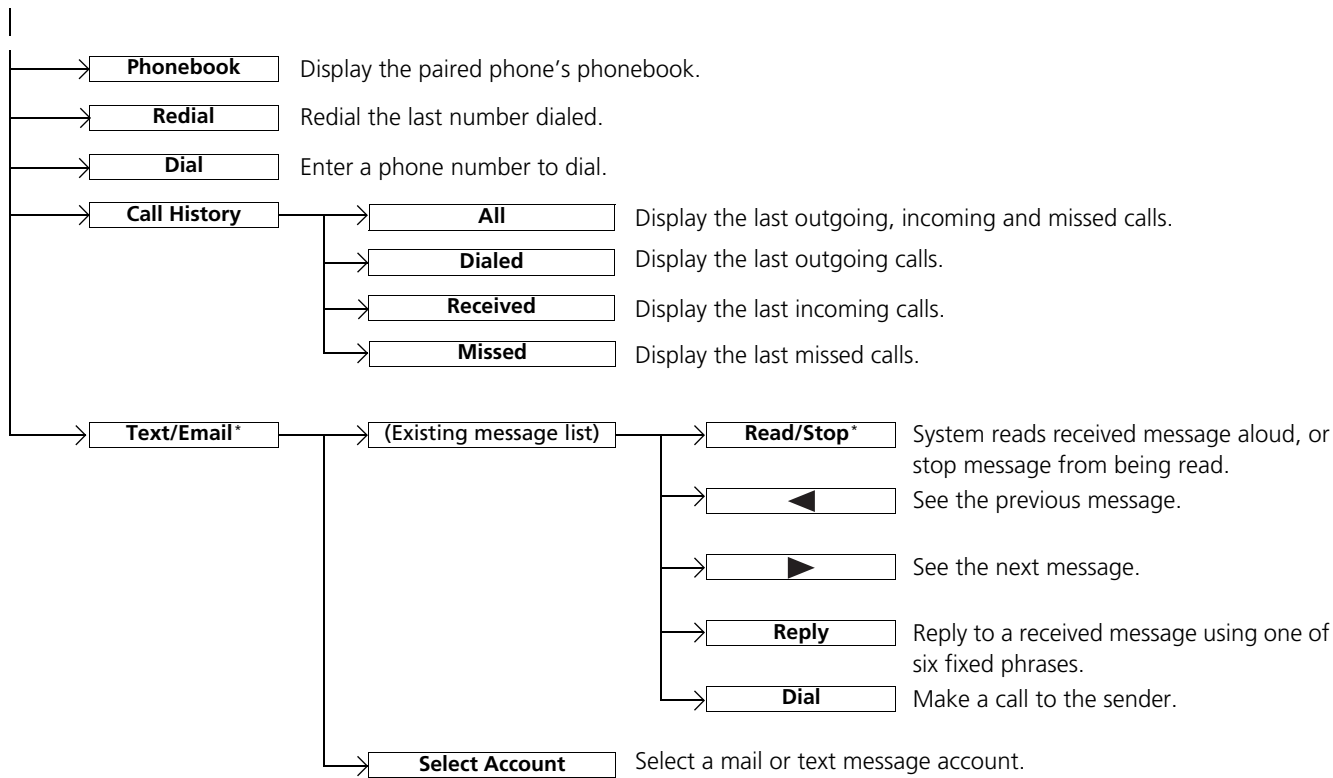
■ Phone Menu screen



1. Select .
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select .

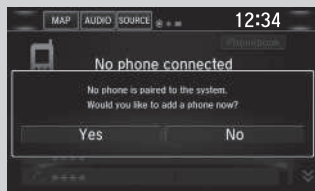
Features





\* Not available on all models

## Phone Setup



### ■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Yes**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then select **Continue**.
  - ▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
4. Select your phone when it appears on the list.
  - ▶ If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
  - ▶ If your phone still does not appear, select **Phone Not Found** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, search for **Honda HFT**.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.

## ☒ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

### Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

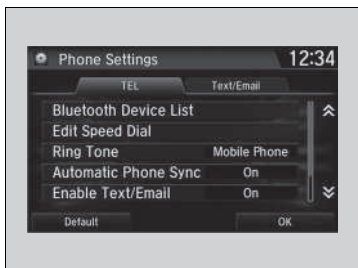


The phone can be used with HFT.







The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.


If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*-compatible devices is unavailable and **Add Bluetooth Device** is grayed out from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

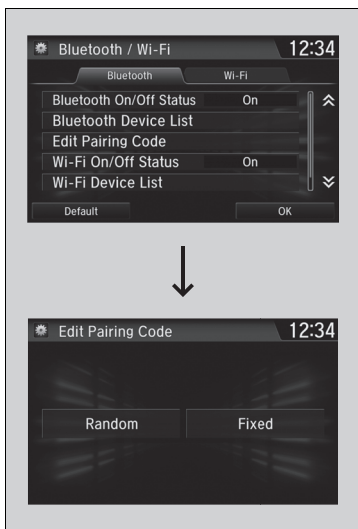


### ■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Settings** screen P. 415
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a phone to connect.
  - ▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
4. Select **Connect**  , **Connect** , or **Connect** .

### ■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Bluetooth** tab.
5. Select **Edit Pairing Code**.
6. Select **Random** or **Fixed**.



### ▶▶ To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

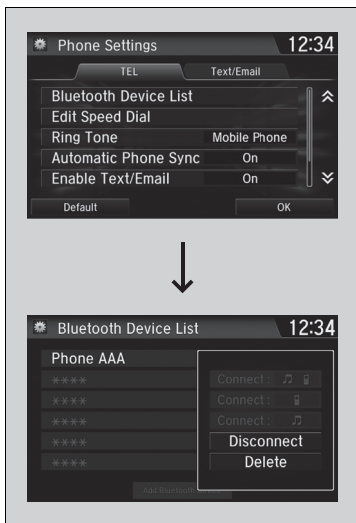
To pair other phones, select **Add Bluetooth Device** from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

### ▶▶ To change the pairing code setting

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.

To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

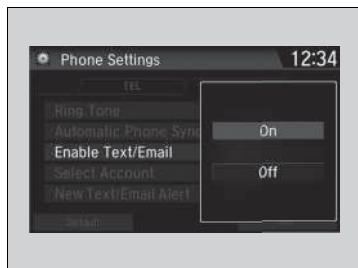
For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.



■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Settings** screen P. 415
2. Select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Select a phone you want to delete.
4. Select **Delete**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

## To Set Up Text/E-mail Message Options\*

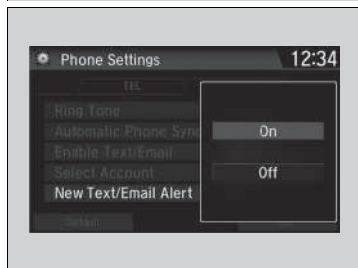


### ■ To turn on or off the text/e-mail message function

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone Settings** screen P. 415
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **Enable Text/Email**.  
 ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

### ■ To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone Settings** screen P. 415
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **New Text/Email Alert**.  
 ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.



## ▶▶ To Set Up Text/E-mail Message Options\*

To use the text/e-mail message function, it may be necessary to set up on your phone.

Some text/e-mail message features may not be available depending on a mobile phone.

## ▶▶ To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice

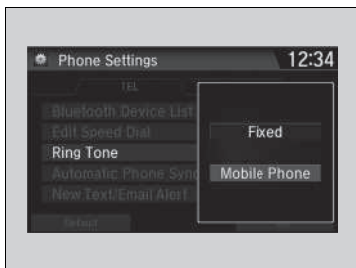
**On:** A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new message.

**Off:** The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.



## ■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



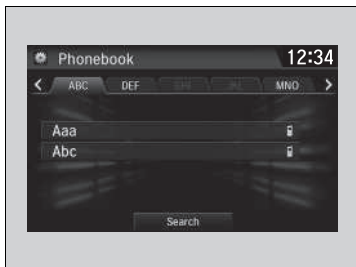
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Settings screen** P. 415
2. Select **Ring Tone**.
3. Select **Fixed** or **Mobile Phone**.

## ▣ Ring Tone

**Fixed:** The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

**Mobile Phone:** For certain connected phones, the ring tone stored in the phone sounds from the speakers.

## Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

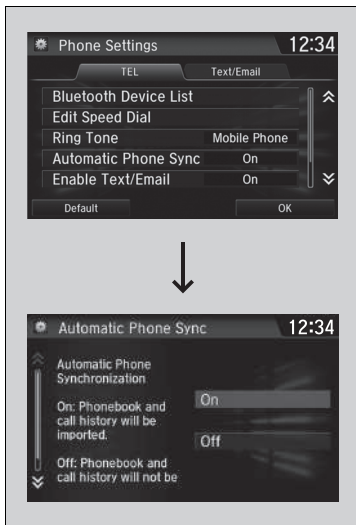


### ■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

### ■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

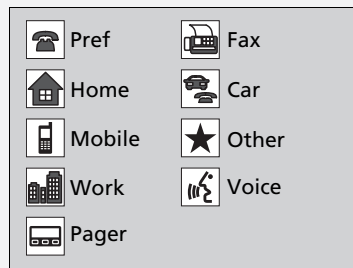
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
▶ **Phone Settings** screen P. 415
2. Select **Automatic Phone Sync**.



3. Select **On** or **Off**.

## ▶▶ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

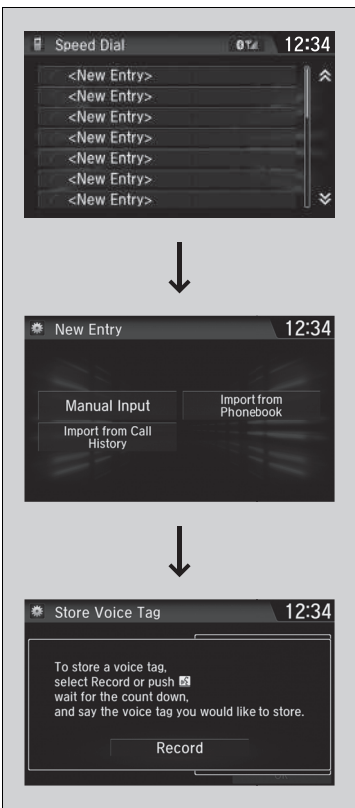


On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

## Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.

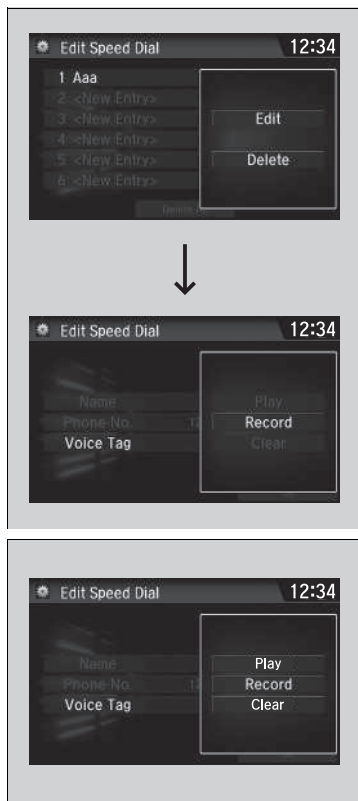


To store a speed dial number:


1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 418
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select **New Entry**.
  - From **Import from Call History**:
    - ▶ Select a number from the call history.
  - From **Manual Input**:
    - ▶ Input the number manually.
  - From **Import from Phonebook**:
    - ▶ Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.
4. When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Select **Yes** or **No**.
5. Select **Record**, or use the [voice tag icon] button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

## Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the [voice tag icon] button to call the number using the voice tag. Say the voice tag name.



### ■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

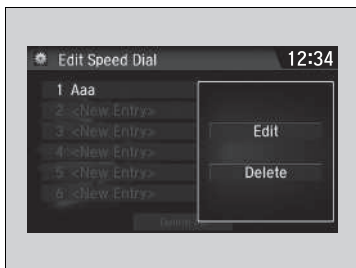
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
▶ **Phone Settings screen** P. 415
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.  
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Record**.
5. Select **Record**, or use the  button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

### ■ To delete a voice tag

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
▶ **Phone Settings screen** P. 415
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.  
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Clear**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

### ▶▶ Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.  
Avoid using "home" as a voice tag.  
It is easier for the system to recognise a longer name.  
For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."



### ■ To edit a speed dial

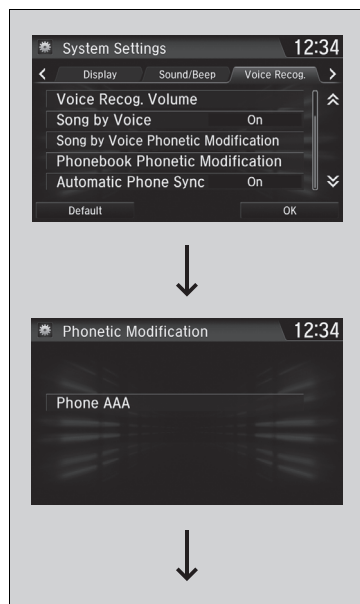
1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Settings screen** P. 415
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
  - ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select a setting you want.

### ■ To delete a speed dial


1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Settings screen** P. 415
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
  - ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Delete**.
4. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

## Phonebook Phonetic Modification \*

Add phonetic modifications or a new voice tag to the phone's contact name so that it is easier for HFT to recognize voice commands.



### ■ To add a new voice tag

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to add phonetic modification to.

### ▶▶ Phonebook Phonetic Modification \*

You can store up to 20 phonetic modification items.




7. Select **New Voice Tag**.

8. Select a contact name you want to add to.

▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.



9. Select **Modify**.

10. Using **Record** or the  button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

11. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **OK**.



### ■ To modify a voice tag

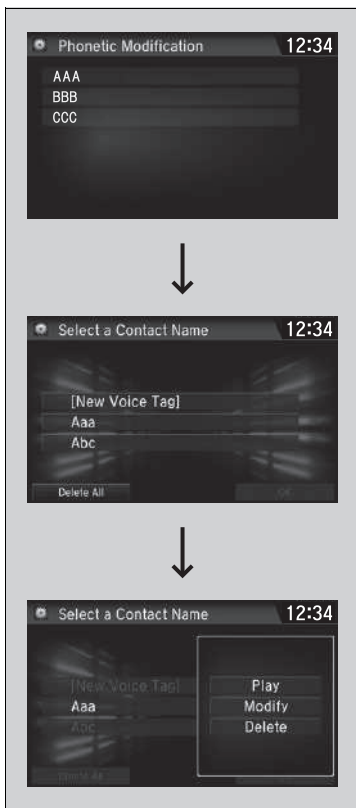
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to modify phonetic modification.
7. Select a contact name you want to modify.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
8. Select **Modify**.
9. Using **Record** or the  button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
10. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **OK**.

### ▶▶ Phonebook Phonetic Modification \*


You can only modify or delete contact names for the currently connected phone.

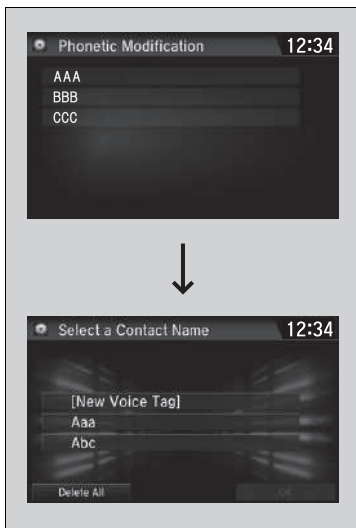
\* Not available on all models






■ To delete a modified voice tag

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to delete phonetic modification.
7. Select a contact name you want to delete.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
8. Select **Delete**.
  - ▶ The selected contact name has been selected.
9. Select **OK**.



### ■ To delete all modified voice tags

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to delete phonetic modification.
  - ▶ The contact name list appears.
7. Select **Delete All**.
8. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **Yes**.


## ■ Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

### ▣ Making a Call

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from most screens.

Press the  button and say the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls can be made only from Apple CarPlay.


*Continued*



■ **To make a call using the imported phonebook**

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Menu** screen P. 418
2. Select **Phonebook**.
3. Select a name.
  - ▶ You can also search by letter. Select **Search**.
  - ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering a name, if multiple numbers exist select a number.
4. Select a number.
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ **To make a call using a phone number**

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Menu** screen P. 418
2. Select **Dial**.
3. Select a number.
  - ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select .
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

☞ **To make a call using the imported phonebook**

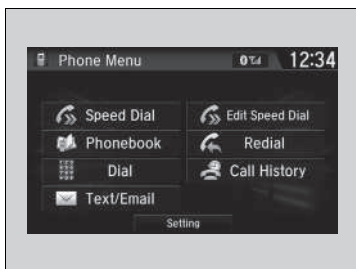
You can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 426

☞ **To make a call using a phone number**

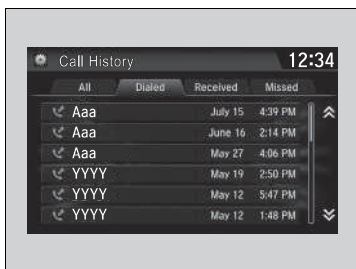
You can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 426



### ■ To make a call using redial

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 418
2. Select **Redial**.  
 ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



### ■ To make a call using the Call History

Call history is stored by **All, Dialed, Received, and Missed**.

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 418
2. Select **Call History**.
3. Select **All, Dialed, Received, or Missed**.
4. Select a number.  
 ▶ Dialing starts automatically.




### ■ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry


1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 418
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select a number.  
 ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### ☒ To make a call using the Call History

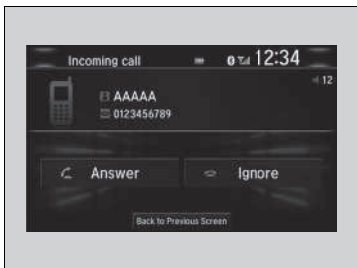
The call history displays the last 20 all, dialed, received, or missed calls.  
 (Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)

### ☒ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry



When a voice tag is stored, press the  button to call the number using the voice tag.  
 ▶ **Speed Dial** P. 426

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.  
 Press the  button and follow the prompts.

## ■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the  button to answer the call.  
 Press the  button to decline or end the call.

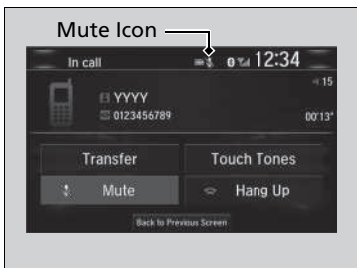
## ■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

**Mute:** Mute your voice.

**Transfer:** Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

**Touch Tones:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.




The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.


Select the option.

- ▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.


## » Receiving a Call



### Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the  and  buttons.

## » Options During a Call

**Touch Tones:** Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

## Receiving a Text/E-mail Message\*.\*1

HFT can display newly received text or e-mail messages as well as 20 of the most recently received messages on a linked mobile phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.



1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text message or e-mail.
2. Select **Read** to listen to the message.
  - ▶ The text or e-mail message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
3. To discontinue the message read-out, select **Stop**.

\*1: Message will not be read out depending on the language.

\* Not available on all models

Continued

## Receiving a Text/E-mail Message\*.\*1

The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

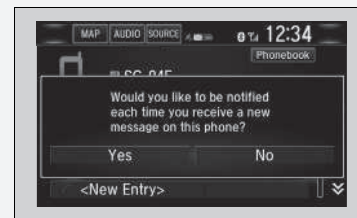
The system can only receive messages that are sent as text (SMS) messages. Messages sent using data services will not be displayed in the list.

With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 most recent text and e-mail messages.

Country or local laws may limit your use of the HFT text message/e-mail feature. Only use the text/e-mail message feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.

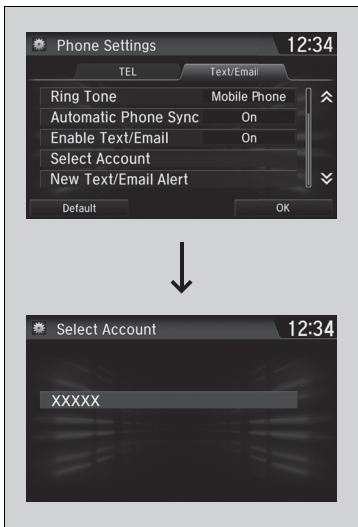
When you receive a text or e-mail message for the first time since the phone is paired to HFT, you are asked to turn the **New Text/Email Alert** setting to **On**.

▶ **To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice** P. 423



## ■ Selecting a Mail Account\*

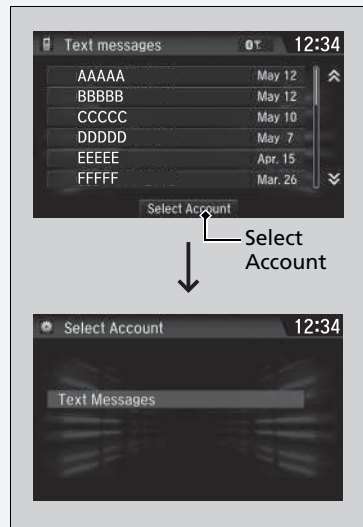
If a paired phone has text message or mail accounts, you can select one of them to be active and receive notifications.



1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.  
▶ **Phone Settings screen** P. 415
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **Select Account**.  
▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Text Messages** or an e-mail message account you want.

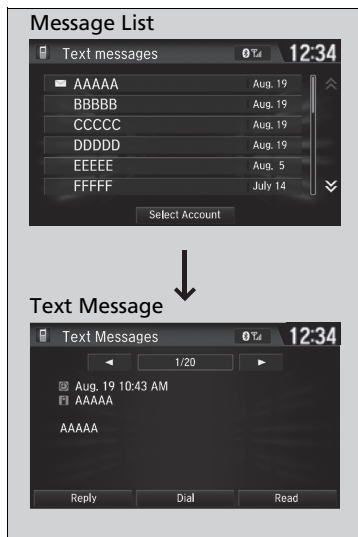
## ▶▶ Selecting a Mail Account\*

You can also select a mail account from the folder list screen or the message list screen.



You can only receive notifications from one text message or mail account at a time.


## Displaying Messages\*, \*1





### ■ Displaying text messages

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.  
▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 418
2. Select **Text/Email**.  
▶ Select account if necessary.
3. Select a message.  
▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

### ▶▶ Displaying Messages\*, \*1

The  icon appears next to an unread message.

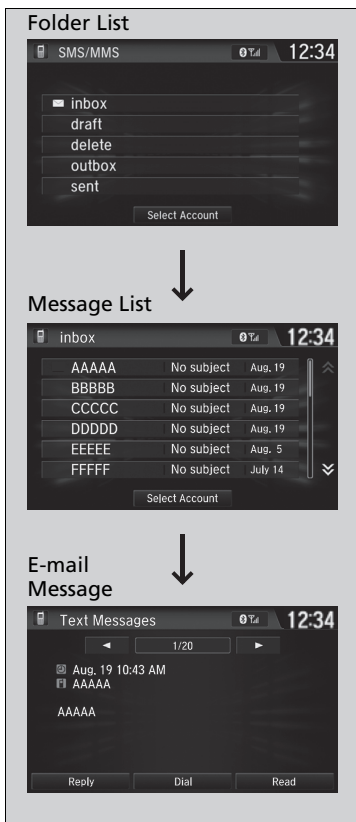
If you delete a message on the phone, the message is also deleted in the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone's outbox.

To see the previous or next message, select  (previous) or  (next) on the message screen.

\* 1: Message will not be read out depending on the language.

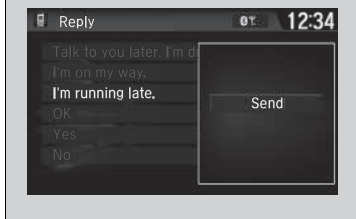
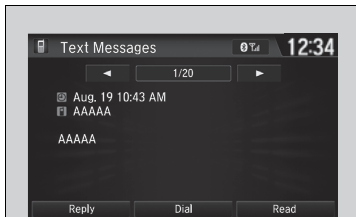
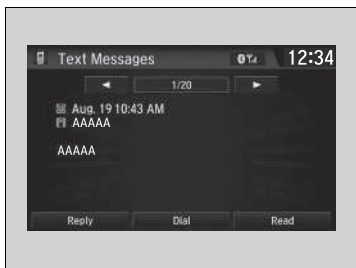
\* Not available on all models





### ■ Displaying e-mail messages

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 418
2. Select **Text/Email**.
  - ▶ Select **Select Account** if necessary.
3. Select a folder.
4. Select a message.
  - ▶ The e-mail message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.



### ■ Read or Stop reading a message

1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
  - ▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
    - ☒ **Displaying Messages\***, \*1 P. 439
2. Select **Stop** to stop reading.
  - Select **Read** again to start reading the message from the beginning.

### ■ Reply to a message

1. Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
  - ▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
    - ☒ **Displaying Messages\***, \*1 P. 439
2. Select **Reply**.
3. Select the reply message.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Send** to send the message.
  - ▶ **Message sent** appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

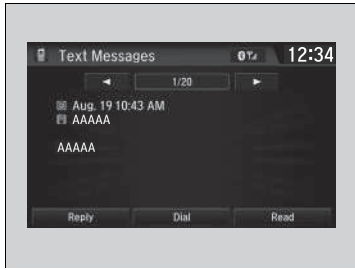
### ☒ Reply to a message

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:

- **Talk to you later, I'm driving.**
- **I'm on my way.**
- **I'm running late.**
- **OK**
- **Yes**
- **No**

You cannot add, edit, or delete reply messages.

Only certain phones receive and send messages when paired and connected. For a list of compatible phones ask a dealer.



■ **Making a call to a sender**

1. Go to the text message screen.
2. Select **Dial**.

# Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.



<b>Before Driving</b> .....	444	Front Sensor Camera* .....	488	<b>Parking Your Vehicle</b> .....	553
<b>Towing a Trailer</b> .....	448	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* .....	490	<b>Multi-View Rear Camera*</b> .....	563
<b>When Driving</b>		Road Departure Mitigation System* ..	505	<b>Refueling</b> .....	565
Starting the Engine .....	453, 456	Traffic Sign Recognition System* .....	510	<b>Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions</b> ....	568
Precautions While Driving.....	459	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)* ..	517		
Shifting .....	462	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System ..	524		
ECON Mode .....	465	Agile Handling Assist .....	526		
Auto Idle Stop.....	466	Blind spot information (BSI) System*....	527		
Adaptive Damper System* .....	472	Deflation Warning System.....	530		
Cruise Control* .....	473	<b>Models with LED headlights</b>			
Adjustable Speed Limiter.....	477	Adjusting Headlight Distribution .....	534		
Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	481	<b>Braking</b> .....	535		

\* Not available on all models

## Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

### Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
    - ▣ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 613
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

### Exterior Checks

#### NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

## Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  - ▶ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
    - **Load Limit** P. 447
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  - ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  - ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  - ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the hatch.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  - ▶ Adjust the head restraint\*, too.
    - **Adjusting the Seats** P. 209
    - **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints Positions** P. 212
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly for your driving.
  - ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
    - **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 206
    - **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 205

## Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or tow a trailer\*, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

### Models with headlight adjuster

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.

➤ **Headlight Adjuster\*** P. 194

### Models with automatic headlight adjusting system

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

\* Not available on all models

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  - ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  - **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 46
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  - ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
    - **Indicators** P. 94

## Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

➤ **Specifications** P. 694

### Load Limit

#### **WARNING**

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.



## Models with heating system

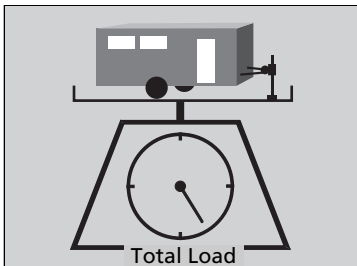
Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

## Models with climate control system

### Towing Preparation

#### Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.



#### ■ Total trailer weight

Do not exceed the maximum towing weight of the trailer and towbar (with/without brakes), luggage and everything in or on it.

Towing loads in excess of the maximum towing weight can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the engine and drivetrain.

#### » Towing Load Limits

### ⚠ WARNING

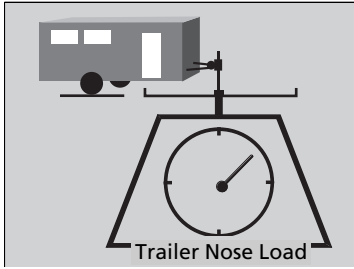
Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

**Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.**

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your luggage load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and then measure the tongue load with an appropriate scale or tongue gauge or estimate it based on luggage distribution. Refer to the trailer owner's manual for additional information.

Break-in Period.

Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 1,000 km (600 miles).



### ■ Towbar down load

The trailer nose load should never exceed 75 kg (165 lbs). This is the amount of weight the trailer puts on the towbar when it is fully-loaded. As a rule of thumb for trailer weights of less than 750 kg (1,653 lbs), the trailer nose load should be 10 percent of the total trailer package.

- Excessive trailer nose load reduces front tyre traction and steering control. Too little trailer nose load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
- To achieve a proper trailer nose load, start by loading 60% of the load towards the front of the trailer and 40% towards the rear. Readjust the load as needed.

### ▣ Towing Load Limits

If you tow a trailer in mountainous conditions, remember to reduce 10% of the combined vehicle weights from the maximum towing weight for every 1,000 metres (300 feet) of elevation.

Never exceed the maximum towing weight and specified load limit.

▣ **Specifications** P. 694

## ■ Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing equipment varies by the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you are towing.

### ■ Towbars

The towbar must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

### ■ Safety chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

### ■ Trailer brakes

If you are thinking of getting a trailer that has brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

### ■ Additional towing equipment

There may be laws requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if mirrors are not required in your locale, you should install special mirrors if visibility is restricted in any way.

### ■ Trailer light

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with the regulations of the country where you are driving. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.

## ► Towing Equipment and Accessories

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets the regulations of the country where you are driving.

Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

Consult your trailer maker for proper installation and setup of the equipment.

Improper installation and setup can affect the handling, stability, and braking performance of your vehicle.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

## Driving Safely with a Trailer\*

### Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.
  - ▣ **Towing Load Limits** P. 448
- Securely attach the towbar, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressure of the trailer tyres, including the spare.
- Check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirements before leaving home, because regulations may vary.
- Turn off the Auto Idle Stop system using the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button. The trailer weight can affect your vehicle's brake effectiveness if Auto Idle Stop is activated on a hill while towing a trailer.

### Towing Speeds and Gears

- Drive slower than normal.
  - Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.
- Either shift up or shift down indicator will come on at the best time to shift to a higher or lower gear for the better fuel economy.

#### ▶▶ Driving Safely with a Trailer\*

Operating speed when towing a trailer must not exceed 100 km/h (62 mph).

#### Parking

In addition to the normal precautions, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tyres.

We recommend you drive uphill of less than 12% slope. Follow the trailer association's recommendations for suitable roads.

Winds caused by passing large vehicles can sway your trailer, keep a constant speed and steer straight ahead.

Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when reversing.

#### ▶▶ Towing Speeds and Gears

When towing a fixed-sided trailer (e.g., camper), do not exceed 88 km/h (55 mph). At higher speeds, the trailer may sway or affect vehicle handling.

## ■ Turning and Braking

- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.

## ■ Driving in Hilly Terrain

- Monitor your temperature gauge. If it nears the upper level, turn off the climate control system and reduce speed. Pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine if necessary.

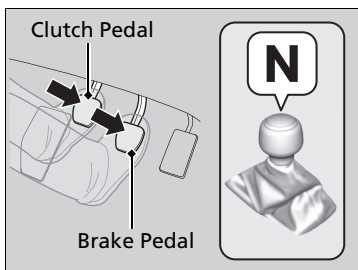
## ▣ Towing Speeds and Gears

The shift down indicator will not prompt to downshift to 1st gear. It is up to you to downshift to 1st gear to increase engine braking. Avoid sudden engine braking.

Road and traffic conditions may require you to shift at times other than those indicated.

Models without keyless access system

## Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
  - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.
2. Check that the shift lever is in **N**. Then depress the brake pedal with your right foot, and the clutch pedal with your left foot.
  - ▶ The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

### Starting the Engine

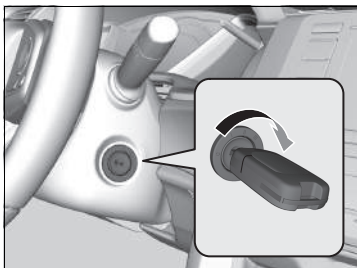
Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres (8,000 feet).

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, heating system\*/climate control system\*, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

\* Not available on all models



3. Wait until the glow plugs indicator goes off, then turn the ignition switch to START **III** without depressing the accelerator pedal.

#### ▶ Starting the Engine

Do not hold the key in START **III** for more than 10 seconds.

- If the engine does not start right away, wait for at least 30 seconds before trying again.
- If the engine starts, but then immediately stops, wait at least 30 seconds before repeating step 3 while gently depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal once the engine starts.

When the ambient temperature is extremely low, the engine peak power may be restricted at starting the engine. This is to help the fuel flow for the normal engine operation.

For proper lubrication, the engine must not be run above fast idle speed until the low oil pressure indicator goes off. Avoid harsh acceleration or labouring the engine before the normal operating temperature has been reached.

Do not wait until the engine start with the key in START **III**.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

▶ **Immobilizer System** P. 173

## Starting to Drive

### ■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Depress the clutch pedal, and shift to one of the forward gears when facing uphill, or **R** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

### ▣ Starting to Drive

If the engine stalls, fully depress the clutch pedal within three seconds. The engine may automatically restart under certain conditions. Otherwise, follow the standard procedure.

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

### ▣ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

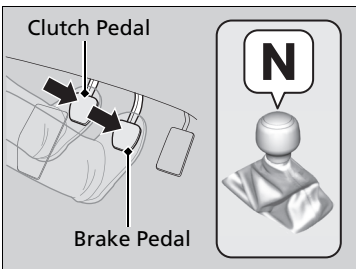
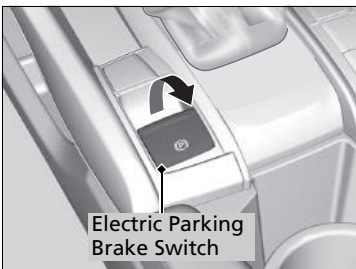
Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.



Models with keyless access system

## Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
  - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.
2. Check that the shift lever is in **N**. Then depress the brake pedal with your right foot, and the clutch pedal with your left foot.
  - ▶ The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

### Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres (8,000 feet).

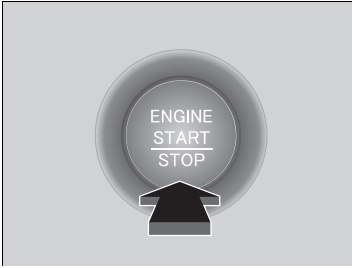
When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

Bring the keyless remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

▶ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**  
P. 663

The engine may not start if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.



3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.
  - ▶ If the glow plugs indicator comes on, keep the clutch pedal fully depressed and wait until the indicator goes off. The engine starts automatically.

## ■ Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

Idle the engine for 10 seconds before turning off the engine.

- If the shift lever is in **[N]**, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- If the shift lever is in any gear other than **[N]**, depress the clutch pedal, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

### ▶ Starting the Engine

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.

If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

▶ **Immobilizer System** P. 173

When the ambient temperature is extremely low, the engine peak power may be restricted at starting the engine. This is to help the fuel flow for the normal engine operation.

For proper lubrication, the engine must not be run above fast idle speed until the low oil pressure indicator goes off. Avoid harsh acceleration or labouring the engine before the normal operating temperature has been reached.

## ■ Starting to Drive

If the engine stalls, fully depress the clutch pedal within three seconds. The engine may automatically restart under certain conditions. Otherwise, follow the standard procedure.

### ■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Depress the clutch pedal, and shift to one of the forward gears when facing uphill, or **R** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

### ▶▶ Starting to Drive

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

### ▶▶ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

## Precautions While Driving

### In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

### Precautions While Driving

**CAUTION:** Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

### NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

## ■ In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large truck is passing by.

## 🔗 Precautions While Driving

If the ignition switch is turned to ACCESSORY **I**\*1 while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in **N**, as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 1,000 km (625 miles) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km (200 miles). You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## ■ In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

## ■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

## ☒ In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

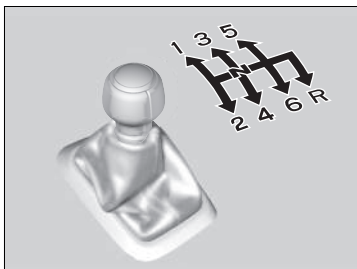
Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden engine braking can cause the tyres to skid.

## Shifting

### ■ Shift Lever Operation

Fully depress the clutch pedal to operate the shift lever and change gears, then slowly release the pedal.

Depress the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into **[R]**, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they do not “grind.”



When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause your clutch to wear out faster.

### ✕ Shift Lever Operation

#### NOTICE

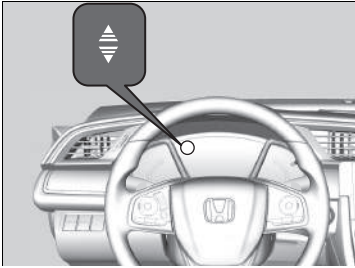
Do not shift to **[R]** before the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Shifting to **[R]** before stopping can damage the transmission.

#### NOTICE

Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer’s red zone. Should this occur, it can severely damage your engine.

If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer’s red zone. When this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

## Shift Up/Down Indicators



### Models with Honda Sensing

Come on to notify you that a gear change is recommended in order to maintain fuel-efficient driving or to prevent the engine from stalling.

### Models without Honda Sensing

Come on to notify you that a gear change is recommended in order to maintain fuel-efficient driving.

### All models

The shift up indicator: Comes on when upshifting is recommended.

The shift down indicator: Comes on when downshifting is recommended.

### Shift Up/Down Indicators

## ⚠ WARNING

The shift indicator is a guide to help you achieve better fuel economy. Never refer to the Shift Indicators when road and traffic conditions are unsuitable or when it may distract you.

This indicator will not prompt you to downshift to increase engine braking. It is up to you to downshift to increase engine braking when driving downhill.

Always shift down at the appropriate vehicle speed.

The shift down indicator does not come on when downshifting from **2** to **1**.

Ambient meter colour may change if you do not change gears when a shift indicator illuminates. This can result in a change in fuel economy.

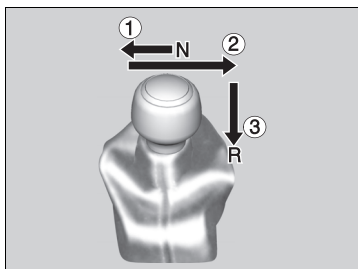
Road and traffic conditions may require you to shift at times other than those indicated.



## Reverse Lockout

The manual transmission has a lockout mechanism that stops you from accidentally shifting into **R** from a forward gear while the vehicle is moving at a certain speed.

If you cannot shift to **R** when the vehicle is stopped, do the following:

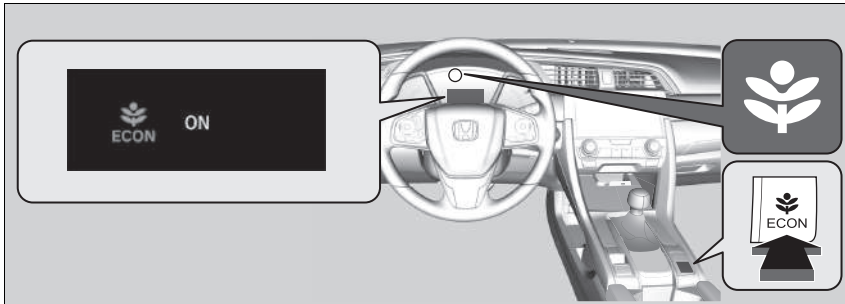


1. Depress the clutch pedal, move the shift lever all the way to the left, and shift to **R**.
2. If you still cannot shift into **R**, apply the parking brake, and turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY **I** or LOCK **O**\*1.
3. Depress the clutch pedal and shift into **R**.
4. Keep depressing the clutch pedal and start the engine.

Have the vehicle checked by a dealer if you have to go through this procedure repeatedly.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## ECON Mode



The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.  
The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the climate control system and cruise control\*.

### ▶▶ ECON Mode

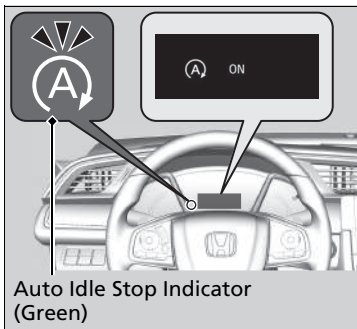
While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuations.

\* Not available on all models

## Auto Idle Stop

To help to maximise fuel economy, the engine automatically stops when the vehicle comes to a stop, depending on environmental and vehicle operating conditions. The indicator (green) comes on at this time. The engine then restarts once the vehicle is about to move again, or depending on environmental and vehicle conditions, and the indicator (green) goes off.

➤ **The Engine Automatically Restarts When:** P. 470



If the driver's door is opened while the indicator (green) is on, a buzzer sounds to notify you that the Auto Idle Stop function is in operation.

A message associated with Auto Idle Stop appears on the driver information interface.

➤ **Indicators** P. 94

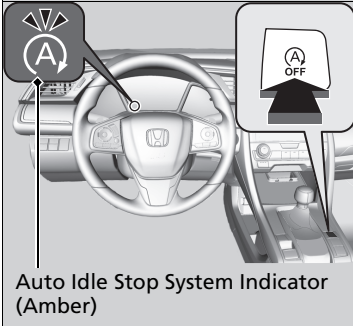
➤ **Customized Features\*** P. 143, 354

### ➤ Auto Idle Stop

The 12-volt battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. Using a 12-volt battery other than this specified type may shorten the battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

➤ **Specifications** P. 694

## Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF



Auto Idle Stop System Indicator  
(Amber)

To turn the Auto Idle Stop system off, press this button. The Auto Idle Stop system stops.

- ▶ Auto Idle Stop system will stop and the indicator (amber) will come on.

The Auto Idle Stop system is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF

Pressing the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button restarts the engine during the Auto Idle Stop activated.

### ■ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

After the vehicle moves forward, stopping with the brake, the clutch pedal fully depressed, the shift lever in **N**, and then the clutch pedal is released.

▶ To restart the engine automatically, depress the clutch pedal.

### ■ Auto Idle Stop does not activate when:

- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The engine coolant temperature is low or high.
- The vehicle comes to a stop again before the vehicle speed reaches 3 km/h (2 mph) after the engine starts.
- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- The engine is started with the bonnet open.
  - ▶ Turn off the engine. Close the bonnet before you restart the engine to activate Auto Idle Stop.
- The battery charge is low.
- The internal temperature of the battery is 5°C or less.
- **FRONT** is on (indicator on).
- The shift lever is in any position except **N**.
- The climate control system\* is in use, and the outside temperature is below -20°C or over 40°C.
- The climate control system\* is in use, and the temperature is set to **Hi** or **Lo**.

### ▶ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

Do not open a bonnet, during idling stop. If the bonnet is opened, the engine will not restart automatically.

In this case, restart the engine with the ignition switch\* or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button\*.

▶ **Starting the Engine** P. 453, 456

#### Models with keyless access system

Pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes the power mode to ACCESSORY even while Auto Idle Stop is in operation. Once in ACCESSORY, the engine no longer restarts automatically. Follow the standard procedure to start the engine.

▶ **Starting the Engine** P. 456

#### Models without keyless access system

Even if you turn the ignition switch to **START** **III** during the Auto Idle Stop activated, the engine does not start.

**■ Auto Idle Stop may not activate when:**

- The steering wheel is operated.
- The fan speed is high\*.
- The climate control system\* is in use, and there is a significant difference between the set temperature and the actual interior temperature.
- Humidity in the interior is high.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

The clutch pedal is depressed.

### ■ The engine automatically restarts even if the clutch pedal is not depressed with the transmission in **[N]** when:

- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- The pressure on the brake pedal is repeatedly applied and released slightly during a stop.
- The battery charge becomes low.
- A steering wheel is operated.

## ▣ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

If you are using an electronic device during Auto Idle Stop, the device may temporarily be turned off when the engine restarts.

The engine does not restart automatically when there is a problem in the system. Follow the normal procedure to start the engine.

▣ **Starting the Engine** P. 453, 456

The engine does not restart automatically when:

- The driver's seat belt is unlatched. To keep Auto Idle Stop activated, fasten your seat belt immediately.
- The shift lever is moved from **[N]** to any other position.  
Shift to **[N]**.

▣ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 117

When the system stops operating, follow the normal procedure to start the engine.

▣ **Starting the Engine** P. 453, 456


## ■ When indicator light (Green) blinks in Auto Idle Stop

Fully depress the clutch pedal.

- ▶ The engine automatically restarts.

## ☒ When indicator light (Green) blinks in Auto Idle Stop

The indicator starts blinking rapidly under the following conditions:

-  button is pressed.
- When the climate control system\* is in use and moisture builds up inside the vehicle.
- When the climate control system\* is in use and the difference between the set temperature and the actual temperature inside the vehicle becomes significant.

\* Not available on all models



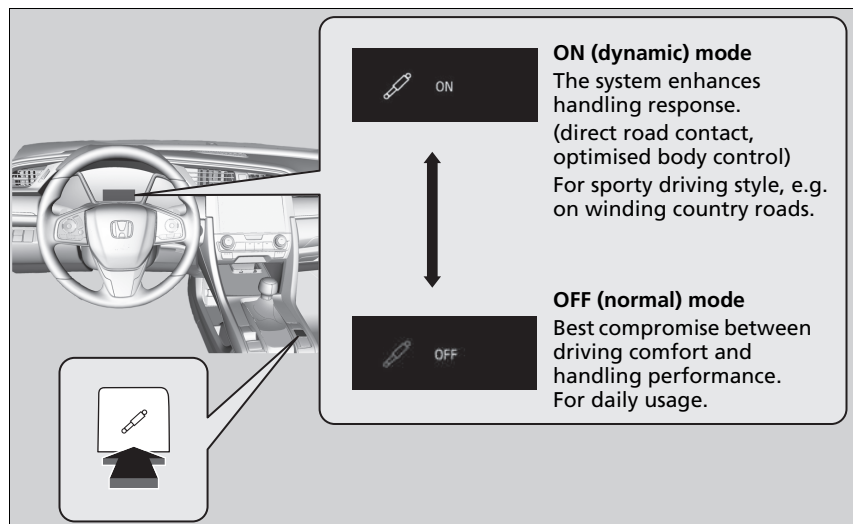
## Adaptive Damper System\*

Constantly controls your vehicle's dampers according to current road conditions, vehicle speed and steering operation.

You can switch between the dynamic and normal mode, according to your driving taste.

Press the adaptive damper system button and select **ON** (dynamic) or **OFF** (normal) mode. The current mode is displayed on the driver information interface.

📄 **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 117



### 📄 Adaptive Damper System\*

The adaptive damper system remains in the previous mode next time you set the power mode to ON.

## Cruise Control\*

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on motorways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

### When to use

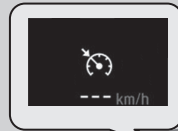
- Vehicle speed for cruise control: Desired speed in a range above roughly 30 km/h (18 mph) ~

Always keep sufficient distance between you and the vehicle in front of you

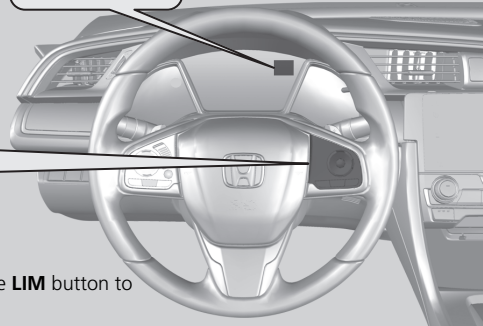


### How to use

- Press the **MAIN** button on the steering wheel



**The indicator is on in the instrument panel**  
Cruise control is ready to use.



If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to switch to cruise control.

### ⚠ Cruise Control\*

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.

It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

When not using cruise control: Turn off cruise control by pressing the **MAIN** button.

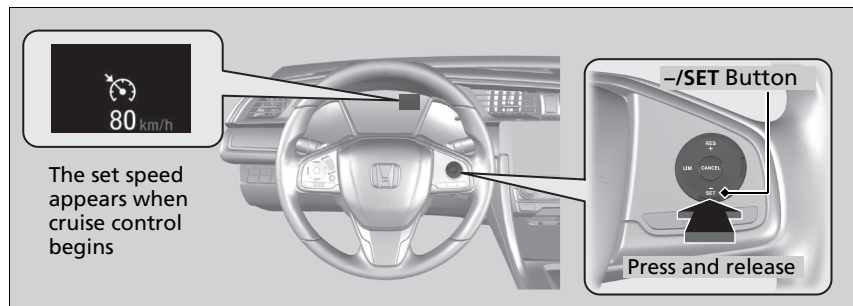
Setting the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) turns off cruise control automatically.

While in ECON mode, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

You cannot use the cruise control and the adjustable speed limiter at the same time.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

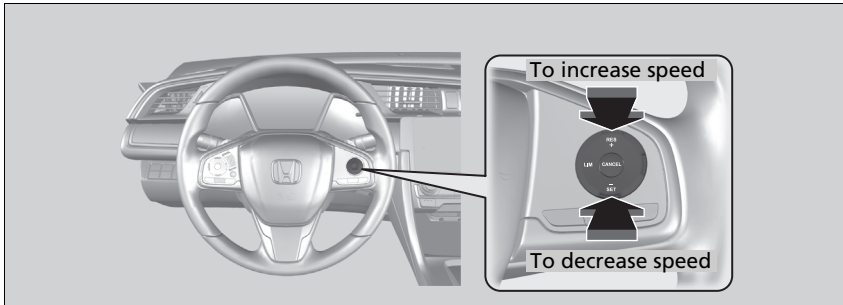
The moment you release the **-/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The set speed is displayed.

When you use cruise control, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.

By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

## ■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.

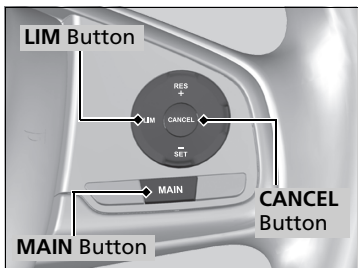


- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h or 10 mph accordingly.

## ▣ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **-/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

## ■ To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the **LIM** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal for five seconds or more.

The displayed set speed goes off.

## » To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:

After cruise control has been cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 30 km/h (18 mph) or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

- When vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (18 mph)
- When the **MAIN** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 25 km/h (16 mph) or less, cruise control is cancelled automatically.

## Adjustable Speed Limiter

This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.

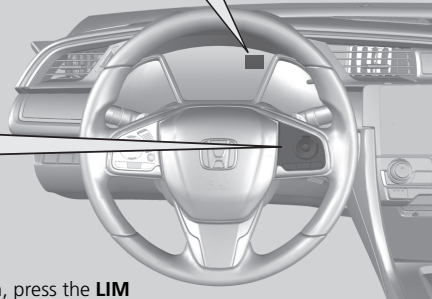
The vehicle speed limit can be set from about 30 km/h (18 mph) to about 250 km/h (156 mph).

### How to use

■ Press the **MAIN** button on the steering wheel



The indicator is on in the instrument panel  
Adjustable speed limiter is ready to use.



If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to switch to the adjustable speed limiter.

### Adjustable Speed Limiter

#### ⚠ WARNING

Adjustable Speed Limiter has limitations. It is always your responsibility to adjust the vehicle speed to obey the actual speed limit, and safely operate the vehicle.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Do not depress the accelerator pedal more than necessary. Maintain an appropriate accelerator pedal position depending on the vehicle speed.

The adjustable speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

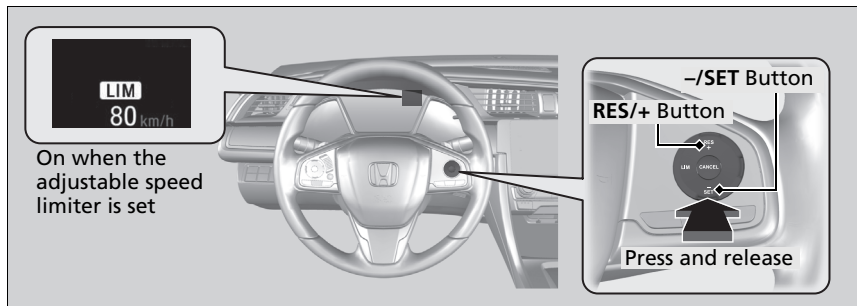
When not using the adjustable speed limiter: Turn off the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the **MAIN** button.

You cannot use the adjustable speed limiter and the cruise control\*/Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)\*/ Intelligent Speed Limiter\* at the same time.

When the engine speed slows down, try to downshift.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ To Set the Speed Limit



- Take your foot off the pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.  
The moment you release the **-/SET** button, the speed limit is fixed, and the adjustable speed limiter is set. The speed limit is displayed.
- You can set the previously set speed limit by pressing the **RES/+** button.

## ▶▶ To Set the Speed Limit

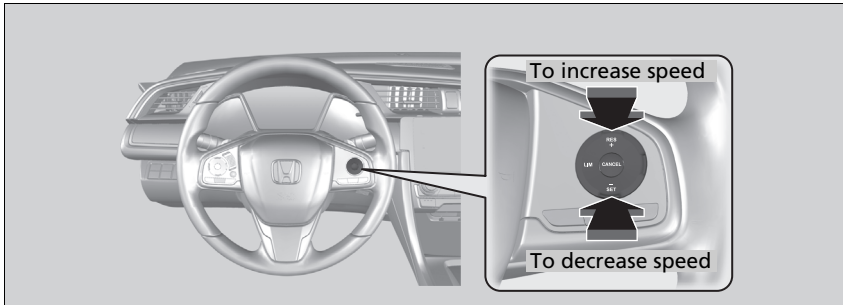
If you set the speed limit while travelling at less than 30 km/h (18 mph), the speed limit is set to 30 km/h (18 mph).

The beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h (2 mph) or more on a steep descent.

The adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed if it is higher than the previously set speed limit when you press the **RES/+** button.

## ■ To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- If you keep the button pressed, the speed limit increases or decreases in increments of 10 km/h or 10 mph every 0.5 second until system limit is reached.
- The vehicle may accelerate or decelerate until the set speed is reached.

## ■ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal completely.

- ▶ The displayed limit speed blinks.
- ▶ The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

### ▣ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

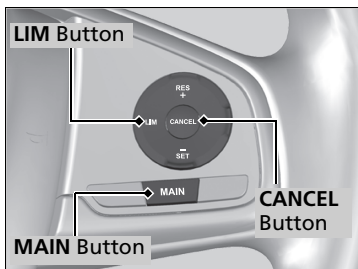
The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the accelerator pedal depressed completely.

The adjustable speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

*Continued*



## ■ To Cancel



To cancel the adjustable speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

## ▶▶ To Cancel

The adjustable speed limiter changes into cruise control\*/Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)\*/Intelligent Speed Limiter\* if the **LIM** button is pressed.



If there is a problem with the system when you are using the adjustable speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The adjustable speed limiter will be turned off.

Models with traffic sign recognition system

## Intelligent Speed Limiter

Automatically sets the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. And the speed limit cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal. If you fully depress the accelerator the speed limit can be exceeded.

📄 **Traffic Sign Recognition System\*** P. 510

📄 Intelligent Speed Limiter

### ⚠️ WARNING

Intelligent Speed Limiter has limitations. The Intelligent Speed Limiter may set itself to a speed above or below the actual speed limit, or may not work, particularly where the traffic sign recognition system does not operate correctly or where a road has no speed limit signs. It is always your responsibility to adjust the speed to obey the actual speed limit and to safely operate the vehicle.

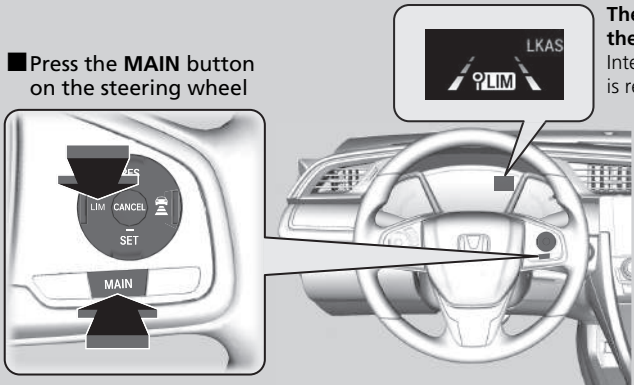
Depending on the amount of depression of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will accelerate until it reaches the speed identified by the traffic sign recognition system.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*

**How to use**

■ Press the **MAIN** button on the steering wheel



The indicator is on in the instrument panel Intelligent speed limiter is ready to use.

If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to change it to the intelligent speed limiter.

### ▶ Intelligent Speed Limiter

The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be detected, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.

#### ▶ Traffic Sign Recognition System \* P. 510

If the intelligent speed limiter is set to the wrong speed limit, try one of the following:

To cancel

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

To exceed the speed limit temporarily

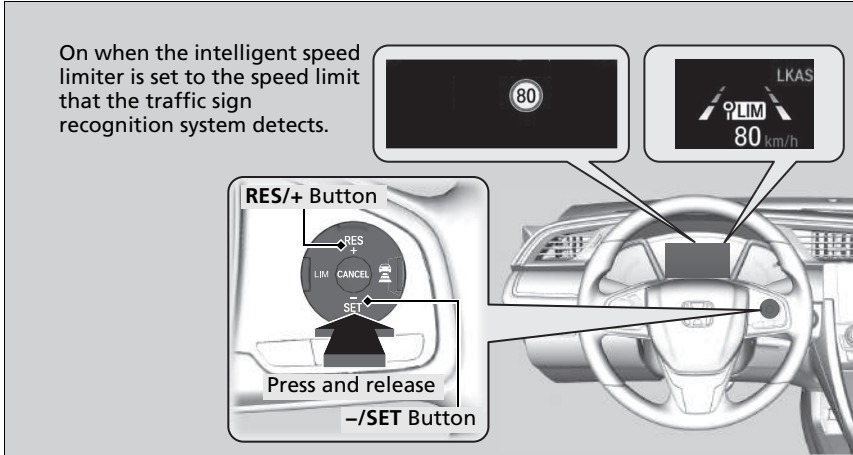
- Depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

The intelligent speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

When not using the intelligent speed limiter, turn off the intelligent speed limiter by pressing the **MAIN** button.

You cannot use the intelligent speed limiter and ACC or adjustable speed limiter at the same time.

## ■ To Set the Speed Limit



- The moment you release the **-/SET** button or **RES/+** button, the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. The speed limit is displayed.

## ▶▶ Intelligent Speed Limiter

When the engine speed slows down, try to downshift.

Do not use the intelligent speed limiter in areas of different units from the display unit of the intelligent speed limiter.

### Right-hand drive type

Change the displayed measurement of the set vehicle speed to the same units as the driving areas.

▶ **Speedometer** P. 136

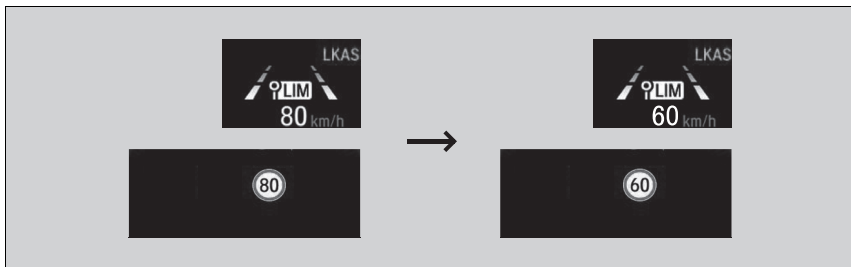
## ▶▶ To Set the Speed Limit

If you set the intelligent speed limiter when the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects is less than 30 km/h (20 mph), the speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause.

If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit or less. If necessary, slow down by depressing the brake pedal. And the beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h (2 mph) or more.

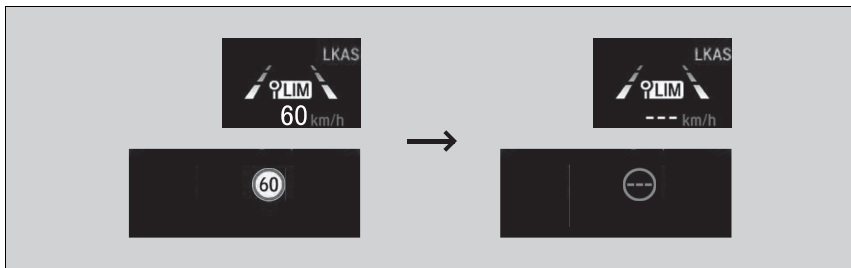
■ **When the traffic sign recognition system detects the new speed limit sign**

The intelligent speed limiter is set to the new speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.



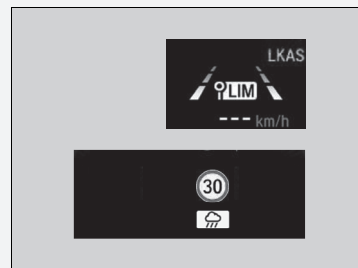
■ **The speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause if there is no speed limit sign in the screen of the traffic sign recognition system when:**

- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- Your vehicle enters/exits motorway or highway.
- You make a turn with a turn signal to change direction at an intersection.



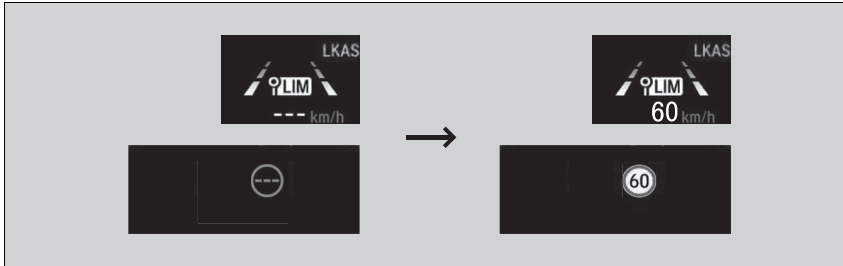
▶▶ To Set the Speed Limit

The intelligent speed limiter may also switch to pause when the traffic sign recognition system detects only additional speed limit signs.



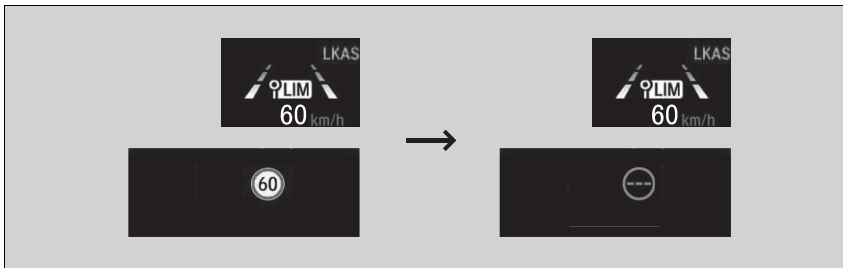
■ **When the traffic sign recognition system detects the speed limit sign while the intelligent speed limiter is paused**

The speed limitation function and warning function will be resumed automatically.



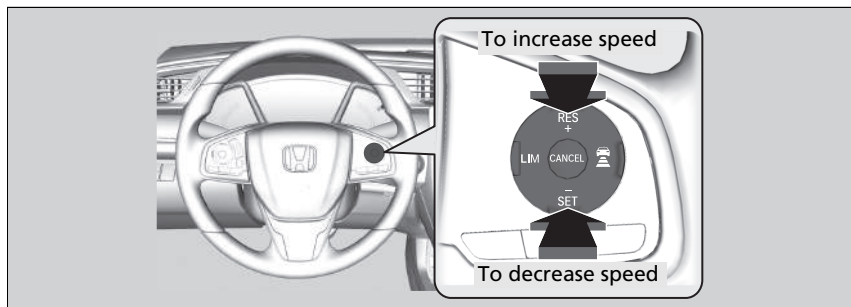
■ **When the traffic sign recognition system does not detect the speed limit sign for a time while the intelligent speed limiter is activated**

While driving, in addition to when the traffic sign recognition system detects no speed limit sign, the traffic sign recognition system may display no speed limit. But, intelligent speed limiter functions continue.



### ■ To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the speed limit is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- You can increase the speed limit until +10 km/h or +5 mph on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can decrease the speed limit until -10 km/h or -5 mph on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can accelerate until the set speed is reached. If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit.

### ■ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

- ▶ The displayed speed limit blinks.  
The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

### ▣ To Adjust the Speed Limit

A negative or positive offset with respect to the speed limit will be reset automatically when the traffic sign recognition system detects the new speed limit sign.

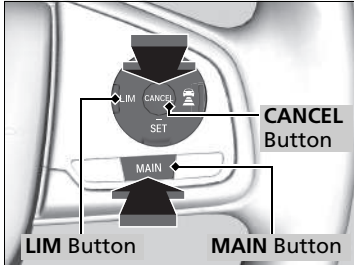
You cannot decrease the speed limit less than 30 km/h (18 mph).

### ▣ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the accelerator pedal depressed completely.

The intelligent speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

## To Cancel

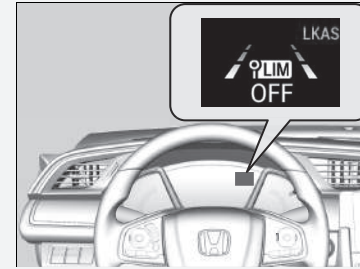


To cancel the intelligent speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

## ▶▶ To Cancel

The intelligent speed limiter changes into cruise control if the **LIM** button is pressed.



If there is a problem with the system or traffic sign recognition system when you are using the intelligent speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The intelligent speed limiter will be turned off.

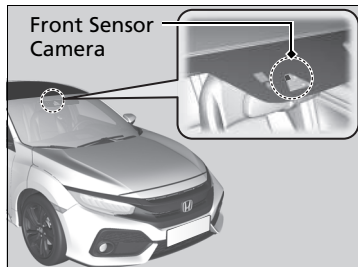
▶▶ **Traffic Sign Recognition System**\* P. 510



## Front Sensor Camera\*

The camera, used in systems such as Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Traffic Sign Recognition System, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), and auto high-beam, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

### Camera Location and Handling Tips



This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

### Front Sensor Camera\*


Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, bonnet, or front grill that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally.


After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

## ▶ Front Sensor Camera\*

If the  message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the air flow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the  message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)\*

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

### ▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)\*

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Improper use of ACC can lead to a crash.

Use ACC only when driving on motorways and in good weather conditions.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

ACC has limited braking capability. When your vehicle speed drops below 25 km/h (15 mph), ACC will automatically cancel and no longer will apply your vehicle's brakes. Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal when conditions require.

#### **Important Reminder**

As with any system, there are limits to ACC. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

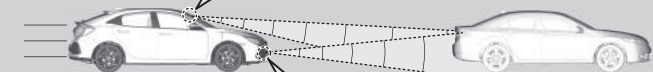
Be careful not to severely impact the radar sensor cover.

When the engine speed slows down, try to downshift.

When the engine speed goes up, try to upshift. You can maintain the set speed if you change gear within five seconds.

#### When to use

The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

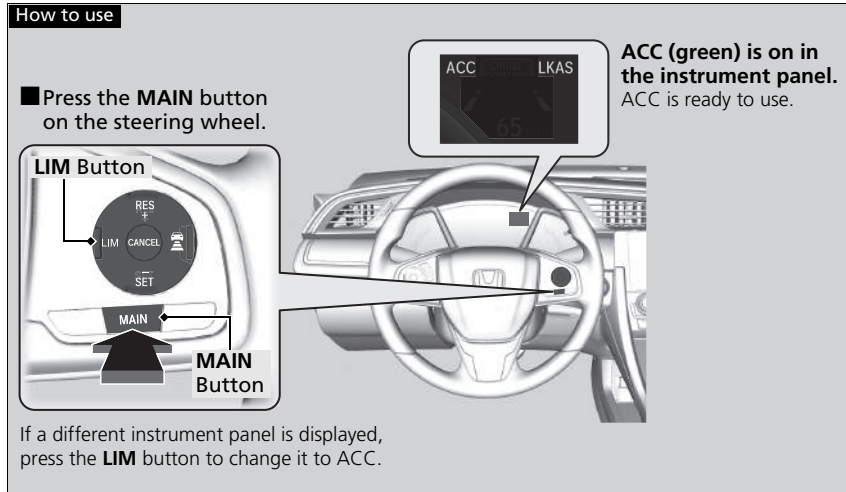


The radar sensor is in the lower bumper.

■ Vehicle speed for ACC: Desired speed in a range above roughly 30 km/h (18 mph) ~

■ Shift position for ACC: in **2** or higher position

## ■ How to activate the system



### ▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)\*

ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

▶ **ACC Conditions and Limitations** P. 496

When not using ACC: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

When the **MAIN** button is pressed, both ACC and the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are either turned on or off.

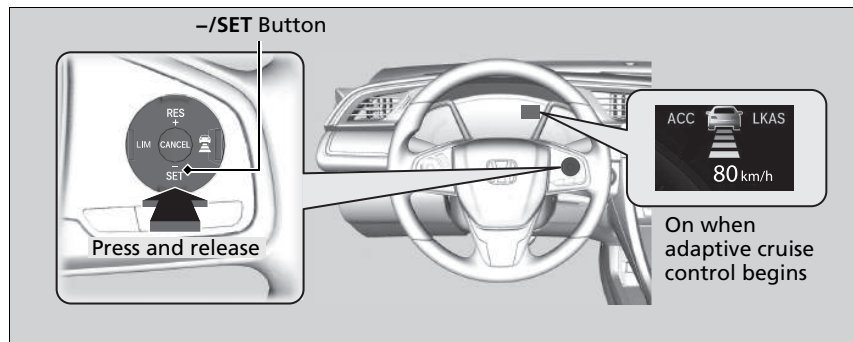
Do not use ACC under the following conditions:

- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Road Departure Mitigation, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) may come on after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ To Set the Vehicle Speed

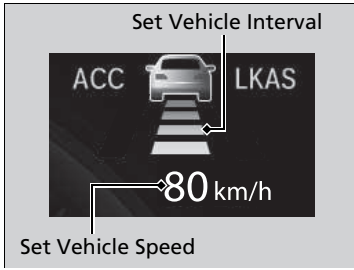


Take your foot off the pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

## ▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)\*

It may take more time to accelerate in ECON mode.

You cannot use the ACC and the adjustable speed limiter or intelligent speed limiter\* at the same time.



The moment you release the **–/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC begins.

When ACC starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the driver information interface.

When you use ACC, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.

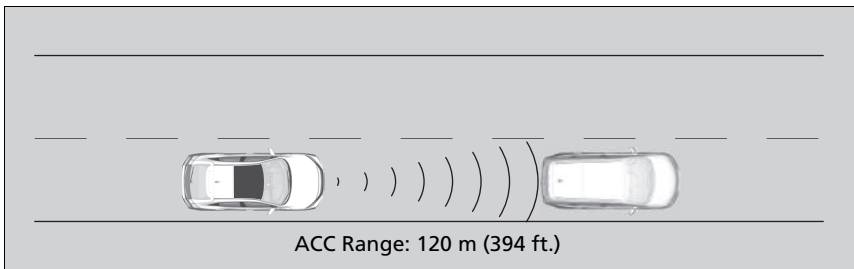
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

## ■ When in Operation

### ■ There is a vehicle ahead

ACC monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

🔍 **To Set or Change Following-interval** P. 499



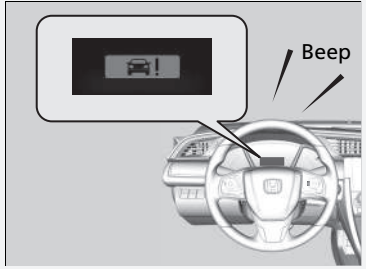
ACC LKAS  
80 km/h  
A vehicle icon appears on the driver information interface

When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the radar and the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

## 🔍 When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface.

Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



### ■ There is no vehicle ahead



A vehicle icon with dotted-line contour appears on the driver information interface

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.

If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

### ■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC range.

ACC stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC range.

### ▶▶ When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC detecting range. Change the **ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep** setting.

▶ **Customized Features\*** P. 143, 354

### Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC. Additionally, ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

▶ **ACC Conditions and Limitations** P. 496



## ACC Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the **ACC** indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

📄 **Front Sensor Camera**\* P. 488

### ■ Environmental conditions

Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

### ■ Roadway conditions

Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

### ■ Vehicle conditions

- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (Wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre\*, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- When the lower bumper is dirty.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains\* are installed.

## ACC Conditions and Limitations

The radar sensor for ACC is shared with the Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS).

📄 **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)**\* P. 543

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

📄 **Front Sensor Camera**\* P. 488

Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.

Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the **MAIN** button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

**■ Detection limitations**

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

**▣ ACC Conditions and Limitations**

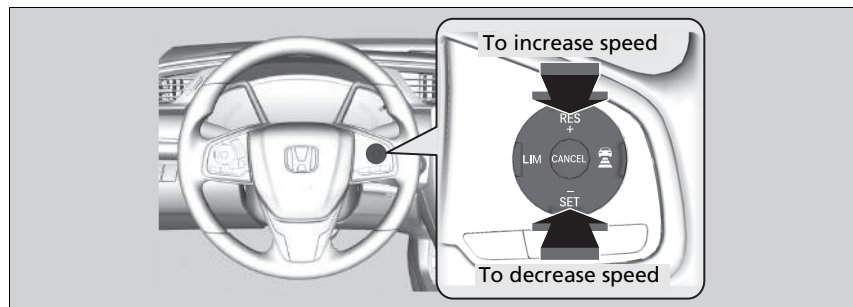
Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

## ■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



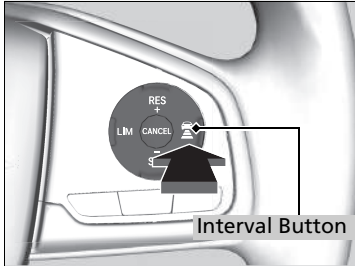
- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h or 10 mph accordingly.


## ▶ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **-/SET** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

## To Set or Change Following-interval



Press the  (interval) button to change ACC following-interval.

Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

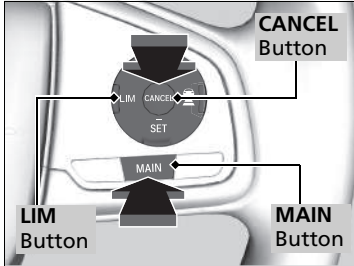
The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h (50 mph)	104 km/h (65 mph)
Short		25 meters 82 feet 1.1 sec	31.5 meters 103 feet 1.1 sec
Middle		33 meters 108 feet 1.5 sec	43.4 meters 142 feet 1.5 sec
Long		47 meters 154 feet 2.1 sec	60.8 meters 199 feet 2.1 sec
Extra Long		62 meters 203 feet 2.8 sec	81.4 meters 267 feet 2.8 sec

▶ To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

## To Cancel



To cancel ACC, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
  - ▶ ACC indicator goes off.
- Press the **LIM** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal for five seconds or more.

## ▶▶ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/+** button when driving at a speed of at least 30 km/h (18 mph) or more.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC has been turned off using the **MAIN** button. Press the **MAIN** button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

*Continued*

### ■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC is automatically cancelled.

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor in the lower bumper gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA or CMBS is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA system indicator comes on.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC range is too close to your vehicle.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- When the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.
- When passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel.
- Ignoring shift down indication shown in the tachometer display will cancel the ACC after about 10 seconds.
- The engine speed goes into the tachometer's red zone.
- The engine speed goes to below 1,000 rpm.
- You shift into neutral temporarily when shifting into a higher or lower gear.

### ⌘ Automatic cancellation

Even though ACC has been automatically cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves, then press the **-/SET** button.

## ■ Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Function

Provides an early prediction for a cut-in situation. The system detects that a vehicle running in the adjacent slower lane has an intention to cut in front of you and adjusts the speed of your vehicle in advance while ACC is activated.

### ■ How the system works

The radar sensor in the lower bumper detects vehicles ahead of you including those in the adjacent lane, and the camera behind the rearview mirror detects the lane markings.

This system improves ACC's following/tracking property; it adjusts your vehicle speed in advance predicting a situation that a vehicle running in the adjacent slower lane catches up with a slower vehicle ahead of it and changes the lane to cut in front of you early.

When such a cut-in situation is predicted, your vehicle speed decreases a little. When detected, your vehicle speed decreases according to the vehicle cutting in front of you.

As the speed is adjusted by the system, the cut in vehicle icon appears on the driver information interface to indicate that the system is activated.

Left-hand drive type is shown.



### ■ How the system activates

When a vehicle cuts in front of you is going faster than the vehicle ahead of it, and your vehicle is going faster than the cut-in vehicle (i.e., when you need to slow down), ACC predicts the cutting-in and adjust your vehicle speed.

The system activates when all the following conditions are met:

- When ACC is activated.
- When you are driving on a multi-lane road.
- When your vehicle speed is between about 80 km/h (50 mph) and about 180 km/h (112 mph).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- When a vehicle cuts in from a slower lane.

### ■ Intelligent adaptive cruise control on and off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

📖 **Customized Features\*** P. 143, 354

### 📖 Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Function

When traffic changes from right hand side to left hand side, driving on a road where there is oncoming traffic for some distance automatically switches the lane to be detected from right to left.

Intelligent adaptive cruise control may not activate under the following conditions:

- When the speed difference between the cut-in vehicle and the vehicle ahead of it in the adjacent lane\*<sup>1</sup> is small
- When the speed difference between the cut-in vehicle and your vehicle is small (i.e., when speed adjustment is not required)
- When a vehicle simply cuts in front of your vehicle with no vehicle ahead in the adjacent lane\*<sup>1</sup>
- When a vehicle cuts in from a faster lane\*<sup>1</sup>

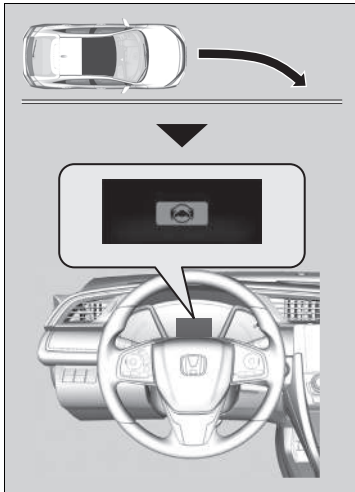
\*1: Refers to a right hand lane for right hand traffic, left hand lane for left hand traffic.

\* Not available on all models

## Road Departure Mitigation System \*

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

### How the System Works



The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

▶ **Customized Features** \* P. 143

As a visual alert,  appears on the driver information interface.

If the system determines that its steering input is insufficient to keep your vehicle on the roadway, it may apply braking.

▶ Braking is applied only when the lane markings are solid continuous lines.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you.

\* Not available on all models

### ▶▶ Road Departure Mitigation System \*

#### Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.

Over-reliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ **Front Sensor Camera** \* P. 488

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

▶ **Road Departure Mitigation Conditions and Limitations** P. 508


There are times when you may not notice Road Departure Mitigation functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

## ■ How the System Activates

The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 185 km/h (45 and 115 mph).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.
- The vehicle is not accelerating or braking, and the steering wheel is not being turned.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.

## ☒ How the System Activates

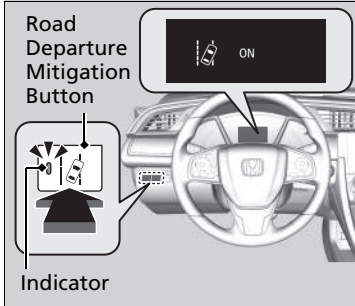
The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the  indicator comes and stays on.

### ☒ Indicators P. 94

Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Not driven within a traffic lane.
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

## Road Departure Mitigation On and Off



Press the Road Departure Mitigation button to turn the system on and off.

- ▶ The indicator in the button comes on and the message appears on the driver information interface when the system is on.

### ▶▶ Road Departure Mitigation On and Off

When you have selected **Warning Only** from the customized options using the driver information interface or audio/information screen the system does not operate the steering wheel and braking.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Road Departure Mitigation, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) may come on after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ Road Departure Mitigation Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

### ■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre\*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains\* are installed.

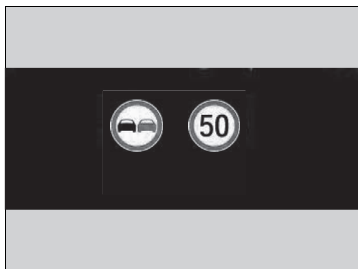
\* Not available on all models

## Traffic Sign Recognition System \*

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit and that overtaking is prohibited, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the driver information interface.

### How the System Works

When the camera located behind the rearview mirror captures traffic signs while driving, the system displays the ones that are recognised as designated for your vehicle. The sign icon will be displayed until the vehicle reaches a predetermined time and distance.



The sign icon also may switch to another one, or disappear when:

- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- Your vehicle enters/exists motorway or highway.
- You make a turn with a turn signal to change direction at an intersection.

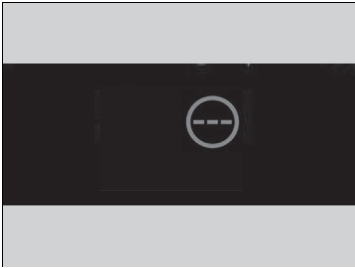
### ▶▶ Traffic Sign Recognition System \*

The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be displayed, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.

Do not rely too much on the system. Always drive at speeds appropriate for the road conditions.



Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally. Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

If the system does not detect any traffic signs while you are driving, the image below may appear.





☒ Traffic Sign Recognition System\*

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

If  appears, the Traffic Sign Recognition System does not work, and  will be displayed.

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the air flow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If  appears, the Traffic Sign Recognition System does not work, and  will be displayed.

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

\* Not available on all models



## ■ Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

The Traffic Sign Recognition system may not be able to recognise the traffic sign in the following cases.


### ■ Vehicle conditions

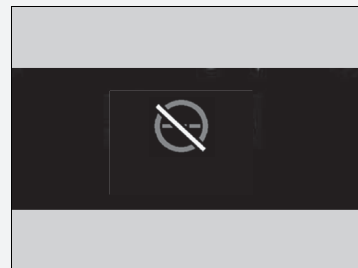
- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- There are portions remaining to be wiped.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre\*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- When you drive in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night, in dark areas such as long tunnels.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- A vehicle in front of you is travelling flying up spray or snow.

## ▶▶ Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

When the Traffic Sign Recognition System malfunctions,  appears on the driver information interface. If this message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



**■ The position or the condition of the traffic sign**

- A sign is hard to be found since it is in a complicated area.
- A sign is located far away from your vehicle.
- A sign is located where the beam of the headlight is hard to reach.
- A sign is on a corner or bend in the road.
- Faded or bent signs.
- Rotated or damaged signs.
- A sign is covered with mud, snow, or frost.
- A part of the sign is hidden by the trees, or the sign itself is hidden by a vehicle and others.
- Light (a streetlight) or a shadow is reflected on the surface of the sign.
- A sign is too bright or too dark (an electric sign).
- A sign of a small size.

**■ Other conditions**

- When you are driving at a high speed.

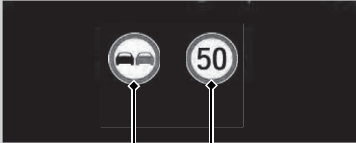
The Traffic Sign Recognition System may not operate correctly, such as displaying a sign that does not follow the actual regulation for the roadway or does not exist at all in the following cases.

- ▶ A speed limit sign may display at a higher or lower speed than the actual speed limit.
- There is a supplementary sign with further information such as weather, time, vehicle type, etc.
- Figures on the sign are hard to read (electric signs, numbers on the sign are blurred, etc.).
- A sign is in the vicinity of the lane you are driving even though it is not for the lane (speed limit sign situated at the junction between the side road and the main road, etc.).
- There are things that look similar to the colour or shape of the recognition object (similar sign, electric sign, signboard, structure, etc.).
- A lorry or another large vehicle with a sticker of the speed limit sign on the back are travelling in front of you.

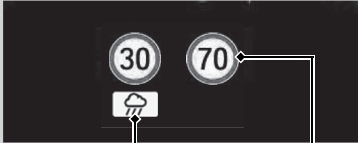
## ■ Signs Displayed on the Driver Information Interface

Two traffic signs can be simultaneously displayed next to each other when detected. The speed limit sign icon is displayed on the right half of the screen. The overtaking prohibition sign icon appears on the left. Any additional sign that indicates speed limit based on weather (rain, snow, etc.) or specific period of time can appear on either side.

■ When main mode is selected




Overtaking Prohibition Sign\*1      Speed Limit Sign



Additional Speed Limit Sign Based on Conditions\*2      Speed Limit Sign

■ When main mode is not selected



Speed Limit Sign

Overtaking Prohibition Sign\*1

Depending on situation, \*1 can be replaced with \*2, or \*2 can appear on the right side.

■ **Selecting to display traffic signs when main mode is off**

You can continue displaying reduced-size traffic sign icon on the driver information interface even while the main mode is not selected.

➤ **Customized Features\*** P. 143, 354

## Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)\*

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

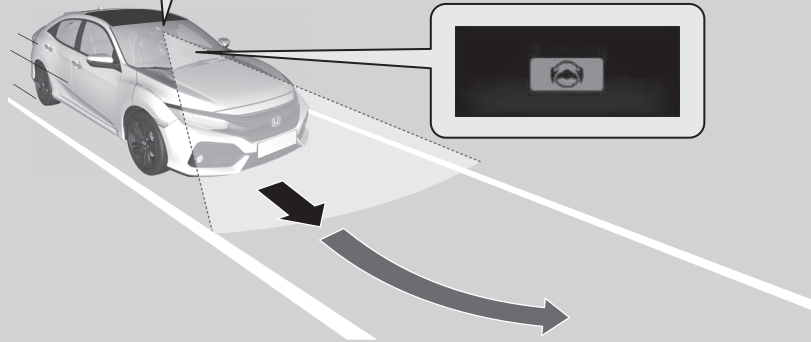
### ■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.



■ Front Sensor Camera  
Monitors the lane lines

■ Tactile and visual alerts  
Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

### ▶ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)\*

#### Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

▶ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 117

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.

It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

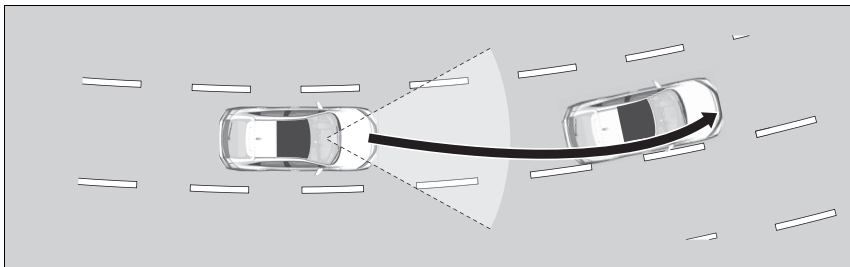
▶ **LKAS Conditions and Limitations** P. 522

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ **Front Sensor Camera\*** P. 488

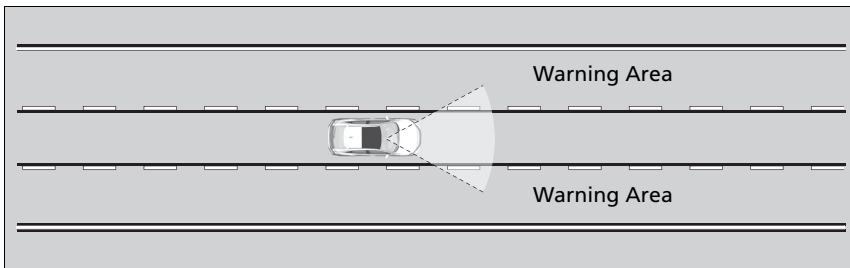
### ■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane, when the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



### ■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration as well as a warning display.



### ☒ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)\*

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

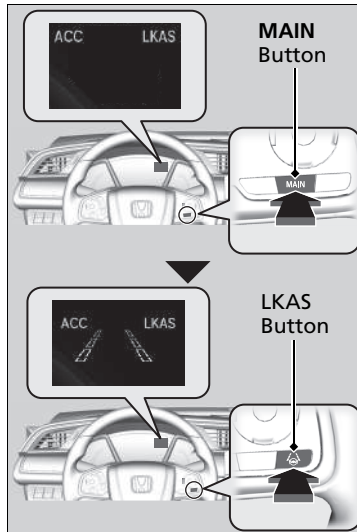
When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

## When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle speed is between 72 and 185 km/h (45 and 115 mph).
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.

## How to activate the system



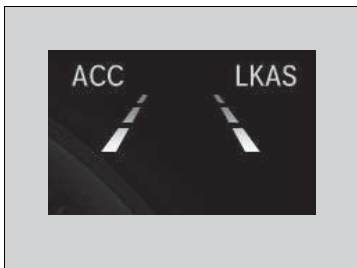
1. Press the **MAIN** button.
  - ▶ The LKAS is on in the driver information interface.  
The system is ready to use.
2. Press the LKAS button.
  - ▶ Lane outlines appear on the driver information interface.  
The system is activated.

## When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts toward either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued

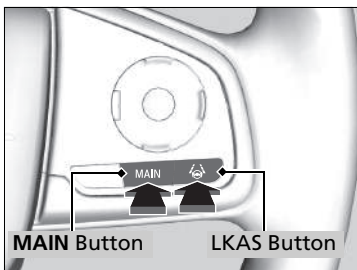




3. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.

- ▶ The dotted outer lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

### To Cancel



To cancel the LKAS:  
Press the **MAIN** or LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

### ▶▶ To Cancel

Pressing the **MAIN** button also turns ACC on and off.



When the LKAS is suspended, the lane lines on the driver information interface change to contour lines, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

### ■ The system operation is suspended if you:

- Set the wipers to continuous operation.
  - ▶ Turning the wipers off resumes the LKAS.

#### Models with automatic intermittent wipers

- Set the wiper switch to **AUTO** the wipers operate continuously.
  - ▶ The LKAS resumes when the wipers stop or operate intermittently.

#### All models

- Decrease the vehicle speed to 64 km/h (40 mph) or less.
  - ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to 72 km/h (45 mph) or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  - ▶ The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.

### ■ The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is quickly turned.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h (115 mph).

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ **The LKAS may automatically be cancelled when:**

- The camera temperature gets extremely high or low.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.

The beeper sounds if the LKAS is automatically cancelled.

## ■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ **Environmental conditions**

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

**■ Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

**■ Vehicle conditions**

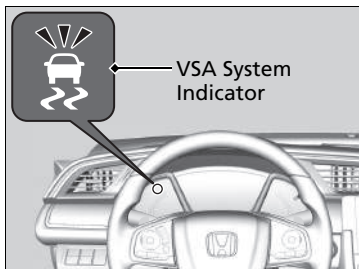
- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre\*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.

\* Not available on all models

## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

### VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

### Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

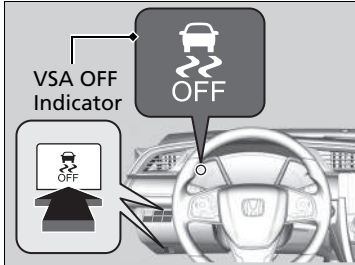
The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)\*, Road Departure Mitigation\*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)\* may come on after re-connecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.


VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

## VSA On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/ features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.


Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the  (VSA OFF) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the  button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

## Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes the front wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

### Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

## Blind spot information (BSI) System\*

Is designed to detect vehicles in specified alert zones adjacent to your vehicle, particularly in harder to see areas commonly known as “blind spots.” When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on for a few seconds, providing assistance when you change lanes.

### Blind spot information (BSI) System\*

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on the blind spot information system when changing lanes.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

#### **Important Safety Reminder**

Like all assistance systems, BSI has limitations. Over reliance on BSI may result in a collision.

The BSI alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

- A vehicle does not stay in the alert zone for more than two seconds.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle you are passing is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.
- A vehicle running in the adjacent lane is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.



## ■ How the system works

- Radar sensors detect a vehicle in the alert zone when your vehicle is moving forward at 20 km/h (12 mph) or faster.

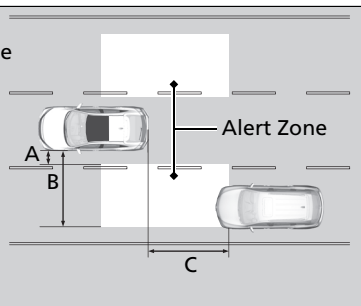
### Alert zone range

A: Approx. 0.5 m (1.6 ft.)

B: Approx. 3 m (10 ft.)


C: Approx. 3 m (10 ft.)

Radar Sensors:  
underneath the  
rear bumper  
corners




## ▶▶ Blind spot information (BSI) System\*

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur.

- The BSI alert indicator may not come on due to obstruction (splashes, etc.) even without the  driver information interface appearing.
- The BSI alert indicator may come on even with the message appearing.

You can change the setting for BSI.

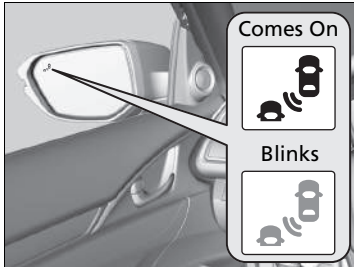
 **Customized Features** P. 354

Turn the system off when towing a trailer\*.

The system may not work properly for the following reasons:

- The added mass tilts the vehicle and changes the radar coverage.
- The trailer itself can be detected by the radar sensors, causing the BSI alert indicators to come on.

## ■ When the system detects a vehicle



### BSI Alert Indicator:

Located on the outside rearview mirror on both sides.

### Comes on when:

- A vehicle enters the alert zone from behind to overtake you with a speed difference of no more than 50 km/h (31 mph) from your vehicle.
- You pass a vehicle with a speed difference of no more than 20 km/h (12 mph).

### Blinks and a beeper sounds when:

You move the turn signal lever in the direction of the detected vehicle. The beeper sounds three times.

## ▶▶ Blind spot information (BSI) System\*

BSI may be adversely affected when:

- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, parked vehicles, building, wall, etc) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well, such as a motorcycle, is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up external electrical interference.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed.
- The orientation of the sensors has been changed.
- In bad weather (rain, snow, and fog).
- Driving on a bumpy road.
- Making a short turn that slightly tilts the vehicle.

For a proper BSI operation:

- Always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Take your vehicle to a dealer if you need the rear bumper corner area or the radar sensors to be repaired, or the rear bumper corner area is strongly impacted.

## Deflation Warning System

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated. This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the driver information interface.

### Deflation Warning System

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.


Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

 **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 613

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains\* are used.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- A compact spare tyre\* is used.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres, such as when towing a trailer, than the condition at calibration.
- Tyre chains\* are used.

## Deflation Warning System Calibration

You must start deflation warning system calibration every time you:


- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating the deflation warning system:

- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.

➤ **Checking Tyres** P. 613

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The ignition switch is in ON \*1.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### Deflation Warning System Calibration

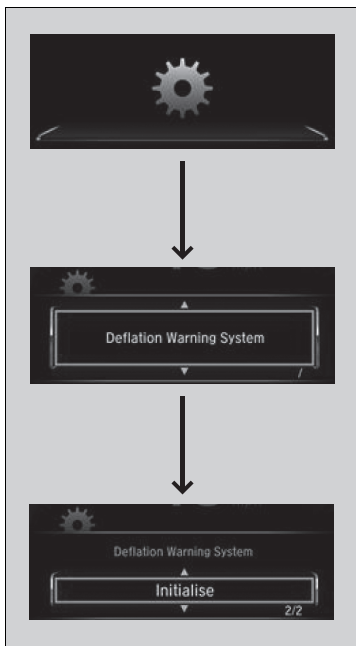
- Deflation Warning System cannot be calibrated if a compact spare tyre\* is installed.
- The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 48–105 km/h (30–65 mph).
- During this period, if the ignition is turned on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If tyre chains\* are installed, remove them before calibrating the deflation warning system.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

*Continued*



#### Models without Display Audio

You can calibrate the system from the customized features on the driver information interface.

1. Press the button and press to select , then press the **ENTER** button.

▶ **Deflation Warning System** appears on the display.

2. Press the **ENTER** button.

▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Initialise**.

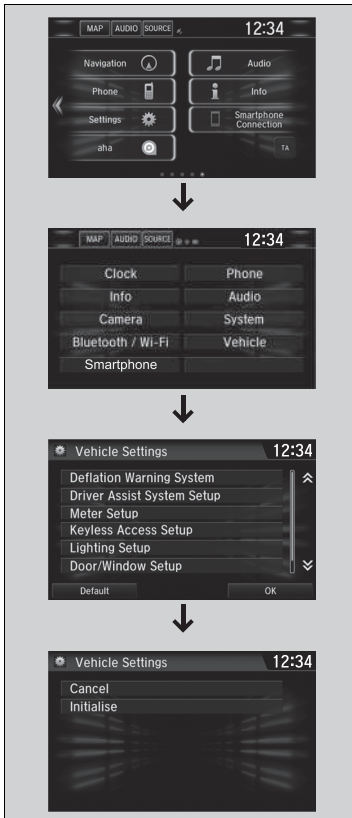
3. Press the button and select **Initialise**, then press the **ENTER** button.

▶ **Completed** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

- If the **Failed** message appears, repeat steps 2–3.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

#### ▶▶ Deflation Warning System Calibration

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)\*, Road Departure Mitigation\*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)\* may come on after re-connecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



### Models with Display Audio

You can calibrate the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.
2. Select .
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Vehicle**.
5. Select **Deflation Warning System**.
6. Select **Cancel** or **Initialise**.

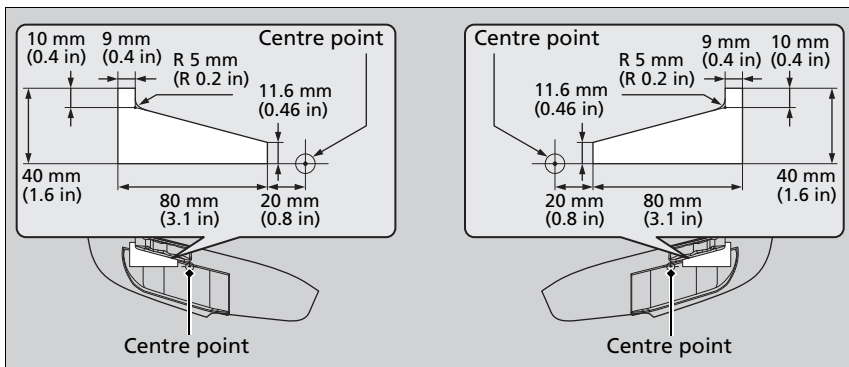
- If the **Failed** message appears, repeat steps 4-6.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Models with LED headlights

## Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Driving the right-hand type vehicle in right-hand traffic, or the left-hand type vehicle in left-hand traffic causes headlight glare to oncoming vehicles. You need to alter the headlight beam distribution using masking tape.



1. Prepare for two rectangular pieces of masking tape, measuring 40 mm (1.6 in) wide and 80 mm (3.1 in) long.
  - ▶ Use masking tape that can shut out light, such as seal type waterproof vinyl.
2. Affix the tape to the lens as shown.

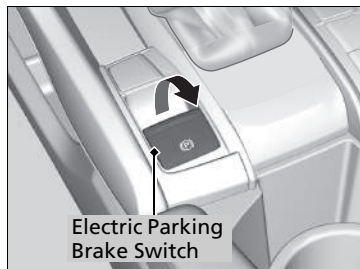
### Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Be careful not to adhere the tape to an incorrect location. If the headlight beam is distributed incorrectly, it may not comply with your country's legal requirements. Ask your dealer for details.

## Brake System

### ■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.

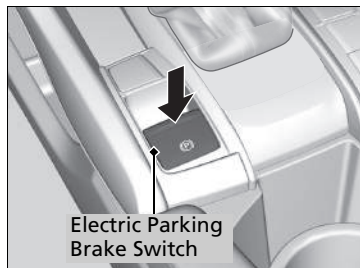


#### ■ To apply


The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has battery, no matter which position the ignition switch\*1 is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

- ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.



#### ■ To release

The vehicle must be ON \*1 in order to release the electric parking brake.


1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.

- ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing down hill on steep hills.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### ▣ Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake, turn the ignition switch to LOCK \*1. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the battery goes dead.

▣ **Jump Starting** P. 665

**If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the VSA system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.**

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

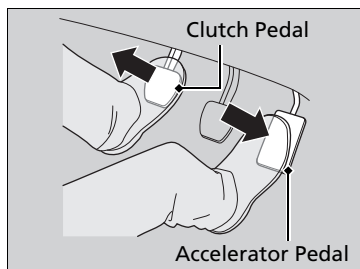
- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.
- When the engine is turned off while brake hold is applied.
- When there is a problem with the Brake Hold System.



### ■ To release automatically

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.

Depressing the accelerator pedal while releasing the clutch pedal releases the parking brake.



Gently depress the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

- The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

The parking brake automatically releases as you depress the accelerator pedal when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The transmission is not in **N**.

### ▣ Parking Brake

- When there is a problem with the electric parking brake switch, after you turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]\*1.

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Brake system indicator
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

The clutch pedal is fully depressed before gently depress the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A vacuum power assist helps to reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

➤ **Brake Assist System** P. 541

➤ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 540

### Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear. With manual transmission use a lower gear for greater engine braking.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

## Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until you change a gear to a position other than **N** and:

- Release the clutch pedal on a level road or when facing downhill.
- Release the clutch pedal and depress the accelerator pedal when facing uphill.

You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

### Automatic Brake Hold

## ⚠ WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.




Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

## ⚠ WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in **R** or **T** and applying the parking brake.

■ Turning on the system	■ Activating the system	■ Cancelling the system
 <p>Automatic Brake Hold Button</p>	 <p>Brake Pedal</p>	 <p>Clutch Pedal</p> <p>Accelerator Pedal</p>
<p>Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.</li> </ul>	<p>Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.</li> <li>• Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.</li> </ul>	<p>Shift into <b>one</b> of the gears other than <b>N</b> and:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Release the clutch pedal on a level road or when facing downhill.</li> <li>• Release the clutch pedal and depress the accelerator pedal when facing uphill.</li> </ul> <p>The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.</li> </ul>

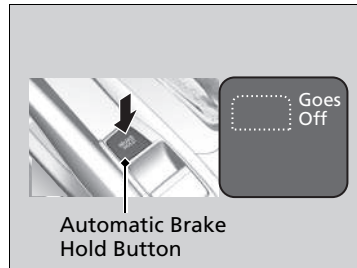
■ **The system automatically cancels when:**

- You engage the parking brake.

■ **The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:**

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The engine is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.
- The battery is disconnected.
- The engine stalls.

■ **Turning off the automatic brake hold system**



While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.

- ▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

☒ Automatic Brake Hold

While the system is activated, you can turn off the engine or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

☒ **When Stopped** P. 553

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the engine is off.

The system turns off if the engine stalls while automatic brake hold is active or the system is on.

☒ Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation. The system generates sound while holding the vehicle and it moves.

## Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

### ■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

### ■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:

- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h (6 mph), the ABS stops.

### ⓘ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

#### NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the wrong size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:

- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains\*.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:

- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

## Brake Assist System

---

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

### ■ Brake assist system operation

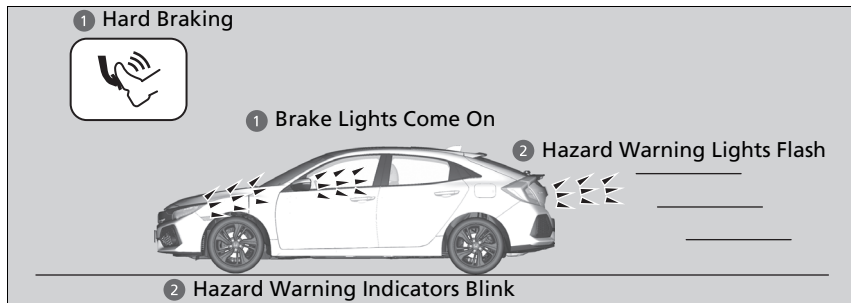
Depress the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

## Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h (37 mph) or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

### ■ When the system activates:



The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

### ⊠ Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

## Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)\*

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimise collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

### ▶ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)\*

When the CMBS activates, the engine may stop automatically.  
Start the engine by normal operation if the engine stops.

▶ **Starting the Engine** P. 453, 456

#### **Important Safety Reminder**

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

▶ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 548

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ **Front Sensor Camera\*** P. 488

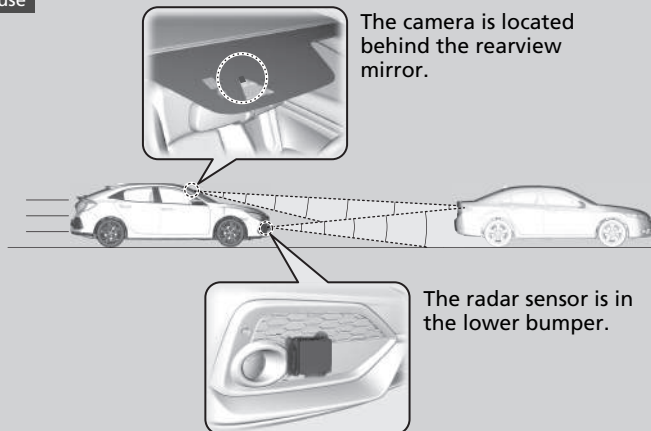
Be careful not to severely impact the radar sensor cover.

\* Not available on all models



## ■ How the system works

### When to use



The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h (3 mph) and there is a vehicle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h (3 mph) and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h (62 mph) or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:
  - Vehicles detected in front of you that are stationary, oncoming, or travelling in your same direction.
  - A pedestrian who is detected in front of you.
- Your vehicle speed is above 100 km/h (62 mph), and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with a vehicle detected in front of you travelling in your same direction.

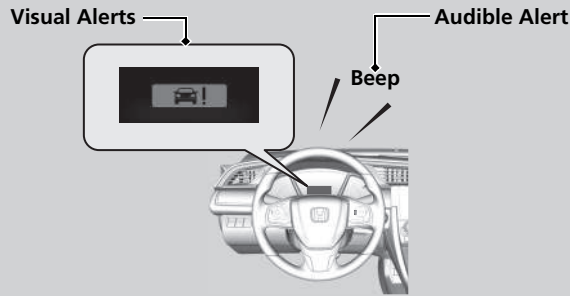
### ☒ How the system works

When the CMBS activates, it may automatically apply the brake. It will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.

## ■ When the system activates

The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

- ▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)



At system's earliest collision alert stage, you can change the distance (**Far/Normal/Near**) between vehicles at which alerts will come on through driver information interface or audio/information screen setting options.

- ▶ **Customized Features\*** P. 143, 354

## ▶▶ When the system activates

The camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.

However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.

Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

- ▶ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 548

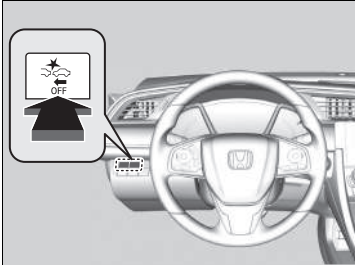
## ■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS		
		The radar sensor detects a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	When in <b>Far</b> , visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in <b>Normal</b> setting, and in <b>Near</b> , at a shorter distance than in <b>Normal</b> .	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

Driving

## CMBS On and Off



Press and hold the button until the beeper sounds to switch the system on or off.

When the CMBS is off:

- The CMBS indicator in the instrument panel comes on.
- A message on the driver information interface reminds you that the system is off.

The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

### ▶▶ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)\*

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the CMBS indicator will come and stay on under certain conditions:

#### ▶▶ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 548

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is deeply depressed.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Road Departure Mitigation, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) may come on after re-connecting the battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the CMBS indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS functions.

➤ **Front Sensor Camera**\* P. 488

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.

## ➤ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the CMBS off button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

**■ Vehicle conditions**

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre\*, etc.).
- When tyre chains\* are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor in the lower bumper gets dirty.

**■ Detection limitations**

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.

\* Not available on all models

- When you drive on a curved, winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Another vehicle suddenly comes in front of you at an intersection, etc.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the lead vehicle suddenly slows down.

**Limitations applicable to pedestrian detection only**

- When there is a group of people in front of your vehicle walking together side by side.
- Surrounding conditions or belongings of the pedestrian alter the pedestrian's shape, preventing the system from recognizing that the person is a pedestrian.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 meter or taller than about 2 meters in height.
- When a pedestrian blends in with the background.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, or when their hands are raised or they are running.
- When several pedestrians are walking ahead in a group.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify that a pedestrian is present due to an unusual shape (holding luggage, body position, size).

### ■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the CMBS indicator comes and stays on when:

- The temperature inside the system is high.
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (wrong tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.



## ■ With Little Chance of a Collision

The CMBS may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

### ■ When Passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

### ■ At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.

### ■ On a curve

When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

### ■ Through a low bridge at high speed

You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

### ■ Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.

You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects (such as a traffic sign and guard rail) on a curve or, when parking, stationary vehicles and walls.

## ▶ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)\*

For the CMBS to work properly:

Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.

Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

Do not paint, or apply any coverings or paint to radar sensor area. This can impact CMBS operation.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

## When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
3. Move the shift lever to **R** or **1**.
4. Keep idling the engine for about 10 seconds.
5. Turn off the engine.
  - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off in about 15 seconds.

Always confirm that the electric parking brake is set, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

### ▣ Parking Your Vehicle

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

### ▣ When Stopped

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

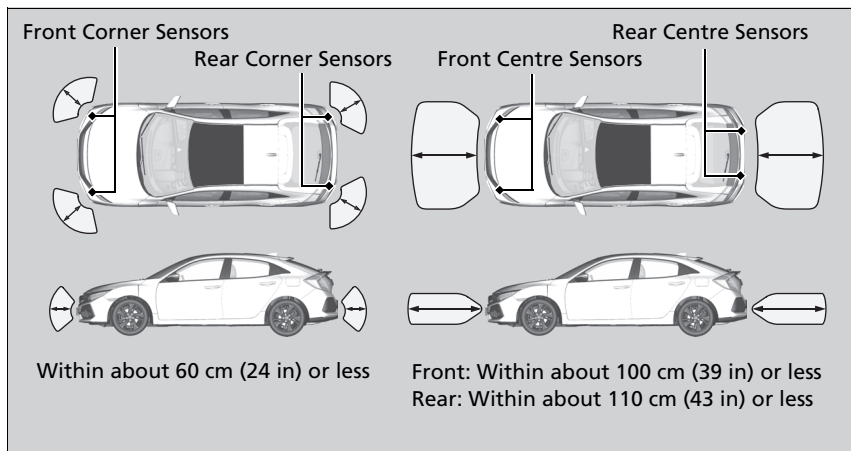
#### Models with climate control system

Keep idling the engine for a few minutes if your vehicle has towed a trailer. The engine idling may be prohibited in some countries. Check and follow your local legal requirements.

## Parking Sensor System \*

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles near your vehicle, and the beeper and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

### ■ The sensor location and range



### ▣ Parking Sensor System \*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

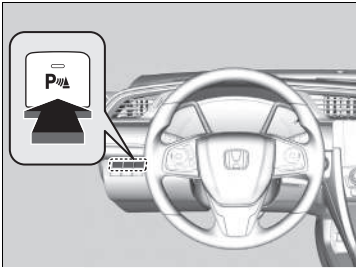
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

## ■ Parking sensor system on and off



With the ignition switch in ON **[II]**\*1, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The front corner and front centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in any position other than **[R]**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The front corner, rear corner and rear centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in **[R]**, and the vehicle speed is less than less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

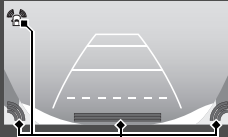

You also need to release the parking brake.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### ▣ Parking sensor system on and off

When you turn the ignition switch to ON **[II]**\*1, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles behind becomes shorter

Length of the intermittent beep	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Audio/information screen
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	—	Front: About 100-60 cm (39-24 inches) Rear: About 110-60 cm (43-24 inches)	Blinks in Yellow* <sup>1</sup>	<div> <p>Models with Display Audio</p> </div>  <p>Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle</p>
Short	About 60-45 cm (24-18 inches)	About 60-45 cm (24-18 inches)	Blinks in Amber	
Very short	About 45-35 cm (18-14 inches)	About 45-35 cm (18-14 inches)		
Continuous	About 35 cm (14 inches) or less	About 35 cm (14 inches) or less	Blinks in Red	<div> <p>Models with colour audio system</p> </div>  <p>Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.</p>

\*1: At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

## Turning off All Rear Sensors

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK **[0]**\*1.
2. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and turn the ignition switch to ON **[II]**\*1.
3. Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
4. Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.
  - ▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

### Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you set the gear position to **[R]**, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Cross Traffic Monitor\*

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient especially when you are getting out of a parking space backwards.

### ⚠ Cross Traffic Monitor\*

#### **⚠ WARNING**

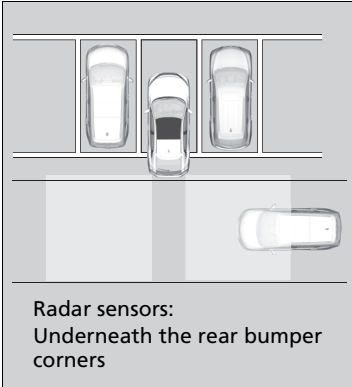
Cross traffic monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

The parking sensor system's alerting buzzer overrides the cross traffic monitor buzzer when the sensors are detecting obstacles at the closest range.

## How the System Works



The system activates when:

- Turn the ignition switch to ON **[II]**\*1.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor is turned on.
  - ▶ **Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off** P. 562
  - ▶ **Customized Features** P. 354
- The shift lever is in **[R]**.
- Your vehicle is moving at 5 km/h (3 mph) or lower.

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

## ▶▶ Cross Traffic Monitor\*

Cross traffic monitor may not detect or may delay detecting an approaching vehicle, or may alert detection without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:

- An obstacle, such as another vehicle and a wall, near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at the speed of about 5 km/h (3 mph) or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at the speed other than between about 10 km/h (6 mph) and 25 km/h (16 mph).
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed.
  - ▶ **Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.**

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models



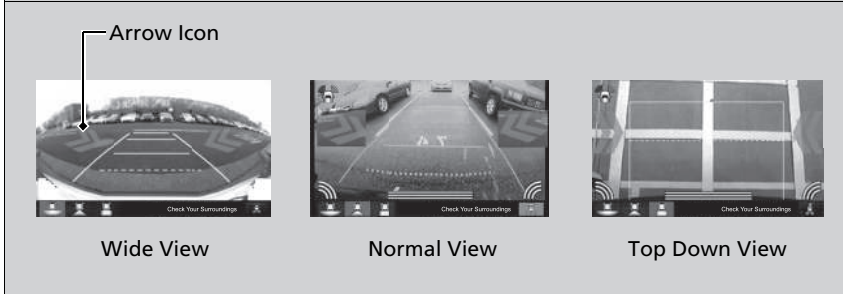
The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

🗒️ Cross Traffic Monitor\*



For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean. Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.


## When the System Detects a Vehicle



An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the audio/information screen.

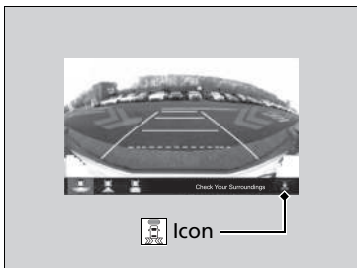
## When the System Detects a Vehicle

If the  on the lower right changes to  in amber when the gear position is in **R**, mud, snow, ice and other debris may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. The system is temporarily cancelled. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.

If the  comes on when the gear position is in **R**, there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the display remains the same with the gear position in **R**, there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off



Tap to turn the system on and off. The indicator (green) comes on with the system on.

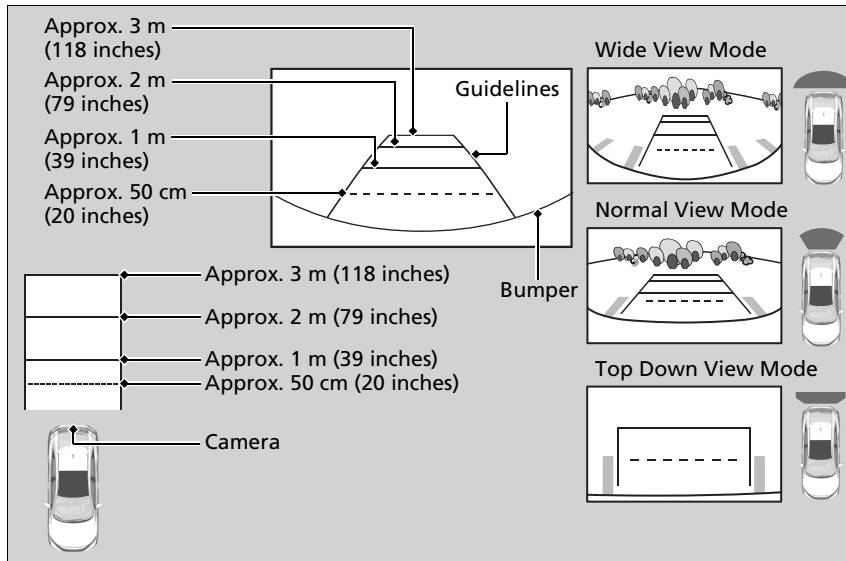
You can also switch on and off the system using the audio/information screen.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 354

## About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into **R**.

### Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



### About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 354

#### Fixed Guideline

**On:** Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into **R**.

**Off:** Guidelines do not appear.

#### Dynamic Guideline

**On:** Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

**Off:** Guidelines do not move.

You can view three different camera modes on the rearview display.

Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.



: Wide view mode



: Normal view mode



: Top down view mode

- If the last used viewing mode was Wide or Normal view mode, the same mode is selected the next time you put the transmission into **R**.
- If Top down view mode was last used before you turned off the engine, Wide View mode is selected next time you turn the ignition switch to ON **II**\*1 and put the transmission into **R**.
- If Top down view mode was last used more than 10 seconds after you shift from **R**, Wide View mode is selected the next time you put the transmission into **R**.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Fuel Information

### ■ Fuel recommendation

**EN 590 standard diesel fuel**

Select the proper fuel of clean and good quality according to the regional and climate condition. Use of improper fuel can reduce engine power.

■ **Fuel tank capacity: 46.9 L (10.3 Imp gal)**

### ⌘ Fuel Information

#### NOTICE

Serious damage may occur if petrol is used in diesel engines.

Your vehicle is not designed to use biodiesel (pure or high concentration more than specified by EN590). Consult a dealer for more information.

Never use the heating oil and marine diesel fuel.

We recommend to replace the fuel filter before starting to drive if you have parked your vehicle for an extended period. The fuel filter may become clogged earlier than usual.



## How to Refuel

Your fuel tank is not equipped with a fuel filler cap. You can insert the diesel fuel filler nozzle directly into the fuel filler neck. The tank seals itself again when you pull out the filler nozzle.



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Press the area indicated by the arrow to release the fuel fill door. You will hear a click.

▶ Driver's door must be unlocked.

🔒 **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 168

### How to Refuel

## ⚠ WARNING

Fuel is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

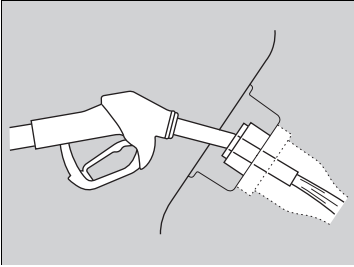
- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

The fuel filler opening is designed to accept only service station filler nozzles for refueling. Use of smaller diameter tubes (e.g., those used to siphon fuel for other uses) or other non-service station devices can damage the area in and around the filler opening.

Use the lock tab or the master door lock switch to unlock the fuel fill door.

The vehicle doors and fuel fill door automatically relock if the remote unlock function is used. This can be deactivated by briefly opening then closing the driver's door.

The fuel fill door and its latching mechanism can be permanently damaged if the fuel fill door is forced closed when the driver's door is locked.



4. Place the end of the filler nozzle on the lower part of filler opening, then insert it slowly and fully.
  - ▶ Make sure that the end of the filler nozzle goes down along with the filler pipe.
  - ▶ Keep the filler nozzle level.
  - ▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically.
  - ▶ After filling, wait about five seconds before removing the filler nozzle.
5. Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

#### ▶▶ How to Refuel

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

If you have to refuel your vehicle from a portable container, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.

#### ▶▶ **Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container**

P. 692

Check if you have picked up the right nozzle. When you cannot insert the filler nozzle even though it is for diesel fuel, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.



## Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO<sub>2</sub> emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

### Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet. On vehicles without service reminder system, follow the Maintenance schedule.

#### 📖 Maintenance Schedule\* P. 578

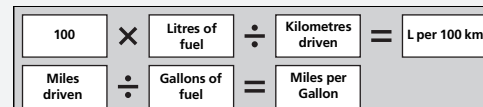
- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.

#### 📖 Recommended Engine Oil P. 586

- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

### 📖 Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.



# Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



## Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance .....	570
Safety When Performing Maintenance ....	571
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance	
Service .....	572
About Your Maintenance Service .....	572
<b>Service Reminder System*</b> .....	573
<b>Maintenance Schedule*</b> .....	578
<b>Maintenance Under the Bonnet</b>	
Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet ..	583
Opening the Bonnet .....	584
Recommended Engine Oil .....	586
Oil Check .....	587
Adding Engine Oil .....	588

Engine Coolant .....	589
Transmission Fluid .....	591
Brake/Clutch Fluid .....	592
Refilling Window Washer Fluid .....	593
Fuel Filter .....	593
<b>Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)</b>	
<b>Regeneration</b> .....	594
<b>Replacing Light Bulbs</b> .....	596
<b>Checking and Maintaining Wiper</b>	
<b>Blades</b> .....	608
<b>Checking and Maintaining Tyres</b>	
Checking Tyres .....	613
Wear Indicators .....	614
Tyre Service Life .....	614

Tyre and Wheel Replacement .....	615
Tyre Rotation .....	616
Snow Traction Devices .....	617
<b>Battery</b> .....	619
<b>Remote Transmitter Care</b>	
Replacing the Button Battery .....	624
<b>Heating System*/Climate Control System*</b>	
<b>Maintenance</b> .....	626
<b>Cleaning</b> .....	629
Interior Care .....	629
Exterior Care .....	631
<b>Accessories and Modifications</b> .....	634

\* Not available on all models

## Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book\* that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule\*** P. 578

### Types of Inspection and Maintenance

#### ■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

#### ■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake/clutch fluid level monthly.
  - **Brake/Clutch Fluid** P. 592
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 613
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  - **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 596
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 608

## Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

### Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
  - ▶ Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  - ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

### Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  - ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  - ▶ Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  - ▶ Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.
  - ▶ Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.

#### ⚠ Safety When Performing Maintenance

### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book.

### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

## Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

## About Your Maintenance Service

If the service reminder system is available in your vehicle, you are informed by the driver information interface when your vehicle's maintenance services are due. Refer to the service book that came with your vehicle for an explanation of the service item codes that appear on the display.

➤ **Service Reminder System**\* P. 573

If the service reminder system is not available, follow the maintenance schedules in the service book that came with your vehicle.

If your vehicle is without the service book, follow the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule**\* P. 578

### ▶▶ Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

#### NOTICE

Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.


### ▶▶ About Your Maintenance Service

#### Models with service reminder system

If you are planning to take your vehicle outside the service reminder system applied countries, consult a dealer for how to record your service reminder information and schedule your maintenance service under the conditions of that country.

## Service Reminder System\*

Provides information of which service items are to be performed. Service items are represented by a code and icon. The system tells you when to take your vehicle to a dealer by days remaining.

When the next maintenance service timing is near, coming or passed, a warning icon will also appear on the driver information interface every time you turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models




### Service Reminder System\*

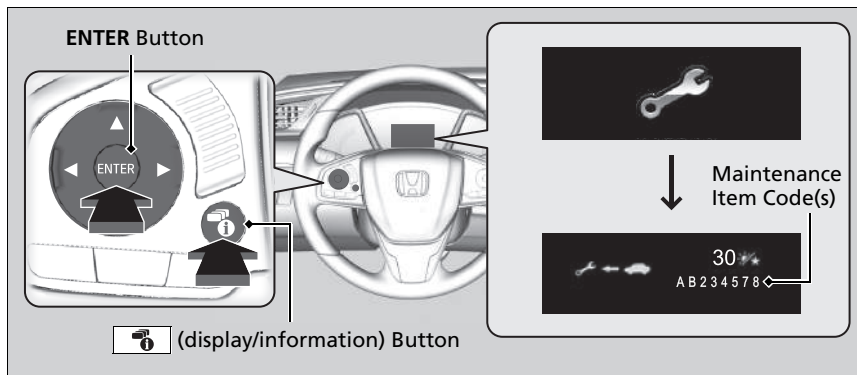
You can choose to have a corresponding warning message displayed with the warning icon on the driver information interface.

The maintenance schedule may not display correct information if you disconnect or remove the battery for an extended period. If this occurs, see a dealer.

*Continued*

## ■ Displaying the Service Reminder Information

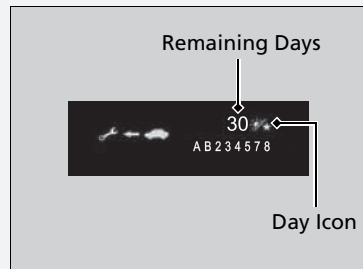
1. Turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.
2. Press the  (display/information) button several times until  is displayed.
3. Press the **ENTER** button to go to the service reminder information screen. The maintenance item(s) appears on the driver information interface.



The system message indicator (ⓘ) comes on along with the service reminder Information.







## ▣ Displaying the Service Reminder Information

Based on engine operating conditions and engine oil conditions, the system calculates the remaining days before the next service is to be performed.



\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Warning Icons and Service Reminder Information on the Driver Information Interface


Warning Icon	Service Reminder Information	Explanation	Information
<b>Service Due Soon</b> 		<p>One or more of the service items are required in less than 30 days. The remaining days are estimated based on your driving conditions.</p>	<p>The remaining days will be counted down per day.</p>
<b>Service Due Now</b> 		<p>One or more of the service items are required in less than 10 days. The remaining days are estimated based on your driving conditions.</p>	<p>Have the indicated service performed as soon as possible.</p>
<b>Service Over Due</b> 		<p>The indicated maintenance service is still not done after the remaining time reaches 0.</p>	<p>Your vehicle has passed the service required point. Immediately have the service performed and make sure to reset the service reminder system.</p>



## ■ Service Reminder Items

Service items displayed on the driver information interface are in code and icon. For an explanation of the service reminder codes and icons, refer to the service book that came with your vehicle.

## ■ Availability of the Service Reminder System

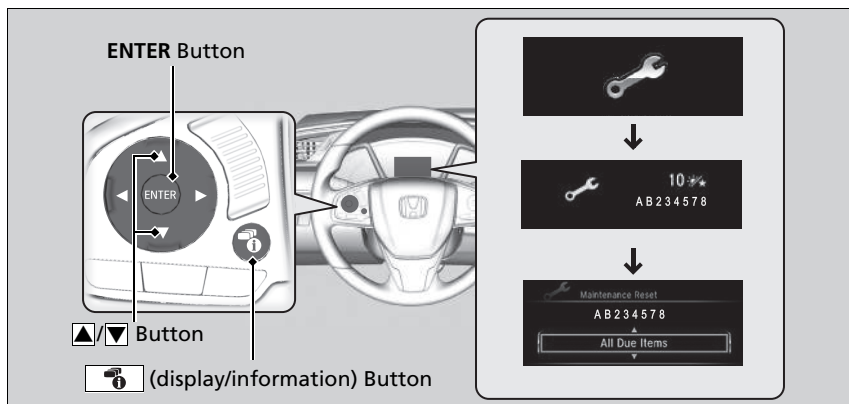
Even if the service reminder information appears on the driver information interface while pressing the  (display/information) button, this system is not available in some countries. Refer to the service book that came with your vehicle, or ask a dealer if you can use the service reminder system.

## ☒ Availability of the Service Reminder System

If you are planning to take your vehicle outside the service reminder system applied countries, consult a dealer on how to record your service reminder information and schedule your maintenance service under the conditions of that country.

## Resetting the Display

Reset the service reminder information display if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.
2. Press the (display/information) button repeatedly until the appears.
3. Press the **ENTER** button.
4. Press and hold the **ENTER** button for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
5. Press button to select a maintenance item to reset, or to select **All Due Items** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
6. Press the **ENTER** button to reset the selected item.
7. Repeat from step 4 for other items you wish to reset.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Resetting the Display

### NOTICE

Failure to reset the service reminder information after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

### Models with Display Audio

You can reset also the service reminder system information display using the audio/information screen.

➔ **Customized Features P. 354**

The dealer will reset the service reminder information display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the service reminder information display yourself.

If your vehicle comes with the service book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the service book, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Except European models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles X 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100	112.5	125.0
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil	Normal	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km (18,500 miles)									
Replace fuel filter		Every 30,000 km (18,500 miles)									
Inspect drive belts			•		•		•		•		•
Replace engine coolant						•			•		
Replace transmission fluid	Normal						•				
	Severe			•			•			•	
Inspect front and rear brakes		Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months									
Replace brake fluid		Every 3 years									
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)		Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles)									
Check expiry date for tyre repair kit bottle		Every 1 year									

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles X 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100	112.5	125.0
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120

**Visually inspect the following items:**

Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months										
Suspension components	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months										
Driveshaft boots	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 6 months										
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
All fluid levels and condition of fluid	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Exhaust system	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Fuel lines and connections	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

**Except European models**

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and oil filter	A, B, C, D, E
Transmission fluid	B, D

▶▶ Maintenance Schedule\*

**Except European models**

The condition is considered as severe when you drive:

- A. Less than 8 km (5 miles), or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperatures per trip.
- B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
- C. With extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.
- D. With a trailer towing\*, or loaded roof rack, or in mountains.
- E. On muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

\* Not available on all models

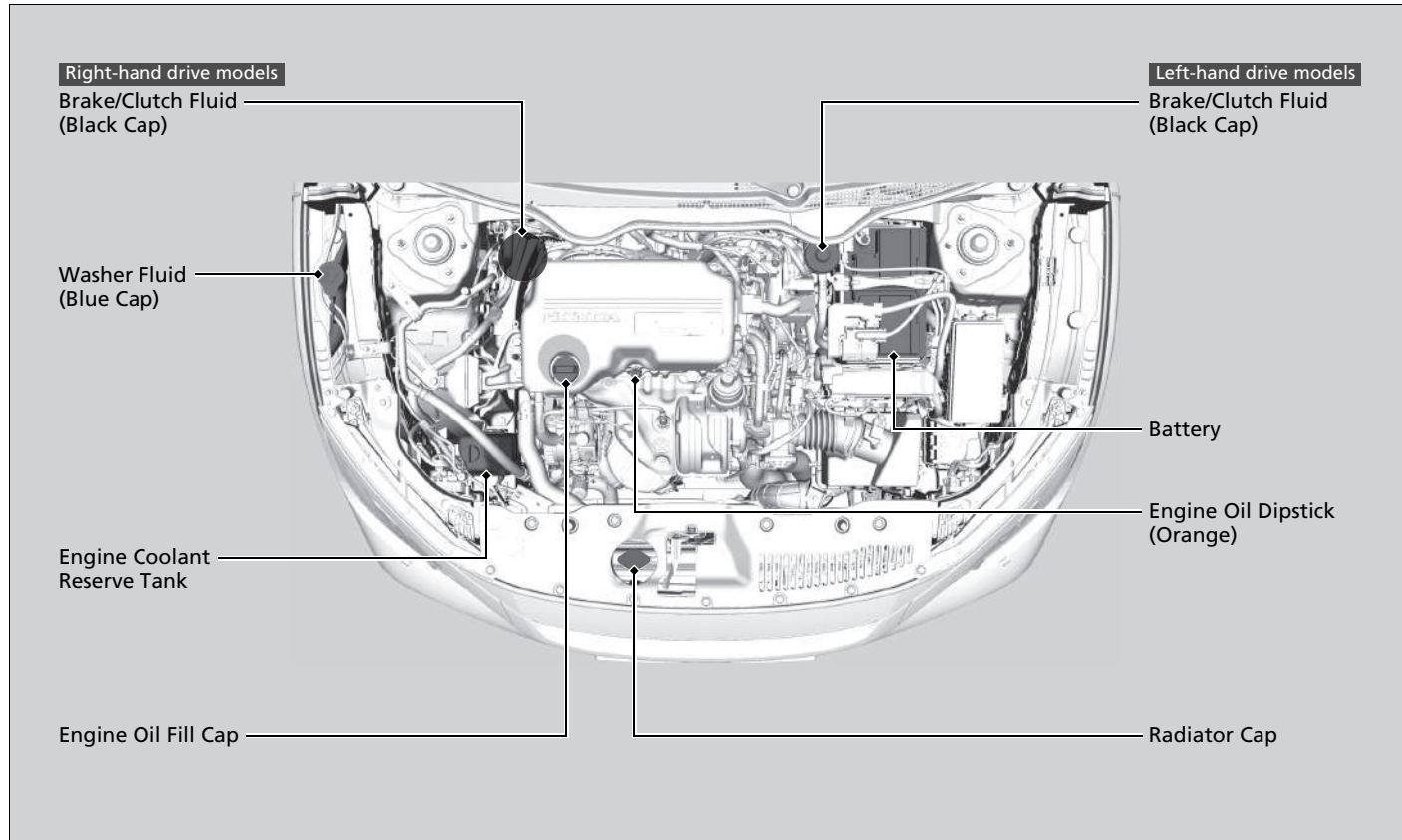
## Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

Except European models

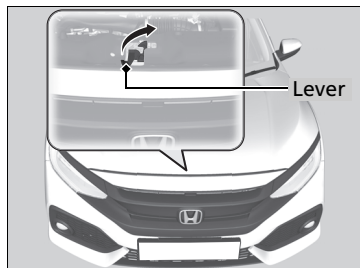
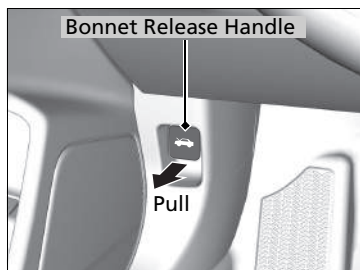
	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
<b>20,000 km</b> 12,500 Mi. (or 12 Mo.)			
<b>40,000 km</b> 25,000 Mi. (or 24 Mo.)			
<b>60,000 km</b> 37,500 Mi. (or 36 Mo.)			
<b>80,000 km</b> 50,000 Mi. (or 48 Mo.)			
<b>100,000 km</b> 62,500 Mi. (or 60 Mo.)			
<b>120,000 km</b> 75,000 Mi. (or 72 Mo.)			
<b>140,000 km</b> 87,500 Mi. (or 84 Mo.)			
<b>160,000 km</b> 100,000 Mi. (or 96 Mo.)			
<b>180,000 km</b> 112,500 Mi. (or 108 Mo.)			
<b>200,000 km</b> 125,000 Mi. (or 120 Mo.)			

## Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet





## Opening the Bonnet



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.  
▶ The bonnet will pop up slightly.
3. Pull up the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

### Opening the Bonnet

## ⚠ WARNING

The bonnet support rod can become very hot due to heat from the engine.

To ensure against possible burns, do not handle the metal section of the rod: Use the foam grip instead.

### NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

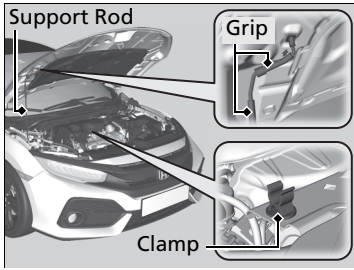
### NOTICE

Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

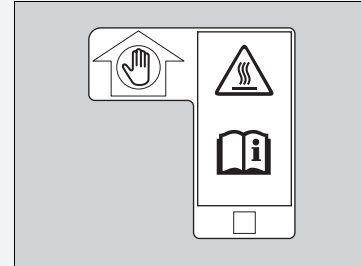
Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.



- 4.** Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

#### ▶▶ Opening the Bonnet

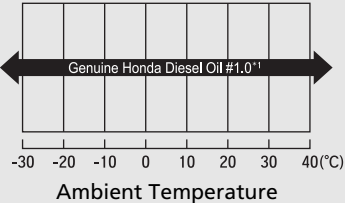
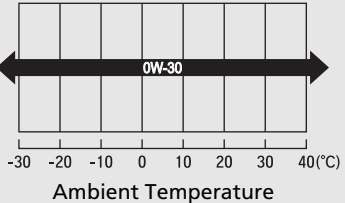


- Grab the foam.
- The support rod gets very hot.
- Refer to the owner's manual.

## Recommended Engine Oil

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Genuine Honda Diesel Oil #1.0</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACEA C2 or C3</li> </ul>
 <p>A horizontal bar chart showing the recommended ambient temperature range for Genuine Honda Diesel Oil #1.0. The x-axis is labeled 'Ambient Temperature' and ranges from -30 to 40°C with major ticks every 10 units. A double-headed arrow spans from -30 to 40°C, with the text 'Genuine Honda Diesel Oil #1.0*1' centered above it.</p>	 <p>A horizontal bar chart showing the recommended ambient temperature range for Commercial Engine Oil 0W-30. The x-axis is labeled 'Ambient Temperature' and ranges from -30 to 40°C with major ticks every 10 units. A double-headed arrow spans from -30 to 40°C, with the text '0W-30' centered above it.</p>

\*1: Formulated to improve fuel economy.

### Recommended Engine Oil

#### Engine Oil Additives

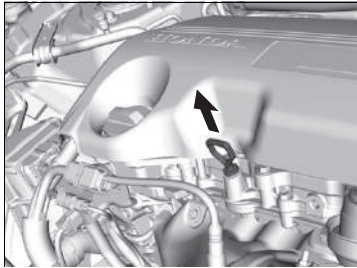
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

## Oil Check

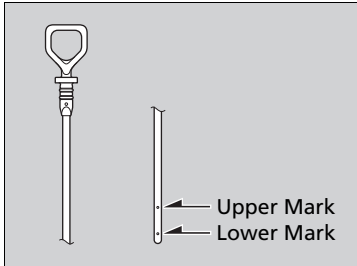
We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.

Park the vehicle on level ground.

Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.



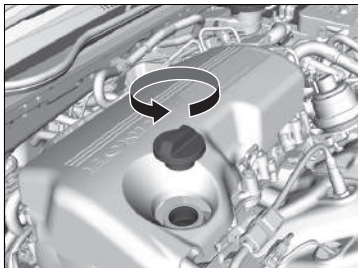
4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

### Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

The amount of oil consumed depends on how the vehicle is driven and the climatic and road conditions encountered. The rate of oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km/625 miles. Consumption is likely to be higher when the engine is new.

## Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

### ► Adding Engine Oil

#### NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil can result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

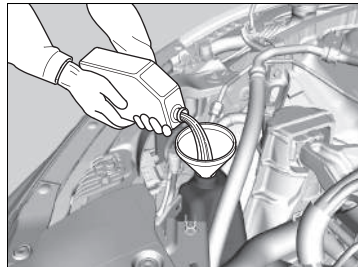
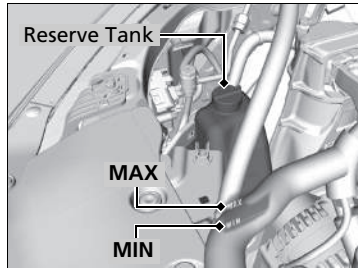
# Engine Coolant

## Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

### Reserve Tank



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
  - ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

### Engine Coolant

**⚠ WARNING**

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

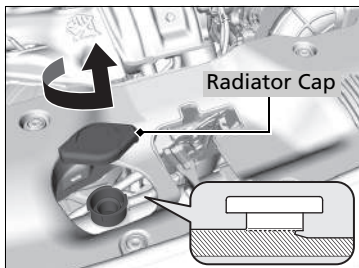
Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

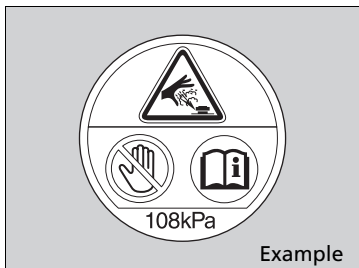
Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

## Radiator



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

## Radiator Cap



- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 108 kPa.

## Radiator

### NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

## Transmission Fluid

### Manual Transmission Fluid

**Specified fluid: Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF)**

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.  
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change manual transmission fluid.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule**\* P. 578

Do not attempt to check or change the manual transmission fluid yourself.

### Manual Transmission Fluid

**NOTICE**

If Honda MTF is not available, you may use the API certificated SAE 0W-20 or 5W-20 viscosity motor oil as a temporary measure.

Replace with MTF as soon as possible. Motor oil does not contain the proper additives for the transmission and continued use can cause decreased shifting performance and lead to transmission damage.

\* Not available on all models

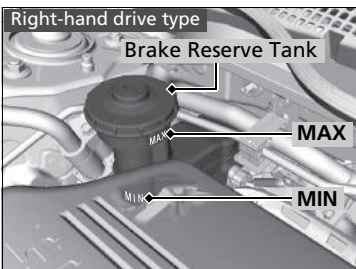
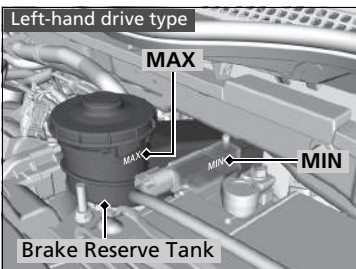


## Brake/Clutch Fluid

**Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4**

Use the same fluid for both the brakes and clutch.

### Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

The brake fluid reserve tank is also used for your vehicle's clutch fluid. As long as you keep the brake fluid level as instructed above, there is no need for checking the clutch fluid level.

### Brake/Clutch Fluid

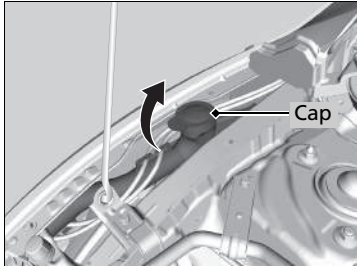
#### NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

## Refilling Window Washer Fluid



### Models without headlight washer

Open the cap and check the amount of window washer fluid.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

### Models with headlight washer

If the washer fluid is low, a symbol appears on the driver information interface.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

## Fuel Filter

Replace the fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

### ►► Refilling Window Washer Fluid

#### NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.

### ►► Fuel Filter

#### Models with service reminder system

The fuel filter should be replaced according to the service reminder indication.

## Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)

Collects particulate matter (PM) from the exhaust gas. The DPF is installed in the catalytic converter.

### How the DPF Works

The DPF periodically burns off the collected PM while driving at a high temperature of catalytic converter.

When PM is burned off, you may notice white smoke in the exhaust gas, and the increase in the average fuel consumption. This is temporary, and normal.

### ⓘ Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)

The DPF must operate at a high temperature for the chemical reactions to take place. It can set on fire any combustible materials that come near it. Park your vehicle away from high grass, dry leaves, or other flammables.


## Regenerating DPF



Regenerate the DPF when this symbol appears.



Take your vehicle to a dealer when this warning symbol appears.

If you see  on the driver information interface, you need to regenerate the DPF:


- Drive your vehicle at a speed of 60 km/h (37 mph) or over until the symbol disappears.
  - It takes about 20 minutes to increase the catalytic converter temperature to burn out and remove PM.

## Regenerating DPF

### NOTICE

If you ignore the symbol and do not regenerate the DPF, the driver information interface changes to the DPF warning symbol. If this happens, take your vehicle to a dealer as soon as possible. Continuously ignoring the driver information interface warning symbol causes the DPF to be clogged with PM, seriously damaging the DPF and emission control systems.

To minimise the accumulation of PM, always use the recommended diesel fuel.

 **Fuel Information** P. 565

PM is accumulated in the catalytic converter when you drive at a low speed for a long period of time or by frequent short journeys.

## Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**High beam headlight: 60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)\***

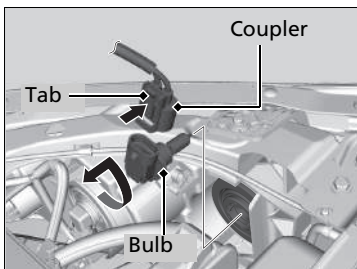
**High beam headlight: LED type\***

**Low beam headlight: 55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)\***

**Low beam headlight: LED type\***

### High Beam Headlight

#### Models with halogen headlights



1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb anticlockwise to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

#### Headlight Bulbs

##### NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

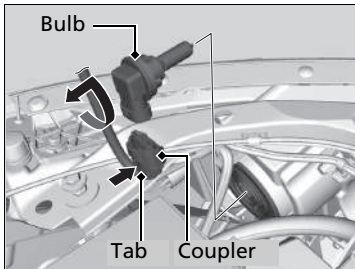
When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

##### Models with LED headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Low Beam Headlights

Models with halogen headlights



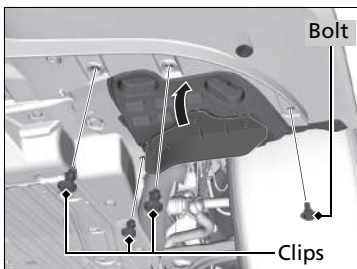
1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb anticlockwise to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

## Front Fog Light Bulbs\*

### Models with halogen fog lights

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Fog Light: 35 W (H8 for halogen bulb type)\***



1. Remove the clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, remove the bolt, and push up the under cover.

### ▶▶ Front Fog Light Bulbs\*

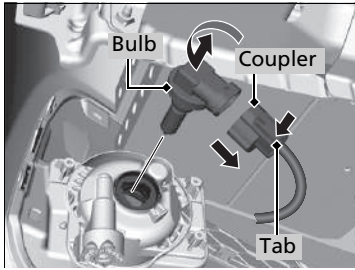
#### NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

#### Models with LED fog lights

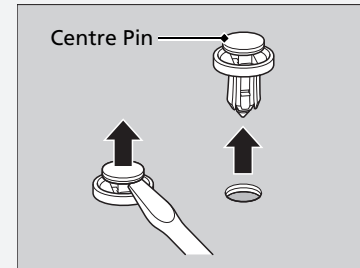
Fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.



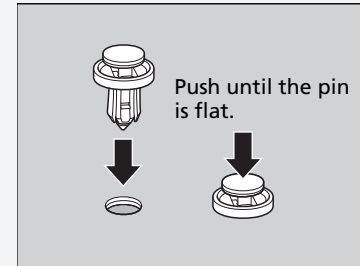
2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
3. Rotate the old bulb anticlockwise to remove.
4. Insert a new bulb into the fog light assembly and turn it clockwise.
5. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

▣ Front Fog Light Bulbs\*

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the centre pin to remove the clip.



Insert the clip with the centre pin raised, and push until it is flat.



\* Not available on all models

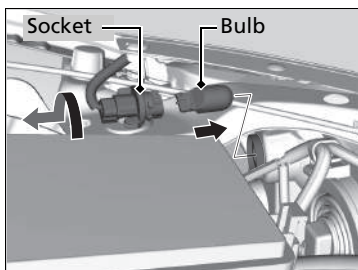


## Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

### Models with halogen headlights

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

#### Front Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)\*



1. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

### ▶▶ Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

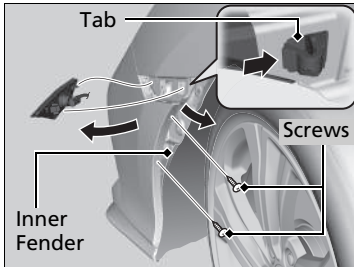
#### Models with LED headlights

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

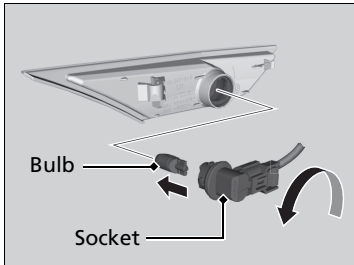
## Side Marker Light Bulbs\*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Side Marker Light: 5 W (Amber)**



1. Remove the screws, and pull the inner fender back.
2. Push the tab to remove the light assembly.



3. Turn the socket anticlockwise to remove it, then remove the old bulb.
4. Insert a new bulb.

\* Not available on all models

## Position/Daytime Running Lights

---

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

---

Door mirror type

### Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Light: LED type

Side turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Fender type

### Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Light: 5 W (Amber)

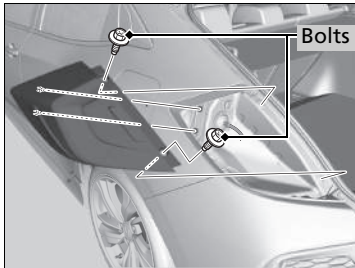
Side turn signal lights bulbs and front side marker light bulbs are the same.

➤ **Side Marker Light Bulbs** \* P. 601

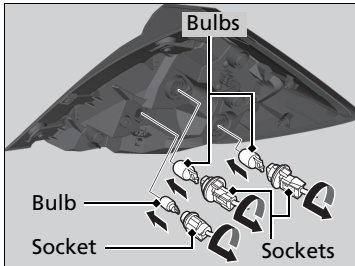
## Brake Light, Rear Turn Signal Light and Back-Up Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Brake Light: 21 W**  
**Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)**  
**Back-Up Light: 16 W**



1. Use a Phillip-head screwdriver or socket to remove the bolts.
2. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.



3. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.
5. Slide the light assembly onto the guide on the body.
6. Align the pins with the body grommets, then push in until they fully seat.

## Taillights and Rear Fog Light

---

Taillights and rear fog light are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Taillights

---

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Rear Licence Plate Light

---

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## High-Mount Brake Light

---

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

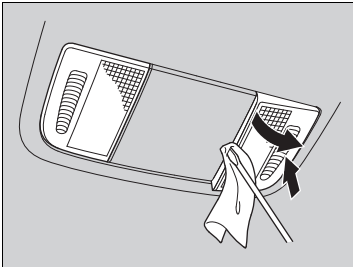
## Other Light Bulbs

### Map Light Bulbs

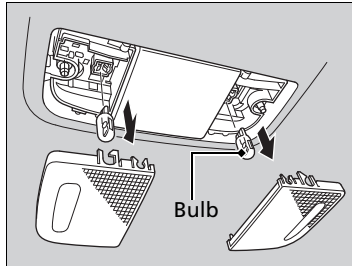
Models with sunroof switch or ambient light

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Map Light: 8 W**



1. Push on the lens of the opposite side you are replacing.
2. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
  - Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

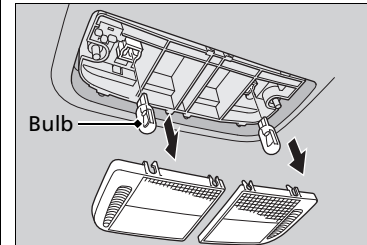
Models without sunroof switch or ambient light

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Map Light: 8 W**



1. Push on the lens of the opposite side you are replacing.
2. Pry on the edge between the lenses using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
  - Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

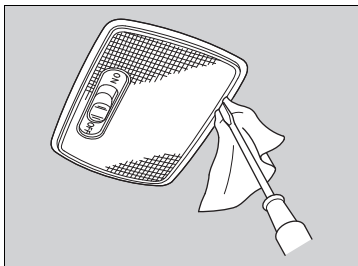


3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

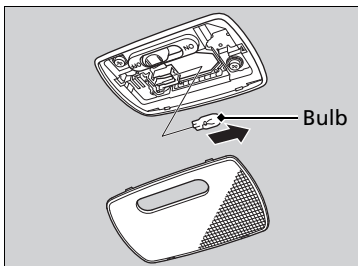
### ■ Ceiling Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Ceiling Light: 8 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

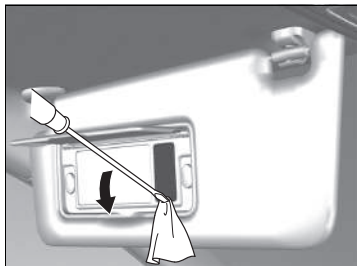


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

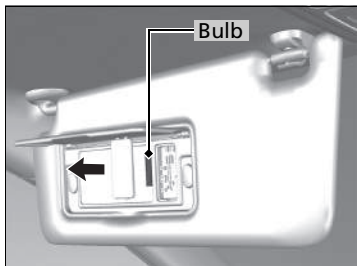
### ■ Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs \*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Vanity Mirror Light: 2 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

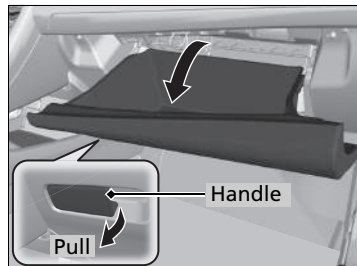


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

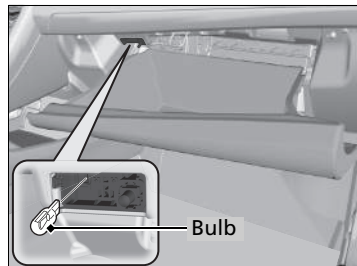
### ■ Glove Box Light Bulb \*

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Glove Box Light: 3.4 W**



1. Open the glove box.

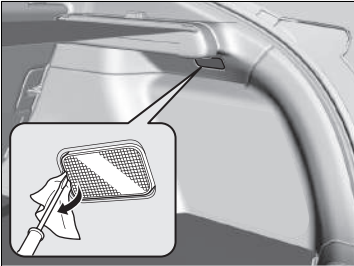


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

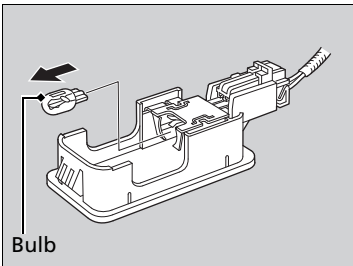
## Luggage Area Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Luggage Area Light: 5 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
  - ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



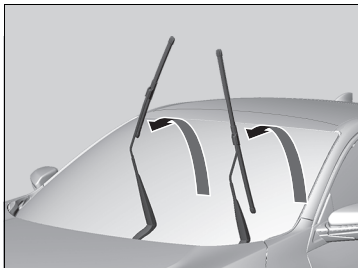
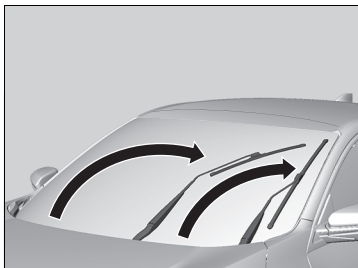
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.



## Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

## Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



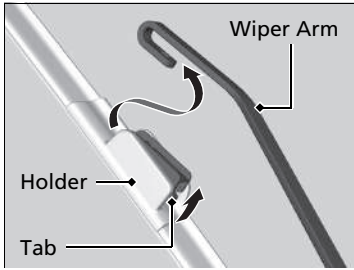
1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*1.
2. While holding the wiper switch in the **MIST** position, turn the ignition switch to ON **II**\*1, then to LOCK **0**\*1.
  - ▶ Both wiper arms are set to the maintenance position as shown in the image.
3. Lift both wiper arms.

### Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

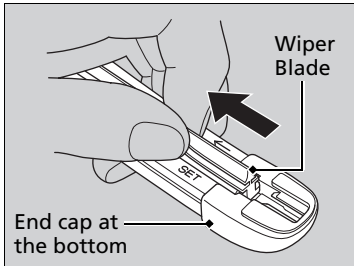
#### NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windshield, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windshield.

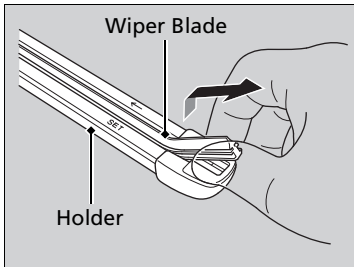
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



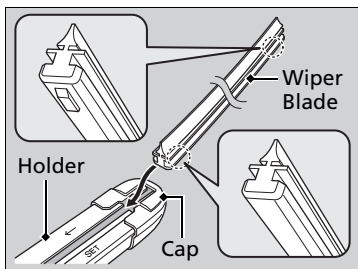
4. Press and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.



5. Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.



6. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.



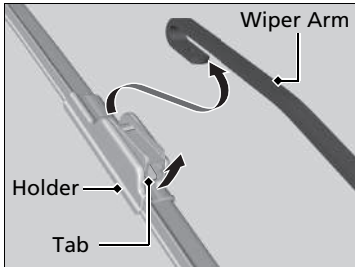
7. Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
8. Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
9. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.
10. Lower both wiper arms.
11. Turn the ignition switch to ON **II**\*1 and hold the wiper switch in the **MIST** position until both wiper arms return to the standard position.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

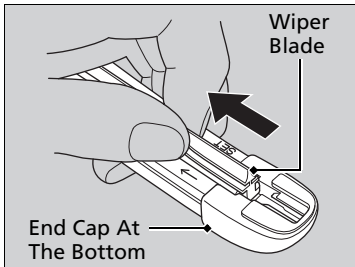
## Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber\*



1. Raise the wiper arm off.



2. Press and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.



3. Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.

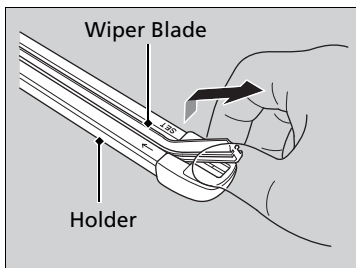
### ▶ Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber\*

#### NOTICE

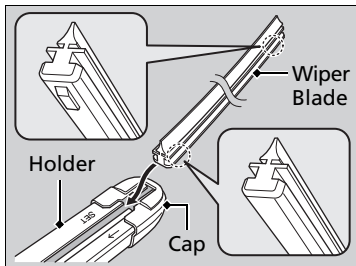
Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the rear window.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*



4. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of holder.



5. Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
6. Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
7. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.
8. Lower the wiper arm.

## Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

### ■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare\*. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10–20 kPa (0.1–0.2 bar, 1–2 psi) per month.

### ■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.

Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

➤ **Wear Indicators** P. 614

- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

\* Not available on all models

### ➤ Checking Tyres

## ⚠ WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

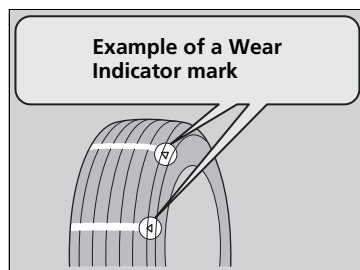
If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

➤ **Deflation Warning System** P. 530

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

## Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre.

**Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

## Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare\*, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

## Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

### ▣ Tyre and Wheel Replacement

#### **WARNING**

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

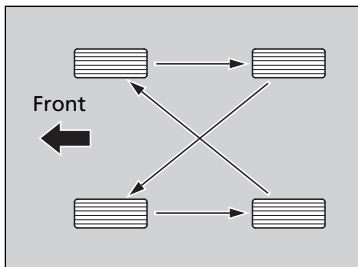
Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.



## Tyre Rotation

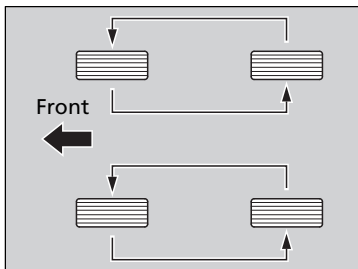
Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

### ■ Tyres without rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

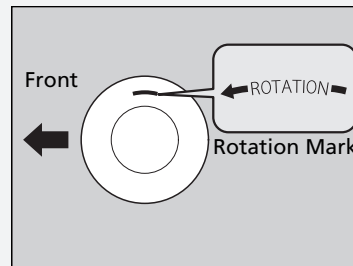
### ■ Tyres with rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

### ▣ Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must calibrate the deflation warning system.

▣ **Deflation Warning System** P. 530

## Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Original Tyre Size* <sup>1</sup>	Chain Type
<b>215/55R16 93V</b>	<b>RUD-matic classic 48489</b>
<b>235/45R17 94W*<sup>2</sup></b>	<b>(Not Available)</b>

\*1:Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

\*2:You cannot mount chains on this tyre. If you have to use tyre chains, replace the tyres with the original 215/55R16 size tyres.

### ☒ Snow Traction Devices

## ⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

### NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

According to the EEC Directive for tyres, when winter tyres are used, it is necessary to affix a sticker with the allowable max. speed of the winter tyres clearly in the field of view of the driver, if the designed max. speed of vehicle is higher than the allowed max. speed of winter tyre. A sticker is obtainable from your tyre dealer. If you have any question, consult a dealer.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

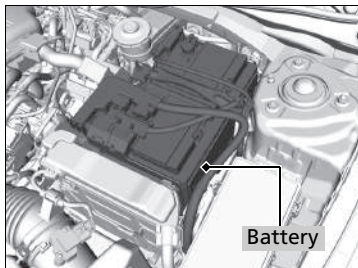
#### ☒ Snow Traction Devices

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

## Checking the Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system\* is disabled.
  - **Reactivating the audio system** P. 253
- The clock resets.
  - **Clock** P. 156
- The immobilizer system\* needs to be reset.
  - **Immobilizer System Indicator** P. 105

\* Not available on all models

### Battery

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

**KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN**

## Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

### ⚠ Battery

#### Emergency Procedures

**Eyes:** Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

**Skin:** Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

**Swallowing:** Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications. Consult a dealer for more information.

The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. Using a battery other than this specified type may shorten the battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

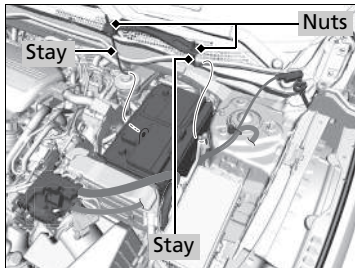
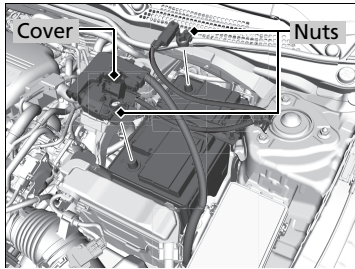
## European models

## Replacing the Battery

When you remove and replace the battery, always follow the maintenance safety and the warnings for when checking the battery to prevent potential hazards.

🔧 **Maintenance Safety** P. 571

🔧 **Checking the Battery** P. 619



1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]\*1. Open the bonnet.
2. Loosen the nut on the negative battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the negative (-) terminal.
3. Open the positive battery terminal cover. Loosen the nut on the positive battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the positive (+) terminal.
4. Loosen the nut on each side of the battery bracket with a wrench.
5. Pull the bottom end of each battery stay out of the hole on the battery base, and remove the combination of the battery bracket and the stays.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*

### ▶▶ Battery

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)\*, road departure mitigation\*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)\* may come on when you turn the ignition switch to ON [II]\*1 after reconnecting a battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

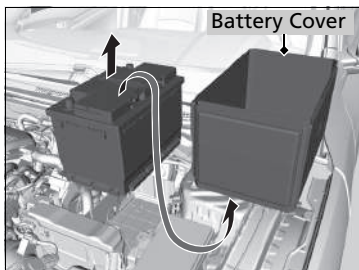
### ▶▶ Replacing the Battery

#### NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.





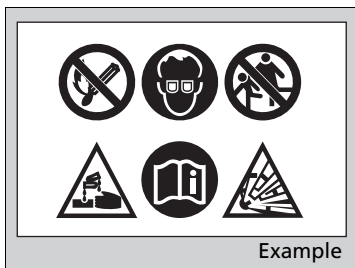
6. Remove the battery cover.
7. Take out the battery carefully.

#### ✘ Replacing the Battery

To install a new battery, reverse this procedure.

Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

## European models

**Battery Label**

## ▶▶ Battery Label

**DANGER**

- Keep flames and sparks away from the battery. The battery produces explosive gas that can cause an explosion.
- Wear eye protection and rubber gloves when handling the battery to avoid risk of burns or loss of eyesight if exposed to battery electrolyte.
- Do not allow children to handle the battery, under any circumstance. Ensure that anyone handling the battery has a proper understanding of the hazards and correct handling procedures involved.
- Handle battery electrolyte with extreme care, as it contains dilute sulfuric acid. Exposure to eyes or skin can cause burns or loss of eyesight.
- Read this manual carefully, and understand it before handling the battery. Failure to do so can cause personal injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not use the battery if the level of electrolyte is at or below the recommended level. Using the battery with low electrolyte can cause it to explode, causing serious injury.

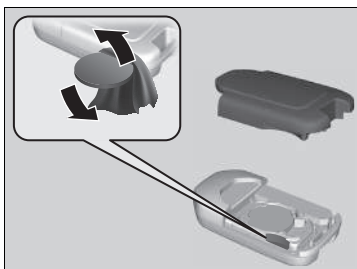


## Replacing the Button Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.

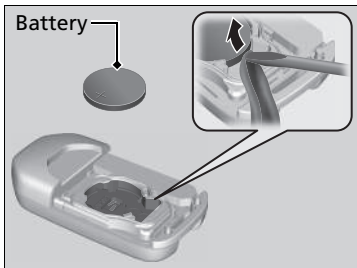
### ▶ Replacing the Button Battery

#### ■ Retractable Key\*



#### Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.  
▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the retractable key.
2. Remove the button battery with the small flat-tip screwdriver.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



### ⚠ ⚠ WARNING

#### CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.

If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

A warning mark is located adjacent to the button battery\*.

#### NOTICE

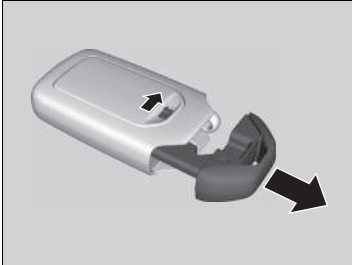
An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

#### European models

This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.

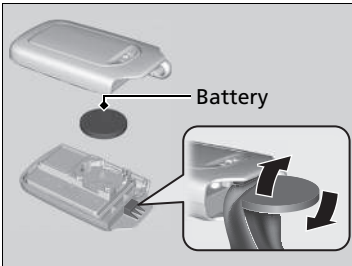


## ■ Keyless Remote \*



**Battery type: CR2032**

1. Remove the built-in key.
  
2. Remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
  - ▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



## ▣ Replacing the Button Battery

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

\* Not available on all models

Models with climate control system

## Air Conditioning

For proper and safe operation of the climate control system, the refrigerant system should only be served by a qualified technician.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

### » Air Conditioning





#### NOTICE

Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

The air conditioner label is found under the bonnet:



-  : Caution
-  : Flammable Refrigerant
-  : Requires a qualified technician to service
-  : Air Conditioning System

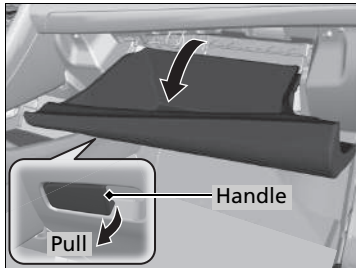
## Dust and Pollen Filter

### ■ When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

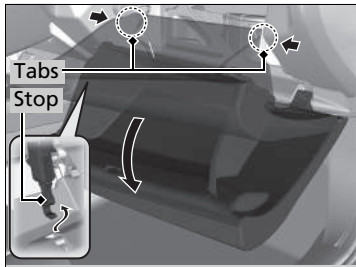
Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

📄 **Maintenance Schedule\*** P. 578

### ■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.



**Models with glove box damper**

2. Push the stop on the driver's side of the glove box to detach it from the glove box.

**All models**

3. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.

4. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

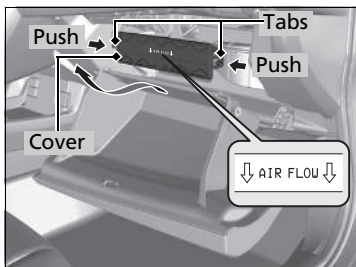
### 📄 Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the heating system\*/climate control system\* deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

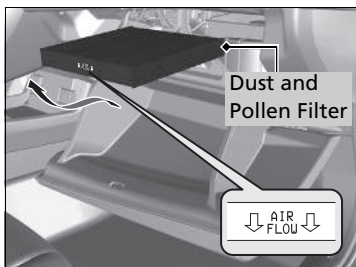
The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

\* Not available on all models



5. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.



6. Remove the filter from the case.

7. Install a new filter in the case.

- ▶ Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

#### ▶▶ Dust and Pollen Filter

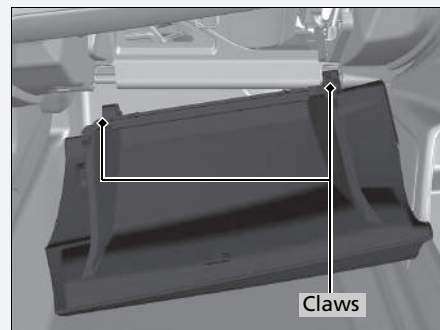
##### Models with glove box damper

##### NOTICE

When to install the dust and pollen filter:

1. Install the filter case cover.
2. Remove the driver's side claw at the bottom of the glove box.
3. Pivot the glove box up into position. Install the tabs back in place.
4. Open the glove box to angle of about 30 °.
5. Install the hook portion of the stop to the glove box.  
When installing the stop, put a hand from the bottom of the glove box.
6. Install the claw at bottom of the glove box.

After installing the glove box, open and close several times and make sure the glove box is installed properly.



## Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.

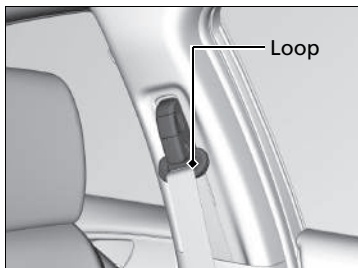
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.

Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

### ■ Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.

Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



### ▣ Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle.

Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.

Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discoloration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.

Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

## ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

## 🔗 Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of both the front sensor camera\* and the rainfall/light sensor\*.

➤ **Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)** P. 190

➤ **Automatic Intermittent Wipers\*** P. 200

➤ **Front Sensor Camera\*** P. 488

## 🔗 Maintaining Genuine Leather\*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discoloration or stains.

## ■ Maintaining Genuine Leather\*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

## Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

### ■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

### ■ Using an Automated Car Wash

- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

### ■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

### ▶▶ Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



Do not spray water onto the fuel fill door directly. A high-pressure spray may cause it to open.

Do not spray water onto the capless unit when the fuel fill door is open. It can cause damage to the fuel system or engine.

If you need to lift the wiper arms away from the windshield, first set the wiper arms to the maintenance position.

▶▶ **Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber**  
P. 608



## ■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

## ■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get diesel fuel, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

## ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

## ■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels\*

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their luster or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

## ▶▶ Applying Wax

### NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

## ▶▶ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

## ■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash.

Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

## Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  - 🔌 **Fuses** P. 680
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

### Accessories and Modifications

## **⚠️ WARNING**

**Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.**

**Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.**

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

## Modifications

---

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.



# Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

## Tools

Types of Tools..... 638

## If a Tyre Goes Flat

Changing a Flat Tyre\* ..... 640

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre..... 649

## Engine Does Not Start

Checking the Engine..... 661

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak....663

Emergency Engine Stop ..... 664

**Jump Starting**..... 665

**Overheating** ..... 668

## Indicator, Coming On/Blinking

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On.... 671

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On ..... 671

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks ..... 672

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks ..... 673

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on ..... 674

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On ..... 675

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks.. 677

If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears.. 678

If the PGM-FI Symbol Appears ..... 679

## Fuses

Fuse Locations ..... 680

Inspecting and Changing Fuses..... 687

**Emergency Towing**..... 688

**When You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill**

**Door**..... 690

**When You Cannot Open the Hatch**.. 691

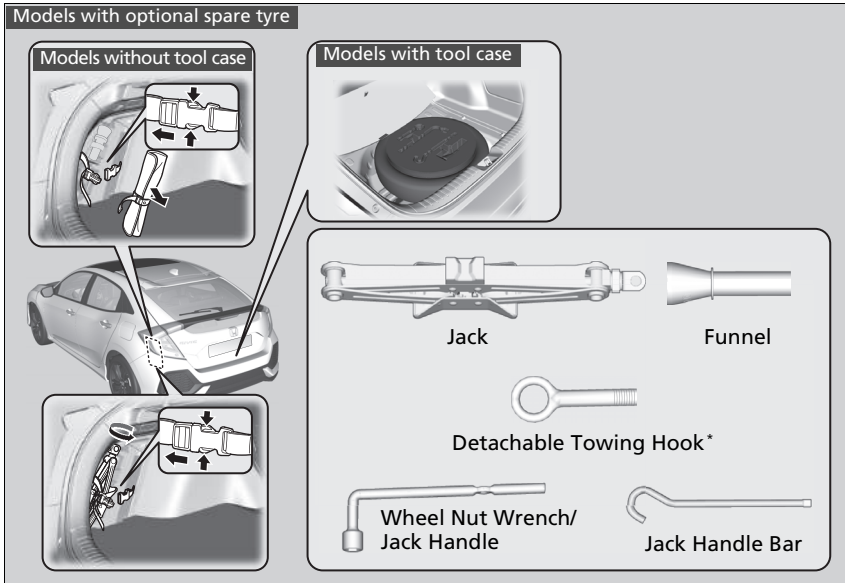
**Refueling**..... 692

\* Not available on all models

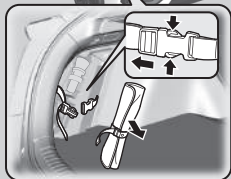
## Types of Tools

### Types of Tools

The tools were stored in the luggage area.



Models with temporary tyre repair kit



Funnel



Detachable  
Towing Hook\*



Jack Handle Bar\*

\* Not available on all models



## Changing a Flat Tyre \*

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a compact spare tyre. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Move the shift lever to **R**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*1.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### Changing a Flat Tyre \*

Follow compact spare precautions: Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare\*. It should be set to the specified pressure. Specified Pressure: 420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 60 psi)

When driving with the compact spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h (50 mph). Replace with a full-size tyre as soon as possible.

The compact spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

Do not mount tyre chains on a compact spare tyre. If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tyres and replace it with the compact spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the full-size tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

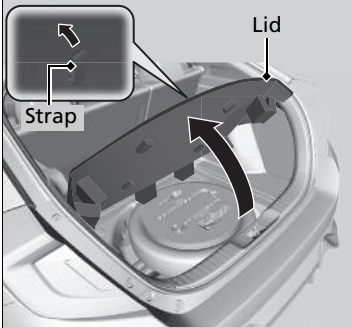
A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.

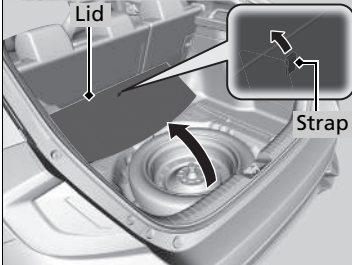
The compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.

## Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre

Models with tool case



Models without tool case



1. Pull the strap on the luggage area floor lid and open the lid.

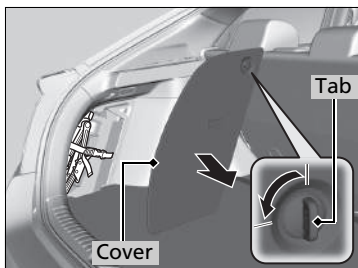
### Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre

**WARNING:** The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

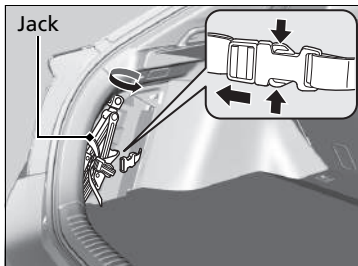
#### NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

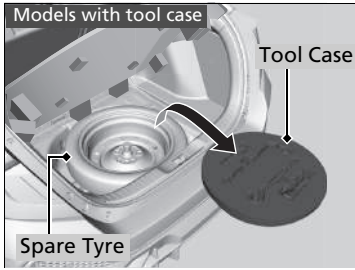
Continued



2. Turn and pull the tab to open the compartment cover located on the left side of the luggage area.

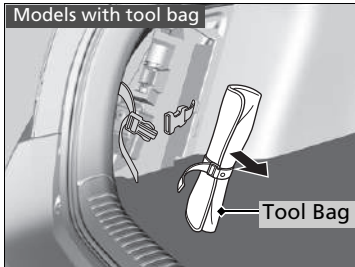


3. Turn the jack's end bracket to loosen it, then remove it.



**Models with tool case**

4. Take the tool case out of the luggage area. Take the jack handle bar and wheel nut wrench out of the tool case.



**Models with tool bag**

4. Take the tool bag out of the compartment. Take the jack handle bar and wheel nut wrench out of the tool bag.

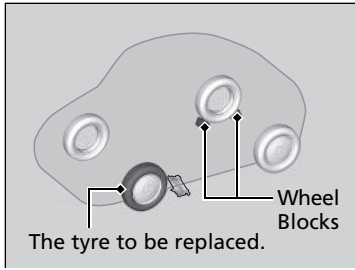
**All models**

5. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.

**Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre**

Be careful not to hurt yourself when removing or storing the spare tyre.

*Continued*



6. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.

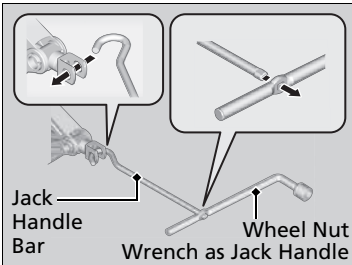
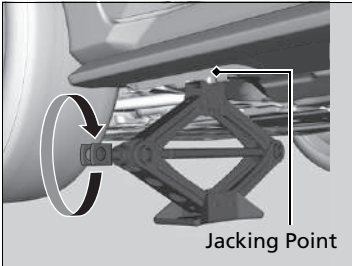
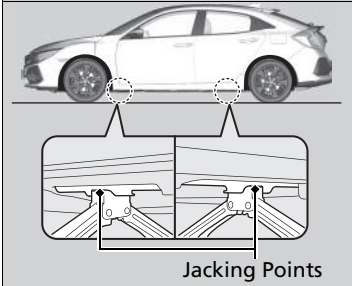


7. Place the spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.



8. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

## How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.

▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

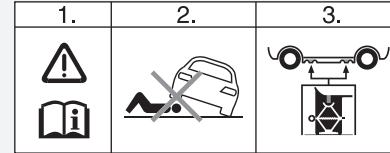
## How to Set Up the Jack

### **⚠ WARNING**

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

The jack that came with your vehicle has the following label.



1. See Owner's Manual.

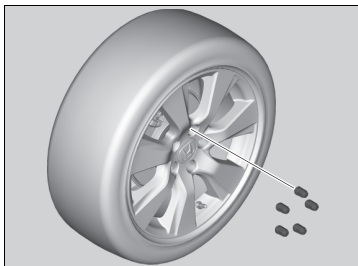
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.

3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.

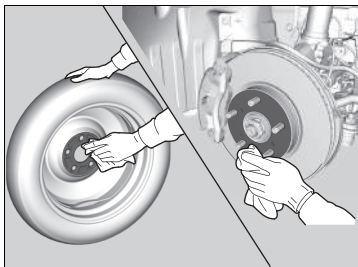
**WARNING:** The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

Continued

## ■ Replacing the Flat Tyre



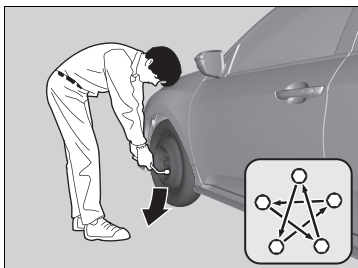
1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.

3. Mount the spare tyre.

4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.



5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack.

Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

### Wheel nut torque:

108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

## ▣ How to Set Up the Jack

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

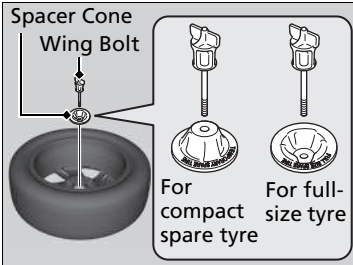
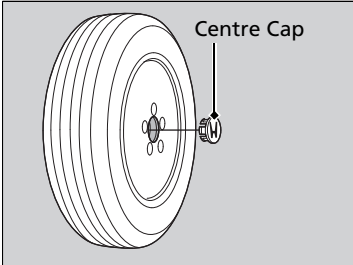
Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

## Storing the Flat Tyre



### Models with aluminium wheels

1. Remove the centre cap.
- ### All models
2. Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.
  3. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.

### Models with tool case

4. Securely put the jack handle bar and wheel nut wrench back in the tool case. Store the case in the luggage area.

### Models with tool bag

4. Securely put the jack handle bar and wheel nut wrench back in the tool bag. Store the bag in the compartment on the left side.
5. Store the jack in the compartment on the left side. Turn the jack's end bracket to lock it in place.


## Storing the Flat Tyre

### **⚠ WARNING**

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.  
Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.



## ■ Deflation Warning System and the Spare Tyre

If you replace a flat tyre with the spare tyre, the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few kilometres, the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on.  appears on the driver information interface, but this is normal.

Calibrate the deflation warning system when you replace the tyre with a specified regular tyre.

➤ **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 531

## Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then stop in a safe place.


1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, and non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Move the shift lever to **R**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*1.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistant to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm (3/16 inch).
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.

	When the puncture is:	Kit Use
 Contact Area	Smaller than 4 mm (3/16 inch)	Yes
	Larger than 4 mm (3/16 inch)	No

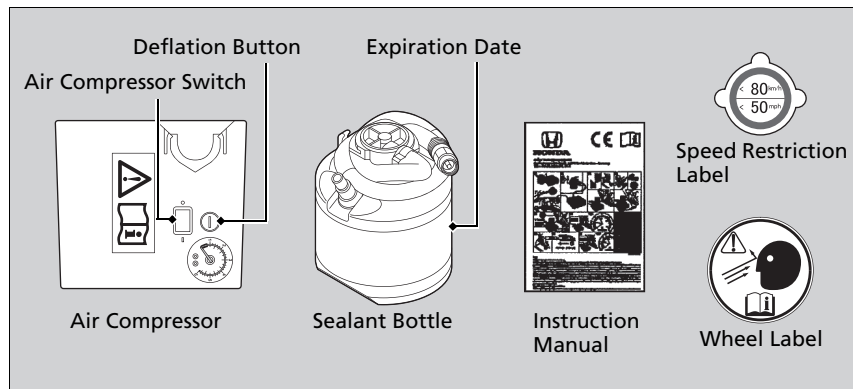
- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

#### NOTICE

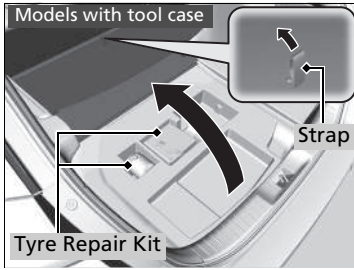
Do not use a puncture-repairing agent other than the one provided in the kit that came with your vehicle. If a different agent is used, you may permanently damage the tyre pressure sensor.

## ■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre



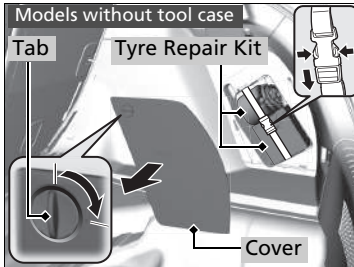
## ▣ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.



**Models with tool case**

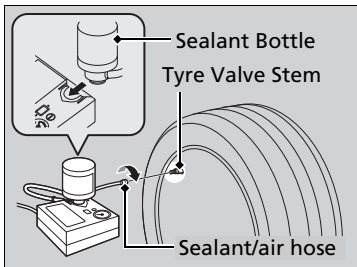
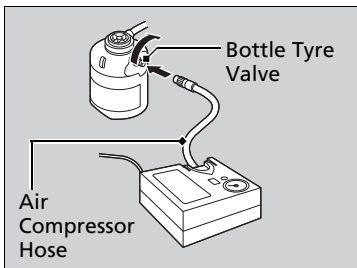
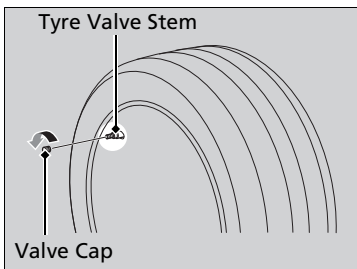
1. Pull the strap on the luggage area floor lid and open the lid.
2. Take the kit out of the tool case.
3. Place the kit face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, and away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.



**Models without tool case**

1. Turn and pull the tab to open the compartment cover located on the right side of the luggage area.
2. Take the kit out of the rear right side compartment.
3. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, and away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

## ■ Injecting Sealant and Air



1. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.
2. Shake the sealant bottle.
3. Attach the air compressor hose onto the bottle tyre valve. Screw it until it is tight.
4. Upside down the sealant bottle, then attach the bottle into the cutout of the air compressor.
5. Attach the sealant/air hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

## ▶▶ Injecting Sealant and Air

### ⚠ WARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

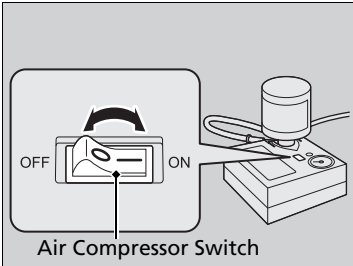
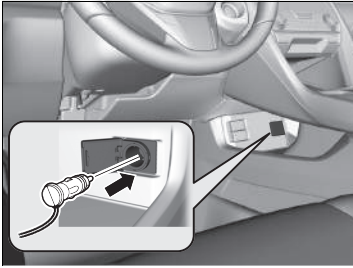
If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.


Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it up for five minutes before using.

The sealant is latex based and can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe up any spills immediately.



Air Compressor Switch

6. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
  - ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
    - **Accessory Power Socket** P. 225
7. Turn the ignition switch to START \*1 without depressing the accelerator pedal, then start the engine.
  - **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 90
8. Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre.
  - ▶ The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.
9. After the air pressure reaches to specified pressure, turn off the kit.
  - ▶ Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
  - ▶ Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

#### ▶▶ Injecting Sealant and Air

### ⚠ WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

#### NOTICE

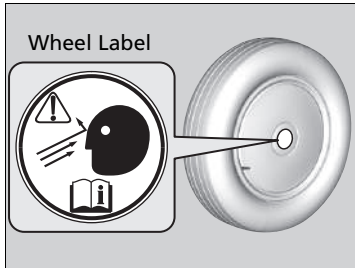
Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tyre is inflated with air. This is normal. To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.

If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

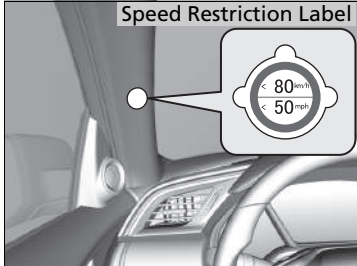
See a Honda dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of an empty bottle.

Continued



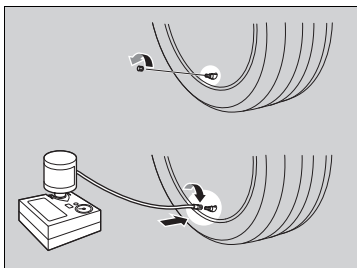
- 10.** Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
- 11.** Unscrew the sealant hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
- 12.** Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.
  - The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.

## ■ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre



1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.
  - Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.





4. Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.

▶ Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.

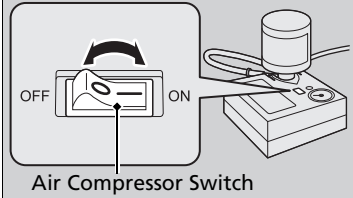
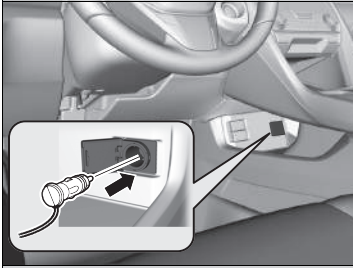
5. If the air pressure is:

- Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi):  
Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.

➤ **Emergency Towing** P. 688

- Specified pressure more:  
Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

▶ If the air pressure does not go down after the 10 minute driving, you do not need to check the pressure any more.



- Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 19psi), but less than specified pressure: Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre until the tyre pressure reaches specified pressure.
  - ▶ **Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre** P. 658
 Then drive carefully for 10 more minutes or until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
  - ▶ You should repeat this procedure as long as the air pressure is within this range.
- 6. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

▶▶ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

**⚠ WARNING**

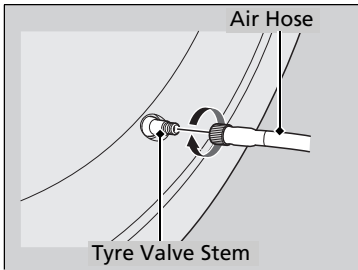
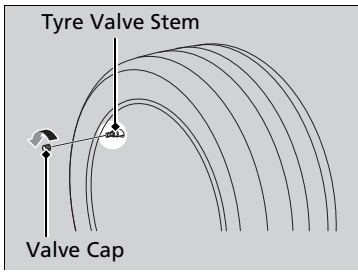
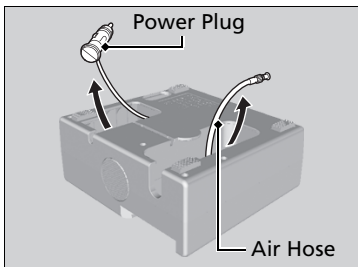
Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

## ■ Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.



1. Take the kit out of the luggage area.  
    **🔧 Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre P. 650**
2. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
3. Remove the air hose from the kit.
4. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.
5. Attach the air hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

## 🔧 Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

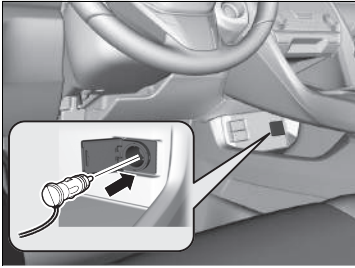
**⚠️ WARNING**


Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

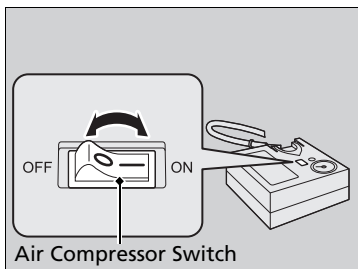
**NOTICE**

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.



6. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
  - ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
  - ▶ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 225
7. Turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY \*1.
  - ▶ In freezing temperatures, start the engine and leave it running while the flat tyre is being serviced.
  - ▶ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 90

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



- 8.** Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
  - ▶ The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
  - ▶ If you have started the engine, leave it running while injecting air.
- 9.** Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
- 10.** Turn off the kit.
  - ▶ Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
  - ▶ If overinflated, press the deflate button.
- 11.** Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
- 12.** Unscrew the air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
- 13.** Repackage and properly stow the kit.

## Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

### » Checking the Engine

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

» **Jump Starting** P. 665

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button\* for more than 15 seconds.

### Starter condition


### Checklist

#### Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly.

The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.

#### Models with keyless access system

#### Check for a message on the driver information interface.

- If the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message or  appears.

» **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 663

- ▶ Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range.

» **ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range** P. 184

#### Check the brightness of the interior lights.

Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness.

- If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all

» **Battery** P. 619

- If the interior lights come on normally » **Fuses** P. 680

---

Starter condition

Checklist

---

**The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start.**


There may be a problem with the fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.

**Review the engine start procedure.**

Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again.  **Starting the Engine** P. 453, 456

**Check the immobilizer system indicator.**

When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started.

 **Immobilizer System** P. 173

**Check the fuel level.**

There should be enough fuel in the tank.  **Fuel Gauge** P. 136

**Check the fuse.**

Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

 **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 687

**If the problem continues:**

 **Emergency Towing** P. 688

**Have the fuel filter checked by a dealer to drain off water.**


 appears on the driver information interface.

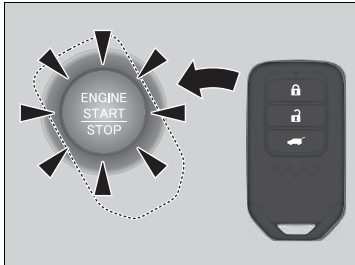
 **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 122

---

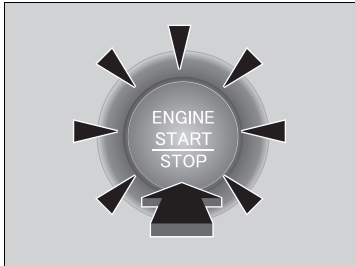
Model with keyless access system

## If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message or  appears on the driver information interface, and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start, start the engine as follows:



1. Touch the centre of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
  - ▶ The **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal (Continuously variable transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes from flashing to on.
  - ▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.



Model with keyless access system

## Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock.

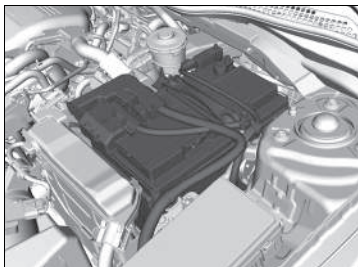
The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.

### Emergency Engine Stop

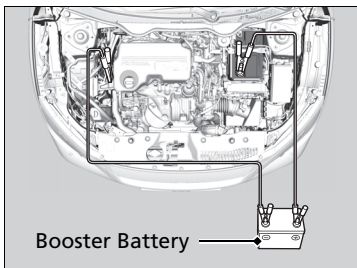
Do not press the button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.

## Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the bonnet.



1. Open the terminal cover on your vehicle's battery positive  $\oplus$  terminal.
2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
  - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
  - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery  $\ominus$  terminal.



## Jump Starting

### **⚠ WARNING**

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

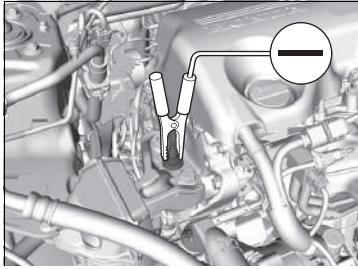
Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

### **NOTICE**

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.



5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
6. If your jumper cable is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

## What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

\* 1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## Jump Starting

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)\*, road departure mitigation\*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)\* may come on when you turn the ignition switch to ON **II**\*<sup>1</sup> after reconnecting a battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The temperature gauge pointer is at the upper level or the engine suddenly loses power.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

### ■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
  - ▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.
  - ▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then open the bonnet.

### 🔍 How to Handle Overheating

## ⚠️ WARNING

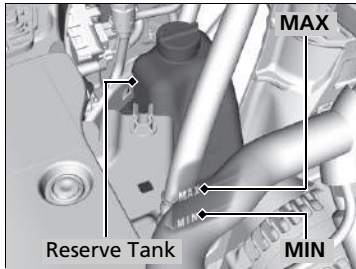
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

### NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge pointer at the upper level may damage the engine.

## ■ Next thing to do



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the high temperature gauge pointer comes down.
  - ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
  - ▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
  - ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

## ▣ How to Handle Overheating

### ⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

■ **Last thing to do**

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the temperature gauge. If the temperature gauge pointer has gone down, resume driving. If it has not gone down, contact a dealer for repairs.

## If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

### ■ What to do as soon as the indicator comes on

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

### ■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for approximately three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

🔧 **Oil Check** P. 587

3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.

- ▶ The light goes off: Start driving again.
- ▶ The light does not go off within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

## If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Turn off the climate control system, rear demister, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

## ☒ If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

### NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

## ☒ If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.



## If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

### ⚠ If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

#### NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

## If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks



(Red)

### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

### ■ Reasons for the indicator to blink

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks

- Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

### ▶▶ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.

It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.

Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

▶▶ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on**  
P. 674

If you repeatedly operate the electric parking brake in a short period of time, the brake stops operating to prevent heating of the system and the indicator blinks.

It returns to its original state in approximately 1 minute.

## If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on



(Red)



(Amber)

■ **If the Brake System Indicator (red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically.**

▣ **Parking Brake** P. 535

- If the Brake System Indicator (red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
  - ▶ Preventing the vehicle from moving shift lever to **1** or **R**.
- If only the Brake System Indicator (Red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

▣ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the Brake System Indicator (red) and the Brake System Indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the Brake System Indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

## If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.
- Comes on when the EPS steering angle centre point memory is lost. This could be due to a number of problems including: battery disconnection, main fuse blow, low battery causing the reset of the EPS system, wire damage to EPS harness. Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA), VSA OFF, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)\*, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)\*, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM)\*, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicators come on.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.  
If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

- If the VSA system indicator, VSA OFF indicator, CMBS indicator\*, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) indicator\*, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) indicator\*, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator come on simultaneously, you need to calibrate the VSA and EPS systems.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph) to calibrate the VSA and EPS systems.

If the indicators come on and stay on, park your vehicle in a safe place, turn off and restart the engine, then repeat the above operation.

If the indicators still come on and stay on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

## If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system or the compact spare tyre\* is installed, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

- ▶ Calibrate the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

🔧 **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 531

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tyre\* causes the indicator to blink, change the tyre to a full-size tyre.

The indicator goes off after driving for a few kilometres (miles).

- ▶ Calibrate the deflation warning system after a full-size tyre is reinstalled.

🔧 **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 531

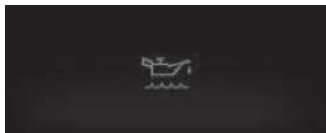
### ▶▶ If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

#### NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

\* Not available on all models

## If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears



### ■ Reasons for the symbol to appear

Appears when the engine oil level is low.

### ■ What to do as soon as the symbol appears

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

### ■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for about three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

🔧 **Oil Check** P. 587

### 🔧 If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears

#### NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil level can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

This system activates after the engine warms up. If the outside temperature is extremely low, you may have to drive for a long time until the system senses the engine oil level.

If the symbol appears again, stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

## If the PGM-FI Symbol Appears



### ■ Reasons for the symbol to appear while the engine is running

There is a problem with the engine control system.

### ■ What to do when the symbol appears for the first time

1. Stop in a safe place.
2. Stop the engine for about 30 seconds, and restart the engine.
3. Repeat step 2 for at least three times.

### ■ What to do when the symbol appears repeatedly

Avoid full-throttle acceleration and high speed driving. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

### ▶▶ If the PGM-FI Symbol Appears

#### NOTICE

Continuously driving with this symbol on can damage the emissions controls and engine. Those repairs may not be covered by your vehicle's warranties.





■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	OP Block1*	(60 A)
	VST1 (Idle Stop)*	30 A
	Main Fan	(30 A)
	Audio Amp*	(30 A)
	IG Main2*	(30 A)
	Headlight High Beam Main	30 A
	Battery (Main Fuse)	150 A
	EPS	70 A
	IG Main1	30 A* <sup>1</sup> 50 A* <sup>2</sup>
2	Fuse Box Option*	(40 A)
	Fuse Box Main	60 A
3	Front Wiper Motor	30 A
	Headlight Low Beam Main	30 A
	Rear Demister	40 A
	Starter Motor	30 A
	Fuse Box	40 A
	ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
Blower Motor	40 A	

	Circuit Protected	Amps
4	PTC4	(40 A)
	PTC3	(40 A)
	PTC2	(40 A)
	PTC1	(40 A)
5	Oil Level Sensor	10 A
6	Washer	15 A
7	IGP	20 A
8	Stop Lights	10 A
9	–	–
10	Sub Fan*	(30 A)
11	–	–
12	FI ECU	10 A
13	Hazard	15 A
14	Rear Heated Seat*	15 A
15	LAF	10 A
16	–	–
17	Daytime Running Lights	10 A
18	Back Up	10 A
19	–	–
20	Position Lights	10 A

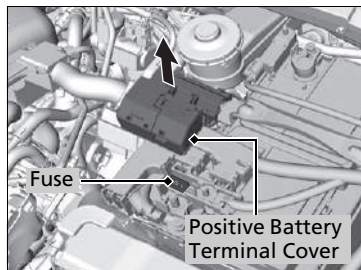
	Circuit Protected	Amps
21	Interior Lights	10 A
22	Fog Lights*	(15 A)
23	A/C Compressor*	10 A
24	Horn	10 A
25	Audio*	(30 A)
26	Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A
27	Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
28	Back Up2	30 A
29	Left Headlight High Beam	10 A
30	Right Headlight High Beam	10 A
31	ADS*	(15 A)
32	Headlight Washer*	(30 A)
33	–	–

\* 1: Models with keyless access system  
\* 2: Models without keyless access system

\* Not available on all models

### ■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box Type B

Located near the ⊕ terminal on the battery.



Remove the cover on the ⊕ terminal (as shown).

Replacement of this fuse should be done by a dealer.

### ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
	Glow	70 A

## Interior Fuse Box

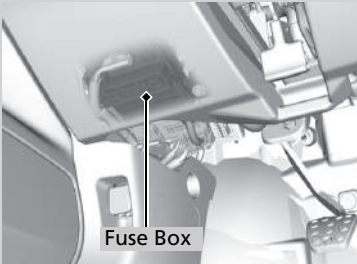
### ■ Fuse Box A

Located under the dashboard.

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

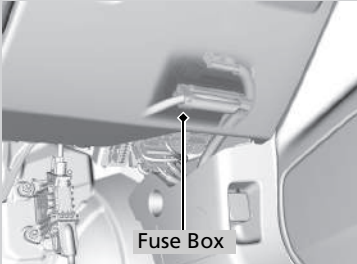
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.

**Left-hand Drive Type**

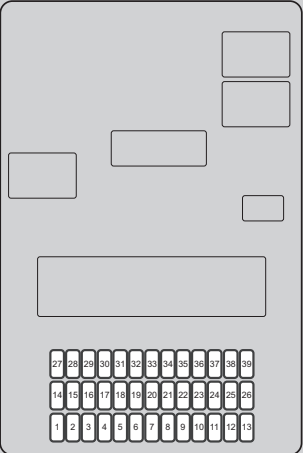


Fuse Box

**Right-hand Drive Type**



Fuse Box



27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39
14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13

■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Accessory	10 A
2	Key Lock	5 A
3	Rear Wiper Motor*	(10 A)
4	–	–
5	Option	10 A
6	Option2	10 A
7	Meter	10 A
8	Fuel Pump	15 A
9	Option	10 A
10	Rear Accessory Power Socket*	(20 A)
11	–	–
12	Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13	Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
14	Rear Left Side Power Window	20 A
15	Front Passenger's Side Power Window	20 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
16	Door Lock	20 A
17	–	–
18	Power Lumbar*	(10 A)
19	Sunroof*	(20 A)
20	Starter	(10 A)
21	ACG	10 A
22	Daytime Running Lights	10 A
23	Rear Fog Light	10 A
24	Option	5 A
25	Driver's Door Lock	10 A
26	Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	Rear Right Side Power Window	20 A
28	Driver's Power Window	20 A
29	Front Accessory Power Socket	20 A
30	Smart* <sup>1</sup> STS* <sup>2</sup>	(10 A) (5 A)

	Circuit Protected	Amps
31	–	–
32	Front Seat Heater*	(20 A)
33	–	–
34	VSA/ABS	10 A
35	SRS	10 A
36	HAC Option	20 A
37	–	–
38	Left Side Door Lock	10 A
39	Driver's Door Unlock	10 A

\*1: Models with keyless access system

\*2: Models without keyless access system

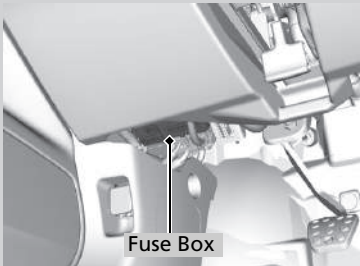
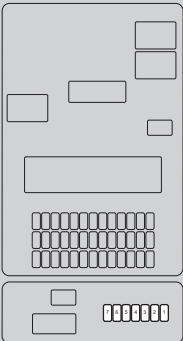
■ **Fuse Box B**

Located under the dashboard.

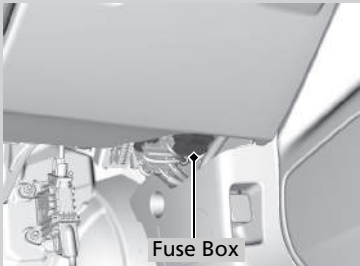
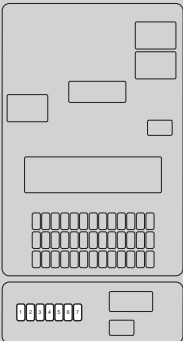
Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.

**Left-hand Drive Type**

**Right-hand Drive Type**

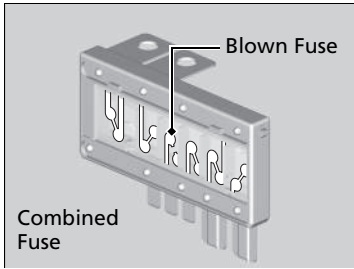



*Continued*

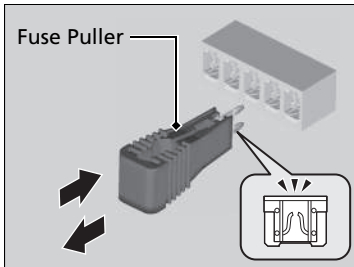
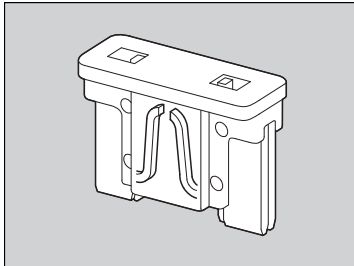
■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Accessory*	(10 A)
2	–	–
3	Back Up2	10 A
4	Audio	15 A
5	Accessory Cut	10 A
6	VST 1	10 A
7	Stop Sw 2*	(5 A)

## Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]\*1. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
  - If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.



4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
  - If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### ► Inspecting and Changing Fuses

#### NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage.

► **Fuse Locations** P. 680



Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

## ■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

**This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

## ■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

## » Emergency Towing

### NOTICE

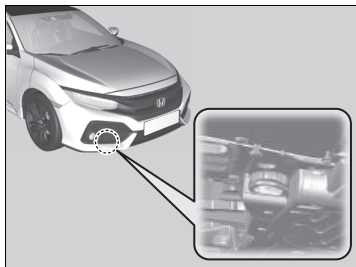
Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

### NOTICE

Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous, since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

### ■ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:



1. Hook the towing device to the towing hook.
2. Start the engine.
  - ▶ If it is difficult to turn on the engine, put the ignition switch in ACCESSORY **I**\*<sup>1</sup> or ON **II**\*<sup>1</sup>.
3. Shift to **N**.
4. Release the parking brake.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

▶ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:

Towing a vehicle is prohibited by law in some countries.

Check and follow the legal requirements of the country you are driving before towing your vehicle.

If you cannot follow the exact procedure, do not tow your vehicle with the front wheels on the ground.

If you cannot turn on the engine, you may experience the following while your vehicle is being towed.

#### Models with keyless access system

- Check that the steering wheel is not locked.

#### All models

- Braking may become difficult since the brake system's power assist is disabled.
- Steering wheel becomes heavy as the power steering system is disabled.
- Turning the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*<sup>1</sup> locks the steering wheel.

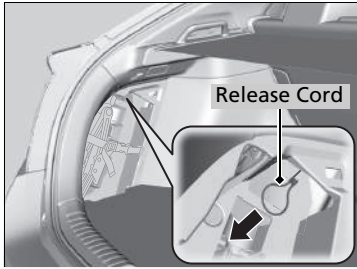
Going down a long slope heats up the brakes. This may prevent the brakes from working properly. If your vehicle needs to be towed on an incline, call a professional towing service.

With the front wheels on the ground, it is best to tow the vehicle no farther than 80 km, and keep the speed below 55 km/h.

Do not slip the clutch for a long time to get unstuck. This may overheat and damage the transmission.

## ■ What to Do When Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

If you cannot unlock the fuel fill door, use the following procedure.



1. Open the hatch.
2. Pull the strap on the luggage area floor lid and open the lid.
3. Turn and pull the tab to open the compartment cover located on the left side of the luggage area.
4. Pull the release cord toward you.
  - ▶ The release cord unlocks the fuel fill door when it is pulled.

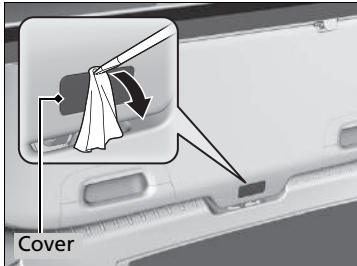
## ▣ When You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

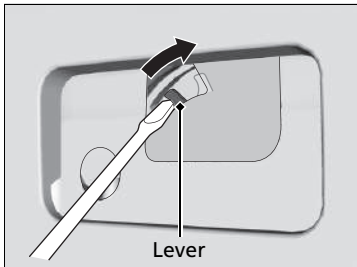
# When You Cannot Open the Hatch

## What to Do When Unable to Open the Hatch

If you cannot open the hatch, use the following procedure.



1. Remove the cover on the back of the hatch by prying it off with a small flat-tip screwdriver.
  - ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. To open the hatch, push the hatch while sliding the lever with the flat-tip screwdriver.

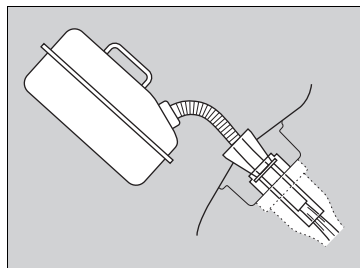
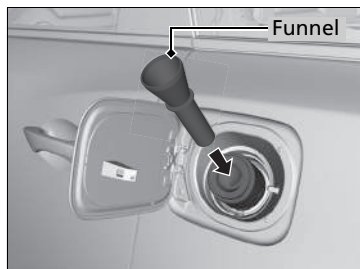
## When You Cannot Open the Hatch

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have your vehicle checked.

When you open the hatch from inside, make sure there is enough space around the hatch, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

## Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container

If you have run out of fuel and need to refuel your vehicle from a portable fuel container, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.



1. Turn off the engine.
2. Press on the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.
  - ▶ The fuel fill door opens.
3. Take the funnel out of the luggage area.
  - ▶ **Types of Tools** P. 638
4. Place the end of the funnel on the lower part of filler opening, then insert it slowly and fully.
  - ▶ Make sure that the end of the funnel goes down along with the filler pipe.
5. Fill the tank with fuel from the portable fuel container.
  - ▶ Pour fuel carefully so you do not spill any.
6. Remove the funnel from the filler neck.
  - ▶ Wipe up any fuel from the funnel before storing it.
7. Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

### Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Fuel is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

#### **NOTICE**

Do not insert the nozzle of a portable fuel container or any funnel other than the one provided with your vehicle. Doing so can damage the fuel system. Do not try to pry open or push open the sealed fuel tank with foreign objects. This can damage the fuel system and its seal.

Make sure the fuel in the portable fuel container is diesel fuel before you refuel.

# Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

<b>Specifications</b> .....	694
<b>Identification Numbers</b>	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number .....	698
<b>Devices that Emit Radio Waves</b> .....	699
<b>EC Declaration of Conformity Content Outline*</b> .....	702

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	Civic 5 Door Diesel
Curb Weight	1,340 – 1,407 kg (2,954 – 3,102 lbs) <sup>*1</sup> 1,287 – 1,301 kg (2,837 – 2,868 lbs) <sup>*2</sup>
Maximum Permissible Weight	See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb <sup>*3</sup> See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb <sup>*4</sup>
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb <sup>*3</sup> See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb <sup>*4</sup>

\*1: Models with vanity mirror lights

\*2: Models without vanity mirror lights

\*3: Right-hand drive type

\*4: Left-hand drive type

## ■ Engine Specifications

Type	DOHC
Bore × Stroke	76.0 × 88.0 mm (2.99 × 3.46 in)
Displacement	1,597 cm <sup>3</sup> (97.4 cu-in)
Compression Ratio	16.0 : 1

## ■ Fuel

Type	EN 590 standard diesel fuel
Fuel Tank Capacity	46.9 L (10.3 Imp gal)

## ■ Battery

Capacity/Type	56AH(5)70AH(20)/LN3
---------------	---------------------

Idle Stop:

The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

## ■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	3.5 L (3.1 Imp qt) <sup>*1</sup> 2.5 L (2.2 Imp qt) <sup>*2</sup>
---------------	--

\*1: Models with headlight washer

\*2: Models without headlight washer

### ■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	55 W (H11) <sup>*1</sup> LED <sup>*2</sup>
Headlights (High Beam)	60 W (HB3) <sup>*1</sup> LED <sup>*2</sup>
Front Fog Lights*	35 W (H8) <sup>*1</sup> LED <sup>*2</sup>
Front Turn Signal Lights	21 W (Amber) <sup>*1</sup> LED <sup>*2</sup>
Front Side Marker Lights*	5 W (Amber)
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights	LED <sup>*3</sup> 5 W (Amber) <sup>*4</sup>
Brake Lights	21 W
Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21 W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16 W
Rear Fog Light	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Rear Licence Plate Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Map Lights	8 W
Ceiling Light	8 W
Vanity Mirror Lights*	2 W
Luggage Area Light	5 W
Glove Box Light*	3.4 W

\*1: Models with halogen headlights

\*2: Models with LED headlights

\*3: Door mirror type models

\*4: Fender type models

### ■ Air Conditioning\*

Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)
Charge Quantity	375 - 425 g

### ■ Brake/Clutch Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

### ■ Manual Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda Manual Transmission Fluid (MTF)
Capacity	Change 1.9 L (1.7 Imp qt)

### ■ Engine Oil

Recommended	Honda Diesel Oil #1.0 ACEA C2/C3 0W-30
Capacity	Change 4.1 L (3.6 Imp qt)
	Change including filter 4.5 L (4.0 Imp qt)

\* Not available on all models



### ■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	5.18 L (1.14 Imp gal) (change including the remaining 0.58 L (0.13 Imp gal) in the reserve tank and 0.68 L (0.15 Imp gal) in the heater)

### ■ Tyre

Regular	Size	215/55R16 93V* <sup>1</sup> 235/45R17 94W* <sup>2</sup>
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Compact Spare *	Size	T125/80D16 97M
	Pressure kPa (bar [psi])	420 (4.2 [60])
Wheel Size	Regular	16 × 7J* <sup>1</sup>
	Compact Spare *	17 × 8J* <sup>2</sup>

\*1: Models with 16 inch wheel

\*2: Models with 17 inch wheel

### ■ Honda TRK Air Compressor

A weighted emission sound pressure level	75 dB (A)
A weighted sound power level	95 dB (A)

### ■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Disc
Parking	Electric parking brake system

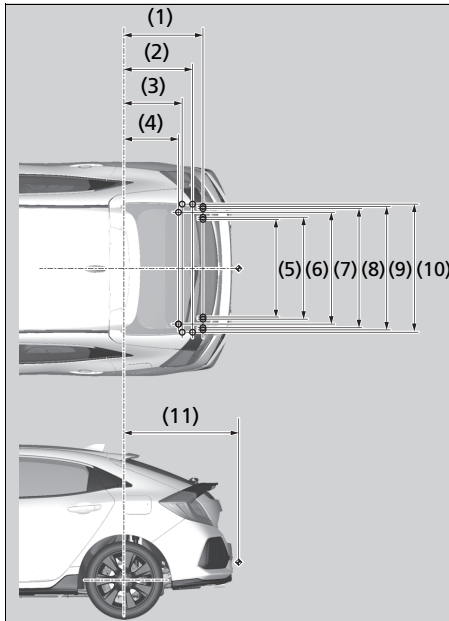
### ■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length	4,518 mm (177.9 in)	
Width	1,799 mm (70.8 in)	
Height	1,428 mm (56.2 in)	
Wheelbase	2,697 mm (106.2 in)	
Track	Front	1,547 mm (60.9 in) <sup>*1</sup>
	Rear	1,537 mm (60.5 in) <sup>*2</sup>
		1,575 mm (62.0 in) <sup>*1</sup>
		1,565 mm (61.6 in) <sup>*2</sup>

\*1: Models with 16 inch wheel

\*2: Models with 17 inch wheel

■ **The mounting point/rear over hang of coupling device**



NOTE:

1. ○ marks show towbar fixing points.
2. ◀ mark shows towbar coupling point.

No.	Dimensions
(1)	667 mm (26.3 in)
(2)	582 mm (22.9 in)
(3)	497 mm (19.6 in)
(4)	467 mm (18.4 in)
(5)	915 mm (36.0 in)
(6)	925 mm (36.4 in)
(7)	985 mm (38.8 in)
(8)	1,045 mm (41.1 in)
(9)	1,055 mm (41.5 in)
(10)	1,078 mm (42.4 in)
(11)	983 mm (38.7 in)

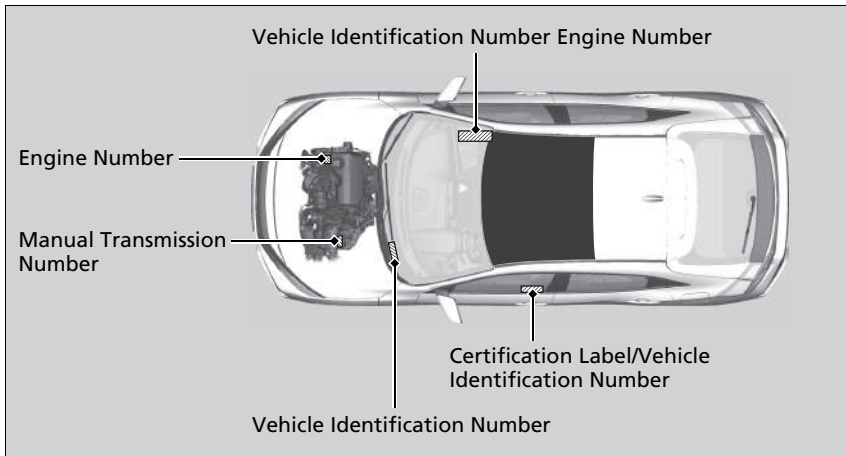
■ **Max. Towing Weight\***

Trailer with brakes	1,400 kg (3,086 lbs)
Trailer without brakes	500 kg (1,102 lbs)
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	75 kg (165 lbs)

\* Not available on all models

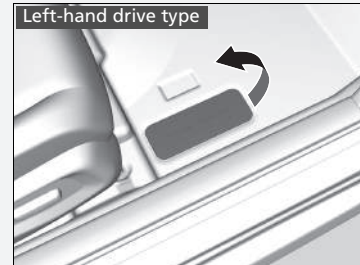
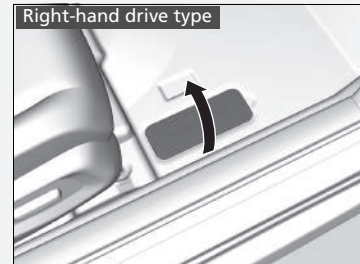
## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.



### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



## Devices that Emit Radio Waves

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

	Remote Transmitter	Immobilizer System	Hands-Free Telephone System* (Models with display audio)
Moroccan models	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numero d'agrement: MR 8359 ANRT 2013 Date d'agrement: 19/07/2013	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numero d'agrement: MR 8091ANRT 2013 Date d'agrement: 25/04/2013	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numero d'agrement: MR 10932 ANRT 2015 Date d'agrement: 2015/10/8

\* Not available on all models

Israeli models

Remote Transmitter\*/Immobilizer System\*

א. השימוש במכשיר הינו על בסיס "משני" ופטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.  
 כלומר – לא מוגן מהפרעות וללא הפרעה למערכות אחרות הפועלות כדין.  
 ב. רק "בפעולת בזק" לשימוש עצמי של הלקוח בלבד, הציד פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.  
 מתן "שרות בזק" לצד ג' מחייב רשיון מיוחד ממשרד התקשורת.  
 ג. אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

Keyless Access System\*

אלחוטי הפעלה מרשיון ופטור "משני" בסיס על הינו במכשיר השימוש.  
 כדין הפועלות אחרות למערכות הפרעה וללא מהפרעות מוגן לא-כלומר  
 אלחוטי הפעלה מרשיון פטור הציד, בלבד הלקוח של עצמי לשימוש "בוק בפעולת" רק ב.  
 התקשורת מיוחדממשרד רשיון מחייב ג' לצד "בוק שרות" מתן  
 אחר טכני שינוי כל בו לעשות ולא, המכשיר של המקורית האנטנה את להחליף אסור.ג.

Hands-Free Telephone System\* (Models with display audio)

א. נקודות הגישה תחיה מיועדת אך ורק לחיבור משתמש המצוי בחצרים מתוחמים (דוגמת בית, בית עסק, מתחם שדה תעופה, קמפוס אוניברסיטאי וכו')  
 ב. לצורך גישה לאינטרנט, נקודת הגישה תקושר מחוץ לחצרים אך ורק אל בעל רישיון למתן שירות נגיש לאינטרנט (JSP, להלי-ספק אינטרנט). הקישור לספק אינטרנט יהיה אך ורק באמצעות קו תקשורת נתונים המסופק בידי בעל רישיון למתן שירותי תקשורת  
 ג. קישור נקודת הגישה מחוץ לחצרים לצורך תקשורת נתונים ייעשה באמצעות תשתית של בעל רישיון מתאים.  
 ד. לצורך שרות לצד ג' נדרש רישיון נוסף מאגף הנדסה ורישוי (משרד התקשורת).

Blind spot information (BSI) System\*/Cross Traffic Monitor\*

א. השימוש במכשיר פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי,  
 לא מוגן מהפרעות וללא הפרעה למערכות אחרות הפועלות כדין.  
 ב. רק "בפעולת בזק" לשימוש עצמי של הלקוח בלבד, הציד פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.  
 מתן "שרות בזק" לצד ג' מחייב רשיון מיוחד ממשרד התקשורת.  
 ג. אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

Israeli models

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)\*/Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)\*

**מדינת ישראל**

האגף לתעבורה  
משרד התחבורה

אגף כביש נתיבי ספקטרום הישיר חדרים  
ת.ד. 29107, תל-אביב 61290

האגף לתעבורה  
משרד התחבורה  
מ"מ 1978  
האגף לתעבורה

לכבוד :  
ג'סיקין מרדכי בריק  
ת.ד. 879  
מני בריק 31200  
פקס : 03-5779455

תאריך הדפסה : 20/05/2014  
תקן מספר : 63-44507

**תגובה על "האגף לתעבורה" לטווח ראייה "מ"מ 42556-31 למכשיר אלטרנטיבי"**

מטרת המסמך היא למדוד את המערכת ולוודא שהיא עומדת בדרישות המסמך. המערכת תהיה בשימוש ברכב מסוג 77,000,0000 (מספר ת.ד. 77,000,0000) ויש להציג את המערכת לטווח ראייה "מ"מ 42556-31 למכשיר אלטרנטיבי".

המערכת תהיה בשימוש ברכב מסוג 77,000,0000 (מספר ת.ד. 77,000,0000) ויש להציג את המערכת לטווח ראייה "מ"מ 42556-31 למכשיר אלטרנטיבי".

שם המודל	מספר ת.ד.	מספר ת.ד.	מספר ת.ד.
77,000,0000	77,000,0000	77,000,0000	77,000,0000

1. יישום המערכת  
2. יישום המערכת  
3. יישום המערכת  
4. יישום המערכת  
5. יישום המערכת  
6. יישום המערכת  
7. יישום המערכת  
8. יישום המערכת  
9. יישום המערכת  
10. יישום המערכת

**Mid range Radar sensor for vehicles (MRR)**

למערכת תהיה בשימוש ברכב מסוג 77,000,0000 (מספר ת.ד. 77,000,0000) ויש להציג את המערכת לטווח ראייה "מ"מ 42556-31 למכשיר אלטרנטיבי".

א. היישום יבטיח את ביטחון הנהיגה וימנע מסיכונים למשתתפי התנועה.  
ב. היישום יבטיח את ביטחון הנהיגה וימנע מסיכונים למשתתפי התנועה.  
ג. היישום יבטיח את ביטחון הנהיגה וימנע מסיכונים למשתתפי התנועה.

20/05/2014  
תאריך פיקוח הישור

מני בריק  
מספר ת.ד. 31200

האגף לתעבורה

Information

\* Not available on all models

## EC Declaration of Conformity



1. The undersigned, Mr. Ryoichi Hiraki, representing the manufacturers, herewith declares that the machinery described below fulfils all the relevant provisions of:

- The EC-directive 2006/42/EC on machinery

2. Description of the machinery:

a) Generic denomination: Pantograph Jack  
 b) Function: lifting motor vehicle

c) Model	d) Type
SNB	Honda Type-A
SJD	Honda Type-B
S2A	Honda Type-C
SAH	Honda Type-D
TP6	Honda Type-G
T5A	Honda Type-I
T2V	Honda Type-J

3. Manufacturer (1) : Honda Type-A/B/C/G/I  
 RIKENKAKI CO., LTD.  
 5-6-12 Chiyoda Sakado-shi,  
 Saitama 360-0214  
 JAPAN

4. Manufacturer (2) : Honda Type-D/J  
 CHANGZHOU RIKENSEIKO MACHINERY CO., LTD.  
 No. 5 Xinlin Road, Zhonglou Changzhou,  
 Jiangsu CHINA

5. Legal person authorised to compile the technical file :  
 Honda Motor Europe Ltd Belgian Branch  
 p/a Honda Motor Europe Ltd – Aalst Office  
 Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V)  
 B-9300 Aalst (Belgium)

6. References to harmonized standards	7. Other standards or specifications
EN1494:2000+A1:2008	-

8. Done at: Saitama, Japan  
 9. Date: 1 December, 2009

Ryoichi Hiraki  
 President of RIKENKAKI CO., LTD.  
 President of CHANGZHOU RIKENSEIKO  
 MACHINERY CO., LTD.

Note: This declaration becomes invalid, if technical or operational modifications are introduced without the manufacturers consent.

## A

- ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) ..... 540
- ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) ..... 490
- Accessories and Modifications ..... 634
- Accessory Power Socket ..... 225
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ..... 112, 490
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Intelligent Speed Limiter Set Speed Indicator ..... 108
- Adaptive Damper System ..... 472
  - Button ..... 472
- Adaptive Damper System Indicator ..... 101
- Adding
  - Coolant ..... 589
  - Engine Oil ..... 588
  - Washer ..... 593
- Additives, Engine Oil ..... 586
- Adjustable Speed Limiter ..... 477
- Adjusting
  - Armrest ..... 217
  - Front Head Restraints ..... 212
  - Front Seats ..... 209, 210
  - Headlights ..... 194
  - Mirrors ..... 206
  - Rear Seats ..... 216
  - Steering Wheel ..... 205
  - Temperature ..... 140
- Adjusting the Sound ..... 261, 304
- Agile Handling Assist ..... 526
- Aha™ ..... 324
- Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) ..... 240
  - Changing the Mode ..... 243
  - Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows ..... 244
  - Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 627
  - Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode ..... 243
  - Sensors ..... 247
  - Using Automatic Climate Control ..... 240
- Air Conditioning System (Heating System)
  - Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows ..... 237
  - Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 627
  - Sensors ..... 239
  - Using Automatic Heating ..... 235
- Air Pressure ..... 696
- Airbags ..... 51
  - After a Collision ..... 54
  - Airbag Care ..... 63
  - Event Data Recorder ..... 1
  - Front Airbags (SRS) ..... 53
  - Indicator ..... 62, 99
  - Passenger Airbag Off Indicator ..... 63
  - Sensors ..... 51
  - Side Airbag ..... 58
  - Side Curtain Airbag ..... 60
- AM/FM Radio ..... 263, 311
- Android Auto ..... 343
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 540
  - Indicator ..... 98
- Apple CarPlay ..... 340
- Armrest ..... 217
- Audio Remote Controls ..... 254
- Audio System ..... 250
  - Adjusting the Sound ..... 261, 304
  - Audio/Information Screen ..... 257, 282
  - Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout .. 287
  - Changing the Screen Interface ..... 301
  - Closing Apps ..... 303
  - Customizing the Meter ..... 287
  - Display Setup ..... 262, 305
  - Error Messages ..... 347
  - General Information ..... 349
  - HDMI™ Port ..... 253
  - Home Screen ..... 293
  - iPod ..... 272, 317
  - Limitations for Manual Operation ..... 306
  - Menu Customize ..... 302
  - MP3/WMA/AAC ..... 275, 325
  - Reactivating ..... 253
  - Recommended Devices ..... 349, 350
  - Remote Controls ..... 254
  - Security Code ..... 253
  - Selecting an Audio Source ..... 306
  - Status Area ..... 300
  - Theft Protection ..... 253
  - USB Flash Drives ..... 349
  - USB Port(s) ..... 251
  - Wallpaper Setup ..... 259, 291
- Audio/Information Screen ..... 257, 282
- Auto High-Beam ..... 196
  - Auto High-Beam Indicator ..... 103



Auto Idle Stop .....	466
Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green) .....	107
Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber) .....	107
Automatic Lighting .....	190
Average Fuel Economy .....	139
Average Speed .....	139

## B

Battery .....	619
Charging System Indicator .....	97, 671
Jump Starting .....	665
Maintenance (Checking the Battery) .....	619
Maintenance (Replacing) .....	621, 624
Belts (Seat) .....	40
Beverage Holders .....	223
Blind spot information (BSI) System .....	527
Blind spot information Indicator .....	116
Bluetooth® Audio .....	278, 328
Booster Seats (For Children) .....	88
Brake System .....	535
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....	540
Brake Assist System .....	541
Fluid .....	592
Foot Brake .....	537
Indicator .....	94
Parking Brake .....	535
Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) ....	203
Bulb Replacement .....	596
Back-Up Light .....	603

Brake Lights .....	603
Ceiling Light .....	606
Front Fog Lights .....	598
Front Turn Signal Lights .....	600
Glove Box Light .....	606
Headlights .....	596
High-Mount Brake Light .....	604
Interior Lights .....	606
Luggage Area Light .....	607
Map Light .....	605
Position/Daytime Running Lights .....	602
Rear Licence Plate Light .....	604
Rear Turn Signal Light .....	603
Side Marker Lights .....	601
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights .....	602
Taillights .....	604
Taillights and Rear Fog Light .....	604
Vanity Mirror Lights .....	606
<b>Bulb Specifications</b> .....	695

## C

Carbon Monoxide Gas .....	90
Carrying Luggage .....	445, 447
Certification Label .....	698
Changing Bulbs .....	596
Charging System Indicator .....	97, 671
Child Restraint System .....	67
Booster Seats .....	88
Child Restraint System for Infants .....	69

Child Restraint System for Small Children ..	71
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt .....	83
Larger Children .....	87
Rear-facing Child Restraint System .....	69
Selecting a Child Restraint System .....	72
Using Tether .....	85
<b>Child Safety</b> .....	67
Childproof Door Locks .....	169
<b>Cleaning the Exterior</b> .....	631
<b>Cleaning the Interior</b> .....	629
<b>Climate Control System</b> .....	240
Changing the Mode .....	240
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows .....	244
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	627
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode .....	243
Sensors .....	247
Using Automatic Climate Control .....	240
<b>Clock</b> .....	156
<b>Coat Hooks</b> .....	228
<b>Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)</b> .....	543
<b>Compact Spare Tyre</b> .....	640, 696
<b>Console Compartment</b> .....	221
<b>Controls</b> .....	155
<b>Coolant (Engine)</b> .....	589
Adding to the Radiator .....	590
Adding to the Reserve Tank .....	589
Overheating .....	668
<b>Cross Traffic Monitor</b> .....	558

Cruise Control .....	473
Cup Holders .....	223
Customized Features .....	143, 354

## D

DAB .....	269, 314
Daytime Running Lights .....	195
Dead Battery .....	665
Defaulting All the Settings .....	390
Deflation Warning System .....	530
Calibration .....	531
Indicator .....	102
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows .....	244
Devices that Emit Radio Waves .....	699
Diesel .....	28, 565
Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) .....	594
Dimming	
Headlights .....	189
Rearview Mirror .....	206
Dipstick (Engine Oil) .....	587
Directional Signals (Turn Signal) .....	188
Display Setup .....	262, 305
Display/Information Button .....	137, 282
Door Mirrors .....	207
Doors .....	158
Door Open Indicator .....	39
Keys .....	158
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside .....	168

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside .....	161
Driver Information Interface .....	137
Driving .....	443
Braking .....	535
Cruise Control .....	473
Shifting Gear .....	462
Starting the Engine .....	453, 456
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	627

## E

EC Declaration of Conformity Content	
Outline .....	702
Eco Assist System .....	11
ECON Mode .....	465
Elapsed Time .....	139
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System .....	675
Indicator .....	101, 675
Emergency .....	688
Emergency Stop Signal .....	542
Engine .....	698
Coolant .....	589
Jump Starting .....	665
Oil .....	586
Starting .....	453, 456
Switch Buzzer .....	183
Engine Coolant .....	589
Adding to the Radiator .....	590
Adding to the Reserve Tank .....	589
Overheating .....	668

Engine Oil .....	586
Adding .....	588
Checking .....	587
Low Oil Level Indicator .....	678
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	95, 671
Recommended Engine Oil .....	586
Engine Start/Stop Button .....	184
EPS (Electric Power Steering)	
System .....	101, 675
Exhaust Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) .....	90
Exterior Care (Cleaning) .....	631
Exterior Mirrors .....	207

## F

Features .....	249
Filter	
Dust and Pollen .....	627
Flat Tyre .....	640
Fluids	
Brake/Clutch .....	592
Engine Coolant .....	589
Manual Transmission .....	591
Windscreen Washer .....	593
FM/AM Radio .....	263, 311
Folding Down the Rear Seats .....	216
Foot Brake .....	537
Front Airbags (SRS) .....	53
Front Fog Light .....	192
Indicator .....	104
Front Head Restraints .....	212

- Front Seat Heaters** ..... 233  
**Front Seats** ..... 209  
   Adjusting ..... 209, 210  
**Front Sensor Camera** ..... 488  
**Fuel** ..... 565  
   Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions ..... 568  
   Gauge ..... 136  
   Instant Fuel Economy ..... 139  
   Low Fuel Indicator ..... 98  
   Range ..... 139  
   Recommendation ..... 565  
   Refueling ..... 565  
**Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions** ..... 568  
**Fuel Fill Cap** ..... 28, 566, 567  
**Fuel Fill Door** ..... 28, 566  
**Fuses** ..... 680  
   Inspecting and Changing ..... 687  
   Locations ..... 680
- G**
- Gauges** ..... 136  
**Gear Shift Lever Positions**  
   Manual Transmission ..... 462  
**Glass (care)** ..... 632  
**Glove Box** ..... 220
- H**
- Halogen Bulbs** ..... 596, 598
- Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System**  
   Displaying Messages ..... 439  
   Phonebook Phonetic Modification ..... 429  
   Receiving a Text Message/E-mail ..... 437  
   Selecting a Mail Account ..... 438  
   To Set Up Text Message/E-mail Options... 423
- Hands-Free Telephone System (HFT)** ..... 391, 412  
   Automatic Import of Mobile  
     Phonebook and Call History ..... 405, 425  
   HFT Buttons ..... 391, 412  
   HFT Menus ..... 393, 415  
   HFT Status Display ..... 392, 414  
   Limitations for Manual Operation ..... 414  
   Making a Call ..... 408, 433  
   Options During a Call ..... 411, 436  
   Phone Setup ..... 397, 420  
   Receiving a Call ..... 410, 436  
   Ring Tone ..... 403, 424  
   Speed Dial ..... 406, 426
- HandsFreeLink® (HFL)**  
   Displaying Messages ..... 439  
   Phonebook Phonetic Modification ..... 429  
   Receiving a Text Message/E-mail ..... 437  
   Selecting a Mail Account ..... 438  
   To Set Up Text Message/E-mail Options... 423
- Hatch** ..... 170  
   Light Bulb ..... 607  
   Release Lever ..... 691  
   Unable to Open ..... 691
- Hazard Warning Button** ..... 4, 5
- HDMI™ Port** ..... 253  
**Headlight Washers** ..... 202  
**Headlights** ..... 189  
   Adjuster ..... 194  
   Aiming ..... 596  
   Automatic Operation ..... 190  
   Dimming ..... 189, 195  
   Operating ..... 189  
   Washer ..... 202
- Heated Door Mirrors** ..... 204  
**Heaters** ..... 233  
**Heating System** ..... 235  
   Defrosting the Windscreen and  
     Windows ..... 237  
   Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 627  
   Heating ..... 235
- HFT (Hands-Free Telephone System)** ..... 391, 412  
**High Beam Indicator** ..... 104  
**Honda TRK** ..... 649
- I**
- Identification Numbers** ..... 698  
   Engine and Transmission ..... 698  
   Vehicle Identification ..... 698  
**Ignition Switch** ..... 183  
**Illumination Control** ..... 203  
   Knob ..... 203  
**Immobilizer System** ..... 173  
   Indicator ..... 105

<b>Indicators</b> .....	94	Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber)...	96	<b>Keys</b> .....	158
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) .....	98	Passenger Front Airbag On/Off .....	99	Number Tag.....	160
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).....	112	Rear Fog Light .....	104	Rear Door Won't Open.....	169
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Intelligent Speed Limiter Set Speed.....	108	Road Departure Mitigation .....	109, 111	Remote Transmitter.....	164
Adaptive Damper System .....	101	Seat Belt Reminder .....	97	Types and Functions.....	158
Auto High-Beam .....	103	Security System Alarm .....	106	Won't Turn .....	32
Auto Idle Stop (Green) .....	107	Shift Down .....	97		
Auto Idle Stop System (Amber) .....	107	Shift Up.....	97	<b>L</b>	
Blind spot information .....	116	Speed Limiter .....	108	<b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> .....	517
Charging System.....	97	Supplemental Restraint System .....	99	<b>Language (HFT)</b> .....	392, 414
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) .....	114, 115	System Message .....	103	<b>Lights</b> .....	189, 596
Cruise Control .....	474	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning .....	104	Automatic.....	190
Cruise Main .....	473, 474	VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist) system .....	100	Bulb Replacement .....	596
ECON Mode .....	106	VSA OFF .....	100, 525	Daytime Running Lights.....	195
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System .....	101	<b>Instrument Panel</b> .....	93	Fog Lights .....	192
Front Fog Light .....	104	Brightness Control.....	203	High Beam Indicator Light .....	104
Glow Plugs .....	101	<b>Intelligent Speed Limiter</b> .....	481	Interior .....	218
High Beam .....	104	<b>Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator</b> .....	108	Light Switches .....	189
Immobilizer System .....	105	<b>Interior Lights</b> .....	218	Lights On Indicator .....	104
Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	108	<b>Interior Rearview Mirror</b> .....	206	Turn Signals .....	188
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).....	113, 519	<b>iPod</b> .....	272, 317	<b>Load Limits</b> .....	447
Lights On .....	104	<b>J</b>		<b>Locking/Unlocking</b> .....	158
Low Fuel .....	98	<b>Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench)</b> .....	645	Childproof Door Locks.....	169
Low Oil Pressure .....	95	<b>Jump Starting</b> .....	665	From Inside .....	168
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System .....	102	<b>K</b>		From Outside .....	161
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	95	<b>Key Number Tag</b> .....	160	Keys.....	158
Parking Brake and Brake System .....	94			Using a Key .....	166
				<b>Low Battery Charge</b> .....	671
				<b>Low Fuel Indicator</b> .....	98
				<b>Low Oil Level Symbol</b> .....	678

Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	671
Lower Anchorages.....	79
Lubricant Specifications Chart .....	695
Luggage (Load Limit) .....	447
Luggage Area Cover.....	231
Luggage Hook .....	230

## M

Maintenance .....	569
Battery.....	619
Brake/Clutch Fluid.....	592
Cleaning.....	629
Climate Control.....	626
Coolant .....	589
Oil .....	587
Precautions.....	570
Radiator.....	590
Remote Transmitter .....	624
Replacing Light Bulbs.....	596
Safety.....	571
Service Reminder System .....	573
Transmission Fluid.....	591
Tyres.....	613
Under the Bonnet.....	583

Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	95, 672
Manual Transmission.....	462
Map Lights .....	219
Maximum Permissible Weight .....	447
Meters, Gauges .....	136

Mirrors .....	206
Adjusting .....	206
Door .....	207
Exterior .....	207
Interior Rearview .....	206
Modifications (and Accessories) .....	634
MP3 .....	275, 325
Multi-View Rear Camera.....	563

## N

Numbers (Identification).....	698
-------------------------------	-----

## O

Odometer .....	138
Oil (Engine).....	586
Adding.....	588
Checking.....	587
Low Oil Level Indicator .....	678
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	95, 671
Recommended Engine Oil .....	586
Viscosity .....	586
On Board Apps .....	332
Open Source Licences.....	353
Opening	
Hatch.....	691
Opening/Closing	
Bonnet.....	584
Hatch.....	170
Power Windows.....	177

Sunroof .....	181
Outside Temperature Display .....	140
Overheating .....	668

## P

Parking Brake.....	535
Parking Brake and Brake System	
Indicator .....	94
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator	
(Amber).....	96
Parking Sensor System .....	554
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator.....	63
Passing Indicators.....	189
Petrol .....	28, 565
Fuel Economy and CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions.....	568
Gauge .....	136
Information.....	565
Instant Fuel Economy .....	139
Low Fuel Indicator.....	98
Refueling .....	565
PGM-FI Symbol .....	679
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio .....	278, 328
Pop-up Hood System .....	64
Pop-up Hood System Care .....	66
Precautions While Driving.....	459
Rain .....	461
Pregnant Women.....	48
Puncture (Tyre).....	640

## R

Radiator	590
Radio (FM/AM)	263, 311
Radio Data System (RDS)	264, 313
RDS (Radio Data System)	264, 313
Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror	
Button	204
Rear Fog Light	192
Indicator	104
Rear Seats (Folding Down)	216
Rearview Mirror	206
Refueling	565
Fuel Gauge	136
Low Fuel Indicator	98
Petrol	565, 694
Regulations	699
Remote Transmitter	164
Replacement	
Battery	621, 624
Bulbs	596
Fuses	680
Tyres	640
Wiper Blade Rubber	608, 611
Resetting a Trip Meter	139
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM)	505
On and Off	507
<b>S</b>	
Safe Driving	35
Safety Check	39

Safety Labels	91
Safety Message	0
Seat Belts	40
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor	47
Checking	49
Fastening	46
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt	83
Pregnant Women	48
Reminder	43
Warning Indicator	43, 97
Seats	209
Adjusting	209
Front Seat Heaters	233
Front Seats	209
Rear Seat Heaters	234
Rear Seats	216
Security System	173
Immobilizer System Indicator	105
Security System Alarm Indicator	106
Selecting a Child Restraint System	72
Selector Knob (Audio)	256
Service Reminder System	573
Setting the Clock	156
Shift Lever	462
Shift Up/Down Indicators	97, 463
Shifting (Transmission)	462
Shoulder Anchor	47
Side Airbags	58
Side Curtain Airbag	60
Siri Eyes Free	339

Smartphone Connection	333
Song By Voice™ (SBV)	320
Spare Tyre	640, 696
Spark Plugs	694
Specifications	694
Specified Fuel	565
Speed Limiter, Adjustable	477
Speed Limiter, Intelligent	481
Speedometer	136
SRS Airbags (Airbags)	53
Start/Stop Button	184
Starting the Engine	453, 456
Does Not Start	661
Engine Switch Buzzer	183
Jump Starting	665
Steering Wheel	205
Adjusting	205
Stopping	553
Sunroof	181
Super Locking	176
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)	53
Switches (Around the Steering Wheel)	4, 5, 6, 183
System Message Indicator	103

## T

Tachometer	136
Temperature	
Outside Temperature Display	140
Temperature Sensor	140, 247

- Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) ..... 649
- Tie-down Anchors..... 230
- Time (Setting) ..... 156
- Tools ..... 638
- Towing a Trailer..... 448
  - Equipment and Accessories..... 450
  - Load Limits ..... 448
- Towing Your Vehicle**
  - Emergency..... 688
- Traffic Sign Recognition System** ..... 510
  - Small Icons On and Off ..... 516
- Transmission**..... 462
  - Fluid ..... 591
  - Manual..... 462
  - Number ..... 698
- Trip Knob** ..... 138
- Trip Meter** ..... 138
- TRK (Temporary Repair Kit)** ..... 649
- Troubleshooting** ..... 637
  - Blown Fuse..... 680
  - Brake Pedal Vibrates ..... 32
  - Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door ..... 34
  - Emergency Towing ..... 688
  - Engine Won't Start ..... 661
  - Noise When Braking ..... 34
  - Overheating..... 668
  - Puncture/Flat Tyre ..... 640
  - Rear Door Won't Open ..... 33
  - Warning Indicators ..... 94
- Turn Signals**..... 188
  - Indicators (Instrument Panel)..... 104
- Tyres**..... 613
  - Air Pressure ..... 696
  - Checking and Maintaining ..... 613
  - Inspection ..... 613
  - Puncture (Flat Tyre)..... 640
  - Rotation ..... 616
  - Spare Tyre ..... 640, 696
  - Temporary Repair Kit (TRK)..... 649
  - Tyre Chains ..... 617
  - Wear Indicators ..... 614
  - Winter..... 617
- U**
- Ultrasonic Sensors** ..... 175
- Unlocking the Doors** ..... 161
- Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside**..... 168
- USB Adapter Cable**..... 250
- USB Flash Drives** ..... 275, 325, 349
- USB Port(s)** ..... 251
- V**
- Vanity Mirrors**..... 9
- Vehicle Identification Numbers**..... 698
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)** ..... 524
  - OFF Indicator..... 100
  - Off Switch..... 525
  - System Indicator..... 100
- Viscosity (Oil)** ..... 586, 695
- Voice Control Operation** ..... 307
  - Audio Commands..... 309
  - Climate Control Commands..... 310
  - General Commands ..... 310
  - Music Search Commands..... 310
  - On Screen Commands ..... 310
  - Phone Commands ..... 309
  - Useful Commands ..... 309
  - Voice Portal Screen ..... 308
  - Voice Recognition ..... 307
- VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)** ..... 524
- W**
- Wallpaper**..... 259, 291
- Warning and Information Message**..... 117
- Warning Indicator On/Blinking**..... 671
- Warning Labels** ..... 91
- Watts** ..... 695
- Wear Indicators (Tyre)** ..... 614
- Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle)**..... 645
- Wi-Fi Connection** ..... 337
- Window Washers** ..... 199
  - Adding/Refilling Fluid ..... 593
  - Switch ..... 199
- Windows (Opening and Closing)** ..... 177
- Windscreen**..... 199
  - Cleaning ..... 632
  - Defrosting/Defogging ..... 244
  - Washer Fluid..... 593
  - Wiper Blades..... 608

Wipers and Washers .....	199
<b>Winter Tyres</b> .....	617
Tyre Chains.....	617
<b>Wipers and Washers</b> .....	199
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades.....	608
Front.....	199
Rear.....	201
<b>Wireless Charger</b> .....	226
<b>WMA</b> .....	275, 325
<b>Worn Tyres</b> .....	613



